MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 64

Retribution

Liutprand of Cremona

Antapodosis

Liber de rebus gestis Ottonis

Relatio de legatione Constantinopolitana

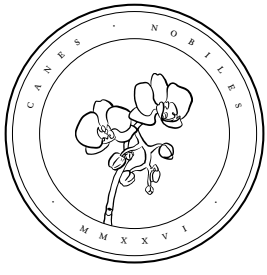
Retribution

The Antapodosis, with the Deeds of Otto and the Embassy to Constantinople

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

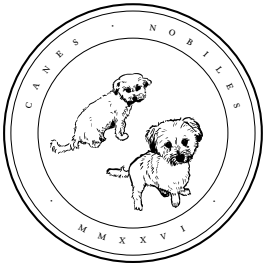


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 64 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Joseph Becker's edition, Die Werke Liudprands von Cremona, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum 41 (Hanover and Leipzig, 1915)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

ANTAPODOSIS

BOOK I

I · The Dedication to Recemund 11
II · Fraxinetum 14
III · The Rulers of the Age 18
IV · Basil the Macedonian 21
V · Leo and the Watchmen 24
VI · Arnulf, the Hungarians, and Guy and Berengar 37
VII · Arnulf in Italy 44
VIII · Pope Formosus 51
IX · The End of Arnulf 54
X · Lambert 59
XI · The Death of Lambert 62

ANTAPODOSIS

(continued)

BOOK II

I · The Hungarians on the Lech 69
II · Adalbert of Bamberg and the Hungarians at the Brenta 74
III · The Battle of the Brenta 81
IV · Conrad and Henry 88
V · Henry Defeats the Hungarians at Merseburg 95
VI · Louis of Provence Blinded 102
VII · The Saracens on the Garigliano 109
VIII · John X and the Victory on the Garigliano 114
IX · Bertha, Ermengard, and the Rebels Against Berengar 120
X · Rudolf of Burgundy and the Battle of Fiorenzuola 124
XI · The Murder of Berengar 131

BOOK III

I · The Title and the Burning of Pavia 139
II · Ermengard, Rudolf, and Burchard 146
III · Hugh Becomes King and the Rise of Romanus 152
IV · Romanus Seizes Power 162
V · Basil Repeated and Romanus' Crown 168
VI · Romanus' Sons and the Fall of Gezo 174
VII · Marozia, and Alberic Takes Rome 182
VIII · Hugh Driven from Rome; Lambert Blinded 189

ANTAPODOSIS

(continued)

BOOK IV

I · Liutprand at Court; Manasses 197
II · Theobald's Eunuchs and Willa's Belt 205
III · Hugh's Women and the Saxon Kings 213
IV · Henry's Rebellion and the Battle of Birten 220
V · The Holy Lance and Thomas's Doubt 228
VI · Breisach and the Count Who Asked for Lorsch 237
VII · The Fall of Everard and Gislebert 243

BOOK V

I · Liudolf's Marriage and Anscar Sent to Spoleto 251
II · Anscar's Last Fight and Berengar's Flight 257
III · Otto Shelters Berengar and the Greek Fire 263
IV · Fraxinetum Spared and Amadeus' Disguise 269
V · Romanus Deposed by His Sons 275
VI · Berengar's Return 283
VII · Berengar's Rule and Willa's Chaplain 289

BOOK VI

I · Liutprand's Embassy to Constantinople 297
II · Gifts, Feasts, and Wages at the Palace 303

LIBER DE REBUS GESTIS OTTONIS

I · The Appeal to Otto 313
II · The Synod Against John XII 319
III · The Charges and the Summons 327
IV · The Pope's Reply and the Deposition 333
V · Leo VIII, the Romans' Revolt, and Benedict 339

RELATIO DE LEGATIONE CONSTANTINOPOLITANA

I · Received with Contempt 349
II · The Procession and the Dinner 356
III · Romans and Lombards 363
IV · The Bulgarian Envoy Preferred 369
V · Nicephorus' Terms 375
VI · The Fleet Against Otto and Leave to Go 382
VII · The Park and the Prophecies 389
VIII · The True Lion and Whelp 395
IX · The Pope's Letter 402
X · The Purple Cloths Taken 408
XI · The Journey Home 414
XII · Leucas and Corfu 423

LIUTPRAND OF CREMONA

Antapodosis

Retribution

BOOK I

I · THE DEDICATION TO RECEMUND

Liutprand, a deacon of Pavia, greets Recemund, bishop of Elvira, who asked him two years ago for the deeds of all Europe's emperors and kings as one who saw them. He held back for want of eloquence and for fear of detractors, but a reader wearied by philosophy is refreshed by history, and the wars of Christian kings deserve telling as much as the pagans'. God's power raises some and casts down others, as the stronghold of Fraxinetum will show.

Reverendo tociusque sanctitatis pleno domno Recemundo, 1
to-the-reverend and-of-all holiness full lord Recemund
Liberritanae ecclesiae episcopo, Liudprandus, Ticinensis
of-Elvira church bishop Liutprand of-Pavia
ecclesiae suis non meritis levites, salutem. Biennio ingenii
church by-his not merits deacon greeting for-two-years of-wit
parvitate petitionem tuam, pater karissime, distuli, qua
by-the-smallness request your father dearest I-have-put-off by-which
totius Europae me imperatorum regumque facta, sicut is, qui
of-all Europe me of-emperors and-of-kings the-deeds as he who
non auditu dubius, sed visione certus, ponere compellebas.
not by-hearing doubtful but by-sight certain to-set-down you-were-pressing
Hae siquidem res animum, ne id inciperem, deterruere meum:
these indeed things the-mind lest it I-should-begin have-deterred my
copia, cuius sum poenitus expers, dicendi, detrectatorum
the-abundance of-which I-am wholly without of-speaking of-detractors
invidia, qui supercilio tumentes, lectionis desides ac secundum
the-envy who with-brow swelling of-reading idle and according-to
eruditi viri sententiam Boetii philosophyae vestis
of-the-learned man the-opinion Boethius of-philosophy of-the-garment
particulam habentes totamque se habere putantes, haec
a-scrap having and-the-whole themselves to-have thinking these-things

mihi sunt insultantes dicturi: ‘Tanta decessores nostri
to-me are insulting about-to-say so-much predecessors our
scriptitarunt, quod multo amplius lectores quam lectiones
have-written that much more readers than readings
deficient’. Illudque comicum garrient: ‘Nichil dicetur, quod
shall-fail and-that comic-line they-shall-chatter nothing shall-be-said which
non fuerit dictum prius’. Quorum latratibus hoc respondeo,
not has-been said before whose to-barkings this I-answer
quia phylosophy ydropicorum more, qui quo amplius
that philosophers of-the-dropsical after-the-manner who the-more more
bibunt, eo ardentius sitiunt, quo saepius legunt, eo
they-drink the-more ardently they-thirst the-more often they-read the-more
avidius nova quaeque perquirunt. Quod si perplexa faceti
eagerly new-things all they-seek-out but if by-the-intricate of-witty
Tullii lectione fatigantur, talibus saltem neniis animentur.
of-Tully by-the-reading they-are-wearied by-such at-least trifles let-them-be-revived
Nam, ni fallor, sicut obtutus, nisi alicuius interpositione
for unless I-am-mistaken as the-gaze unless by-some interposition
substantiae, solis radiis reverberatus obtunditur, ne pure, ut
of-substance of-the-sun by-the-rays struck-back is-dulled lest purely as
est, videatur, ita plane mens achademicorum, peripatheticorum
it-is it-be-seen so plainly the-mind of-the-Academics of-the-Peripatetics
stoicorumque doctrinarum iugi meditatione infirmatur, si
and-of-the-Stoics of-the-doctrines by-continual meditation is-weakened if
non aut utili comoediarum risu aut heroum delectabili
not either by-the-useful of-comedies laughter or of-heroes by-the-delightful
historia refocilatur. Quod si priscorum ritus execrabilis
history it-is-refreshed but if of-the-ancient the-rite accursed
paganorum, non solum inquam non proficuus, verum
of-the-pagans not only I-say not profitable but
auditu ipso non parum nocuus, tomis memorandus
by-the-hearing itself not a-little harmful in-volumes to-be-remembered

inscribitur, quid istorum imperatorum bella, Iulii, Pompeii,
is-written why of-these emperors the-wars of-Julius of-Pompey
Hannibalis fratrisque eius Asdrubalis ac Scipionis Africani,
of-Hannibal and-of-the-brother his Hasdrubal and of-Scipio Africanus
insignium imperatorum, laudibus coaequanda silebitur,
of-distinguished emperors to-the-praises to-be-made-equal shall-be-kept-silent
cum praesertim in his sit domini nostri Iesu Christi,
when especially in these is of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ
dum sancte vixerint, bonitas recitanda, tum si quid
while holily they-have-lived the-goodness to-be-recounted then if anything
deliquerint, salubris ab eodem correctio memoranda? Nec
they-have-offended the-wholesome by the-same correction to-be-remembered nor
moveat quempiam, si enervorum facta regum principumve
let-it-move anyone if of-feeble the-deeds of-kings or-of-princes
effeminatorum huic libellulo inseruero. Una est enim
effeminate into-this little-book I-shall-have-inserted one is for
iusta Dei omnipotentis, patris scilicet, filii et spiritus
just of-God almighty of-the-Father namely of-the-Son and of-the-Spirit
sancti, virtus, quae hos iuste suis pro sceleribus comprimit,
holy the-power which these justly their-own for crimes holds-down
illos dignis pro meritis extollit. Haec inquam est vera
those worthy for merits raises-up this I-say is the-true
domini nostri Iesu Christi sanctis promissio: ‘Observa et
of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ to-the-saints promise observe and
audi vocem meam, et inimicus ero inimicis tuis, et
hear voice my and enemy I-shall-be to-enemies your and
afligentes te afligam, et praecedet te angelus meus’. Per
those-afflicting you I-shall-afflict and shall-go-before you the-angel my through
Salemonem quoque sapientia, quae Christus est, clamat:
Solomon also wisdom which Christ is cries
‘Pugnabit pro eo orbis terrarum contra insensatos’. Quod
shall-fight for him the-world of-lands against the-senseless which

cottidie fieri etiam qui stertit, animadvertit. Ut autem
daily to-happen even who snores notices that moreover
evidens ex innumeris subdatur exemplum, me tacente
a-plain from countless be-added example me silent
loquetur opidum vocabulo Fraxinetum, quod in Italicorum
shall-speak the-town by-name Fraxinetum which on of-the-Italians
Provincialiumque confinio stare manifestum est.
and-of-the-Provençals the-border to-stand plain it-is

II · FRAXINETUM

Fraxinetum is walled by the sea on one side and a thick wood of thorns on the others. Twenty Saracen pirates, blown there from Spain against their will, kill the Christians by night, fortify Mount Maurus, and call more men from Spain. The Provençals, quarreling among themselves, invite them in against one another, and the Saracens, once helpers, turn on them all, since God has sold them.

2 Cuius ut cunctis liquido pateat situs, quemadmodum
whose so-that to-all clearly may-be-plain the-site as
temet latere minime reor, immo melius scire, sicut ab
yourself to-escape by-no-means I-think nay better to-know as from
ipsis, qui vestri sunt tributarii regis, Abderahamen scilicet,
those-very who your are tributaries of-the-king Abd-al-Rahman namely
potestis conicere, mari uno ex latere cingitur, ceteris
you-can to-conjecture by-the-sea one from side it-is-girt on-the-others
densissima spinarum silva munitur. Quam si ingressus
by-a-most-dense of-thorns wood it-is-fortified which if entered
quispiam fuerit, ita sentium curvitate tenetur, acutissima
anyone shall-have so of-the-briars by-the-curving he-is-held by-the-sharpest

rectitudine perforatur, ut neque progressionis neque reditus,
straightness he-is-pierced that neither of-advance nor of-return
nisi cum magno labore, habeat facultatem.
unless with great labor he-may-have the-means
Sed oculto et, quoniam secus esse non potest, iusto Dei 3
but by-bidden and since otherwise to-be not it-can by-just of-God
iuditio XX tantum Saraceni lintre parvula ex Hispania
judgment twenty only Saracens in-a-boat small from Spain
egressi, nolentes istuc vento delati sunt. Qui piratae noctu
having-set-out unwilling thither by-the-wind carried were who pirates by-night
egressi villamque clam ingressi Christicolas, pro dolor,
having-gone-out and-the-estate secretly having-entered the-Christians for grief
iugulant locumque sibi proprium vendicant montemque
they-slaughter and-the-place for-themselves as-their-own claim and-the-mountain
Maurum villulae cohaerentem contra vicinas gentes refugium
Maurus to-the-estate adjoining against neighboring peoples a-refuge
parant; spineam silvam hoc pacto maiorem et spissiorem
they-prepare the-thorny wood by-this means larger and thicker
sua pro tuitione fatientes, ut, si quis ex ea vel ramum
their-own for protection making so-that if anyone from it even a-branch
incideret, mucronis percussione hominem exiret; sicque
should-cut of-a-sword by-a-blow the-man he-would-go-out and-so
factum est, ut omnis praeter unius angustissimae viae aditus
done it-was that every except of-one most-narrow way approach
demeretur. Loci igitur asperitate confisi vicinas gentes
was-taken-away of-the-place therefore in-the-roughness trusting the-neighboring peoples
clam circumquaque perlustrant. Accersitum quam plures in
secretly round-about they-scour to-summon very many to
Hispaniam nuntios dirigunt, locum laudant vicinasque
Spain messengers they-send the-place they-praise and-the-neighboring
gentes nichili se habere promittunt. Centum denique
peoples for-nothing themselves to-hold they-promise a-hundred finally

tantummodo secum mox Saracenos reducunt, qui veram
only with-themselves soon Saracens they-bring-back who the-true
rei huius caperent assertionem.
of-the-matter this might-take assurance

4 Interea Provincialium, quae illis gens erat vicinior, invidia
meanwhile of-the-Provençals which to-them the-people was nearer by-envy
coepit inter sese dissidere, alius alium iugulare, substantiam
began among themselves to-be-at-odds one another to-slaughter goods
rapere, et quicquid mali excogitari poterat facere. Sed quia
to-plunder and whatever of-evil to-be-devised could to-do but since
pars partem, ut invidia et dolor postularant, satis sibi
party party as envy and resentment had-demanded enough to-themselves
facere non poterant, hos quos praediximus Saracenos, non
to-do not they-could those whom we-mentioned-before Saracens no
minus callidos quam perfidos, in auxilium rogat cumque his
less cunning than faithless to help asks and-with these
una proximum conterit. Nec iuvat solummodo proximum
together the-neighbor it-crushes nor does-it-please only the-neighbor
trucidare, verum terram fructiferam in solitudinem reddere.
to-slaughter but the-land fruitful into a-wilderness to-render
Sed videamus, quid iusta secundum quendam profuerit
but let-us-see what just according-to a-certain-one profited
invidia, quam ita describens ait:
envy which so describing he-says

‘Iustius invidia nichil est, quae protinus ipsum
more-just than-envy nothing is which at-once its-own
Auctorem rodit excruciatque animum.’
author gnaws and-tortures the-mind

Quae cum decipere conatur, decipitur; dum extinguere molitur,
which while to-deceive it-tries is-deceived while to-extinguish it-strives
extinguitur. Quid igitur? Saraceni cum suis hoc viribus
is-extinguished what therefore the-Saracens when with-their-own this by-strength
minime possent, alteram alterius auxilio partis debellantes
by-no-means they-could the-one of-the-other with-the-help party subduing
suasque copias ex Hispania semper augentes, quos primo
and-their forces from Spain always increasing those-whom at-first
defendere videbantur, modis omnibus insecuntur. Saeviunt
to-defend they-seemed by-means all they-pursue they-rage
itaque, exterminant, nil reliqui faciunt. Trepidare iam
and-so they-exterminate nothing of-what-is-left they-leave to-tremble now
vicinae ceterae gentes, quoniam secundum prophetam horum
the-neighboring other peoples since according-to the-prophet of-these
unus persequebatur mille, et duo fugarunt decem milia. Et
one pursued a-thousand and two put-to-flight ten thousand and
quare? 'Quia Deus suus vendidit eos et Dominus conclusit illos.'
why because God their sold them and the-Lord shut-up them

Leo, father of the present Constantine, rules at Constantinople; Symeon leads the Bulgarians; the Hungarians, whom Otto has since cowed, are then still shut off beyond the passes. Arnulf rules the Bavarians, Swabians, Franks, Lotharingians, and Saxons; Berengar and Guy fight for Italy, and Formosus is pope. Constantine is called Porphyrogenitus because he was born in the Porphyra, the house the first Constantine built for his heirs.

Hac itaque tempestate Leo Porphyrogenitus, Basilii imperatoris
in-this and-so time Leo Porphyrogenitus of-Basil the-emperor
filius, Constantini huius pater, qui nunc usque superest et
the-son of-Constantine this the-father who now still survives and
feliciter regnat, Constantinopolitanae civitatis regebat imperium.
happily reigns of-the-Constantinopolitan city ruled the-empire
Simeon fortis bellator Bulgariis praeerat, Christianus, sed
Simeon a-strong warrior over-the-Bulgarians presided a-Christian but
vicinis Grecis valde inimicus. Ungariorum gens, cuius
to-the-neighboring Greeks very hostile of-the-Hungarians the-people whose
omnes poene nationes expertae sunt saevitiam, quae miserante
all almost nations experienced have the-savagery which pitying
Deo sanctissimi atque invictissimi regis Ottonis potentia, ut
God of-the-most-holy and most-invincible of-king of-Otto by-the-power as
latius dicturi sumus, muttire non audet exterrita, nobis
more-widely about-to-say we-are to-mutter not dares terrified to-us
omnibus tunc temporis habebatur ignota. Quibusdam namque
all at-that of-time was-held unknown by-certain for
difficillimis separata a nobis erat interpositionibus, quas
most-difficult separated from us it-was barriers which
clusas nominat vulgus, ut neque ad meridianam neque
the-Clusae calls the-common-people so-that neither to the-southern nor
ad occidentalem plagam exeundi habuerit facultatem. Per
to the-western region of-going-out it-had the-means through

idem tempus Arnulfus rex potentissimus, defuncto Karolo
the-same time Arnulf the-king most-powerful dead Charles
praenomine Calvo, Bagoariis, Suevis, Francis Teutonicis,
by-surname the-Bald over-the-Bavarians the-Swabians the-Franks Teutonic
Lotharingis audacibusque principabatur Saxonibus. Cui
the-Lotharingians and-the-bold ruled Saxons to-whom
Centebaldus, Maravanorum dux, viriliter repugnabat. Berengarius
Zwentibald of-the-Moravians duke manfully resisted Berengar
et Wido imperatores ob regnum Italicum conflictabantur.
and Guy emperors for the-kingdom Italian contended
Formosus Portuensis civitatis episcopus, Romanae sedis summus
Formosus of-Porto city bishop of-the-Roman see the-highest
et universalis papa habebatur. Sed nunc, quid sub unoquoque
and universal pope was-held but now what under each
horum gestum sit, prout brevius possumus, explicemus.
of-these done was as more-briefly we-can let-us-set-forth
Leo igitur, Grecorum piissimus imperator, cuius supra 6
Leo therefore of-the-Greeks the-most-pious emperor of-whom above
fecimus mentionem, Constantini scilicet huius Porphýrogeniti
we-made mention of-Constantine namely this Porphyrogenitus
pater, undique pace habita sancte et iuste Grecorum regebat
the-father everywhere peace had holily and justly of-the-Greeks ruled
imperium. Porphýrogenitum autem non in purpura, sed in
the-empire Porphyrogenitus moreover not in purple but in
domo, quae Porphyra dicitur, natum apello. Et quoniam
the-house which the-Porphyra is-called born I-call and since
res processit in medium, quid de huius Porphýrogeniti
the-matter has-come into the-middle what about of-this Porphyrogenitus
genesi audivimus, proferamus.
the-birth we-have-heard let-us-bring-forth

7 Constantinus imperator augustus, ex cuius nomine
Constantine the-emperor august from whose name
Constantinopolis est sortita vocabulum civitas, τὸν οἰκον
Constantinople has received its-name the-city the house
τούτον, ton icon touton, domum istam, aedificare iussit,
this the house this house this to-build ordered
cui Porphýra nomen inposuit; voluitque successuram
to-which Porphyra the-name gave and-wished the-succeeding
nobilitatis suae subolem istic in lucem prodire, quatinus,
of-nobility his offspring there into light to-come-forth so-that
qui suo ex stemate nascerentur, luculenta hac apellatione
who his from stock should-be-born by-the-splendid this name
Porphýrogeniti dicerentur. Unde et hunc Constantinum,
Porphyrogeniti should-be-called whence also this Constantine
Leonis imperatoris filium, ex eius sanguine nonnulli dicunt
of-Leo the-emperor the-son from his blood some say
originem ducere. Veritas autem rei huius ita se habet.
the-origin to-draw the-truth moreover of-the-matter this so itself holds

Basil, Constantine's grandfather, comes poor from Macedonia to serve an abbot, and the emperor Michael takes him for his chamberlain. When Michael's madness orders deaths he afterward regrets, Basil's friends persuade him to kill the emperor and take the throne. Christ appears to him in a vision holding Michael's hand, and Basil repents, gives alms, and builds the New Church of the archangel Michael beside the palace.

Basilius imperator augustus, avus huius, Macedonia 8
Basil the-emperor august the-grandfather of-this-one from-Macedonia
humili fuerat prosapia oriundus, descenditque Constantinopolim
of-humble had-been stock sprung and-came-down to-Constantinople
τῆς πτοχειας, tis ptochías, quod est paupertatis iugo,
of-the poverty of-the poverty which is of-poverty under-the-yoke
ut cuidam serviret igúmeno, id est abbati. Igitur imperator
that a-certain he-might-serve hegumen that is abbot therefore the-emperor
Michahel, qui tunc temporis erat, cum orationis gratia ad
Michael who then of-time was when of-prayer for-the-sake to
monasterium istud, in quo hic ministrabat, descenderet,
monastery that in which this-one served came-down
vidit hunc forma praeter ceteros egregia, accitumque τον
he-saw him in-form beyond the-others outstanding and-summoned the
ηγούμενον, ton igúmenon, abbatem, rogavit, ut se donaret
hegumen the hegumen the-abbot he-asked that him he-should-present
hoc puero; quem suscipiens in palatio, cubicularii donavit
with-this boy whom receiving in the-palace of-chamberlain he-presented
officio. Tantae denique post paululum potestatis est factus,
with-the-office of-such finally after a-little of-power was made
ut alter ab omnibus imperator sit apellatus.
that a-second by all emperor he-was called

9 Verum quia omnipotens Deus servos suos iusta visitat vult
but since almighty God servants his just visits wishes
quacumque censura, hunc imperatorem Michahelem sanae
whatever by-censure this emperor Michael of-sound
mentis ad tempus non esse permiserat, ut, quo
mind for a-time not to-be had-permitted so-that by-how-much
hunc gravius premeret in infimis, eo misericordius
him more-heavily he-might-press in the-lowest by-so-much more-mercifully
remuneraret in summis. Nam, ut fertur, huius tempore
he-might-reward in the-highest for as it-is-said of-this in-the-time
passionis familiares etiam capitis iusserat damnare sententia.
affliction his-intimates even of-the-head he-had-ordered to-condemn by-sentence
Quos tamen ad sese rediens hoc pacto requirebat, ut, nisi
whom yet to himself returning on-this condition he-sought-back that unless
quos iugulare iusserat redderentur, pari ipsi qui
those-whom to-slaughter he-had-ordered were-returned by-equal they-themselves who
hoc effecerant sententia damnarentur. Hoc igitur terrore
this had-done sentence should-be-condemned by-this therefore terror
quos damnare iusserat, servabantur. Sed cum hoc
those-whom to-condemn he-had-ordered were-saved but when this
saepius et iterum Basilio faceret, huiusmodi a sibi
rather-often and again to-Basil he-did of-this-kind from to-himself
obsequentibus, pro nefas, accepit consilium: 'Ne forte insana
those-obeying for shame he-received counsel lest perhaps the-mad
regis iussio aliquando ex industria a te non diligentibus,
of-the-king order sometime from purpose by you not loving
immo odio habentibus, impleatur, eum tu potius occidito
nay in-hatred holding be-fulfilled him you rather kill
atque imperialia sceptra suscipito'. Quod sine dilatione,
and the-imperial scepters take-up which without delay

cum terrore compulsus, tum et regnandi cupiditate deceptus
both by-terror compelled and also of-reigning by-the-desire deceived
complevit. Hoc itaque interfecto factus est imperator Basilius.
he-fulfilled this-one and-so killed made was emperor Basil
Denique parvo transacto tempore huic dominus noster Iesus
finally a-little passed time to-him Lord our Jesus
Christus per visionem apparuit, domini huius imperatoris,
Christ through a-vision appeared of-the-lord of-this emperor
cuius hic necis auctor extiterat, dexteram tenens
whose this-one of-the-murder the-author had-been the-right-hand holding
eumque ita conveniens: ‘ἵνα τί ἔσφαζες τὸν δεσπότην σου
and-him thus addressing to what did-you-slay the lord your
βασιλεα? inati esfases ton despotin su basilea’, quod est: ‘ut
emperor why did-you-slay the lord your emperor which is to
quid interfecisti dominum tuum imperatorem?’ Expergefactus
what have-you-killed lord your the-emperor awakened
itaque tanti se reum novit esse reatus; moxque ad sese
and-so of-so-great himself guilty he-knew to-be guilt and-soon to himself
rediens, quid super hoc faceret, cogitabat. Confortatus itaque
returning what about this he-should-do he-considered strengthened and-so
hac Domini nostri per prophetam salubri et vere acceptabili
by-this of-the-Lord our through the-prophet wholesome and truly acceptable
promissione, quia, in quacumque die peccator ingemuerit,
promise that on whatever day the-sinner shall-have-groaned
salvus erit, cum lacrimis et gemitibus se peccatorem, se
saved he-shall-be with tears and groans himself a-sinner himself
reum, se sanguinis innocentis effusorem esse confitebatur.
guilty himself of-blood innocent the-shedder to-be he-confessed
Bono autem consilio accepto amicos sibi de mammona
good moreover counsel received friends for-himself of the-mammon
iniquitatis effecerat, ut, quos hic temporalibus subsidiis
of-iniquity he-had-made so-that those-whom here with-temporal aids

consolaretur, eorum precibus ab aeterno gehennae incendio
he-might-comfort their by-prayers from the-eternal of-Gehenna fire
liberaretur. Fabricavit autem precioso et mirabili opere iusta
he-might-be-freed he-built moreover with-costly and wonderful work near
palatium orientem versus ecclesiam, quam Nean, hoc est novam,
the-palace the-east toward a-church which Nea that is new
vocant, in honore summi et caelestis militiae principis,
they-call in honor of-the-highest and heavenly of-the-host of-the-prince
archangeli Michahelis, qui Grece archistratigos apellatur.
the-archangel Michael who in-Greek chief-commander is-called

V · LEO AND THE WATCHMEN

To test his night watch Leo walks out alone after dusk. Two posts take his bribe and let him go; the third robs, beats, and jails him. The jailer mocks him with a horoscope but at dawn, at Leo's word, takes him to the palace and finds his prisoner is the emperor. Leo rewards the honest watch and banishes the bribed ones. He also lays a pound of gold on each of twelve sleeping guards, and the one who only feigned sleep takes the other eleven and, telling it as a dream, is allowed to keep them.

11 Nunc autem non pigeat libellulo huic res duas, quas
now moreover not let-it-irk into-little-book this things two which
eiusdem Basilii filius, memoratus Leo imperator augustus,
of-the-same Basil the-son mentioned Leo the-emperor august
memoria risuque dignas egit, inserere. Constantinopolitana
of-memory and-of-laughter worthy did to-insert the-Constantinopolitan
urbs, quae prius Bizantium, Nova nunc dicitur Roma,
city which formerly Byzantium the-New now is-called Rome
inter ferocissimas gentes est constituta. Habet quippe ab
among most-fierce peoples is set it-has indeed on
aquilone Hungarios, Pizenacos, Chazaros, Rusios, quos
the-north the-Hungarians the-Pechenegs the-Khazars the-Rus whom

alio nos nomine Nordmannos apellamus, atque Bulgarios
by-another we name Northmen call and the-Bulgarians
nimium sibi vicinos; ab oriente Bagdas; inter orientem
very to-itself near on the-east Baghdad between east
et meridiem Aegipti Babiloniaeque incolas; a meridie
and south of-Egypt and-of-Babylon the-inhabitants on the-south
vero Africam habet et nominatam illam nimium vicinam
but Africa it-has and named that very near
sibique contrariam insulam Crete. Ceterae vero, quae sunt
and-to-itself hostile island Crete the-other but which are
sub eodem climate nationes, Armeni scilicet, Perses,
under the-same clime nations the-Armenians namely the-Persians
Chaldei, Avasgi, huic deserviunt. Incolae denique civitatis
the-Chaldeans the-Abasgians it serve the-inhabitants finally of-city
huius, sicut memoratas gentes divitiis, ita etiam sapientia
this as the-mentioned peoples in-riches so also in-wisdom
superexellunt. Moris quippe eorum est, ne a vicinis
surpass of-custom indeed their is lest by neighboring
gentibus obprimantur, singulis quibusque noctibus per
peoples they-be-overwhelmed on-single all nights through
totius civitatis bivium, trivium quadruviumque armatos
of-the-whole city the-two-ways the-three-ways and-four-ways armed
milites causa custodiendae civitatis, qui eam invigilent,
soldiers for-the-sake of-guarding the-city who it may-watch
ponere. Fitque, ut, si post crepusculum quemquam
to-set and-it-comes-about that if after twilight anyone
deambulantem aliquô custodes offenderint, captus protinus
walking anywhere the-guards have-met captured at-once
verberibusque caesus, custodia pervigili, compedibus in carcere
and-with-blows beaten in-custody watchful in-fetters in prison
strictus, usque in crastinum ad publicum producendus
bound until into the-morrow to the-public to-be-brought-forth

servetur. Hoc denique pacto non solum ab hostibus, verum
he-is-kept by-this finally means not only from enemies but
etiam a latronibus inlaesa civitas custoditur. Leo itaque
also from robbers unharmed the-city is-guarded Leo and-so
imperator augustus vigilum fidem constantiamque probare
the-emperor august of-the-watchmen the-faith and-steadfastness to-test
volens, solus post crepusculum e palatio descendens, ad
wishing alone after twilight from the-palace going-down to
primam pervenit custodiam. Quem ut vigiles fugientem
the-first came watch whom when the-watchmen fleeing
et quasi metu se declinantem viderunt, comprehensum,
and as-if from-fear himself turning-aside saw seized
quis esset quove pergeret, interrogarunt. Qui e multis
who he-was or-whither he-went they-asked who of many
unum se esse et lupanar petere dixit. Cui mox:
one himself to-be and the-brothel to-seek said to-whom soon
'Caesum te acriter', inquiunt, 'compedibusque strictum usque
beaten you sharply they-say and-in-fetters bound until
in crastinum reservabimus'. Quibus respondit: 'μη ἀδελφοῖ
into the-morrow we-shall-keep to-whom he-answered not brothers
μη, mi adelfi mi', quod interpretatur: 'nequaquam, fratres,
not not brothers not which is-interpreted by-no-means brothers
nequaquam; accipite quod porto, permittite ire quo volo'.
by-no-means take what I-carry let to-go whither I-wish
Qui duodecim acceptis aureis eum protinus dimiserunt.
who twelve received gold-pieces him at-once let-go
Inde vero transiens ad secundam venit custodiam. Quo
thence but passing to the-second he-came watch where
quemadmodum et in prima captus datisque XX aureis
as also in the-first captured and-given twenty gold-pieces
est dimissus. Ad tertiam deinde dum venisset, est captus,
he-was let-go to the-third then when he-had-come he-was captured

verum non ut primo ac secundo datis aureis est dimissus,
but not as at-the-first and the-second given gold-pieces was let-go
sed ablatis omnibus, compedibusque graviter strictus, pugnis
but taken-away all and-in-fetters heavily bound with-fists
flagrisque diu verberatus, custodia usque in crastinum
and-whips long beaten in-custody until into the-morrow
producendus servatur. His itaque discedentibus custodem
to-be-brought-forth he-is-kept these and-so departing the-keeper
imperator ad sese carceris vocans: 'φιλε μου, file mu', quod
the-emperor to himself of-the-prison calling friend my friend my which
est 'amice mi', inquit, 'Leonem imperatorem nostin'? 'Qui',
is friend my he-said Leo the-emperor do-you-know how
infit, 'noscere possim, quem vidisse me non meminerim?
says to-know could-I whom to-have-seen me not I-remember
Ad publicum sane, raro quamquam, dum procedit, a longe,
to the-public indeed seldom although when he-goes-out from afar
quia propter nequeo, cum intueor, mirabile quiddam et non
since near I-cannot when I-gaze wonderful something and not
hominem videre videor. Dare autem te operam, quo hinc
a-man to-see I-seem to-give moreover you effort by-which from-here
inlaesus exeas, quam id percontari, tibi commodius
unharmed you-may-go-out than it to-inquire for-you more-fitting
est. Non aeque vos, σε εις την φιλακην και αυτον εις τὸ
it-is not equally you you in the prison and him in the
χρυσοτρίκλινον, se is tin filakìn kè autòn is tò chrisotriclinon,
golden-dining-hall you in the prison and him in the golden-dining-hall
te in carcere et illum in aureum triclinium, fortuna
you in prison and him in the-golden dining-hall fortune
fovet. Parva sunt haec, graviora addantur vincula, ne sit
cherishes small are these heavier let-be-added chains lest there-be
spatium de imperatore meditandi'. Cui: 'Desine', inquit,
room about the-emperor for-musing to-whom stop he-says

‘desine; ipse enim sum Leo imperator augustus, qui de
stop I-myself for am Leo the-emperor august who from
palatii dignitate non bono omine prodii’. Carceris autem
of-the-palace the-dignity not with-good omen came-out of-the-prison moreover
custos, sperans non vera esse quae dixerat: ‘Egon’, inquit,
the-keeper hoping not true to-be what he-had-said I he-says
‘hominem inpurum, bona sua cum meretricibus abligurrientem,
a-man filthy goods his with harlots devouring
imperatorem credam? Quoniam temet tu neglexisti, pro te
an-emperor should-believe since yourself you have-neglected for you
ego dispitiam mathesin. Ακουσον, inquam, Mars trigonus,
I shall-consider astrology hear I-say Mars trine
Saturnus Venerem respicit, Iuppiter quadratus, Mercurius tibi
Saturn Venus regards Jupiter square Mercury to-you
iratus, Sol rotundus, Luna in saltu est, mala Fortuna
angry the-Sun round the-Moon in a-leap is bad Fortune
te premit’. Imperator vero: ‘Ut’, inquit, ‘vera probes
you presses the-emperor but that he-says true you-may-prove
esse quae dico, dum matutinale dederint signum, ante
to-be what I-say when the-morning they-shall-have-given signal before
enim non ausi sumus, mecum ad palatium potiori quam
for not dared have-we with-me to the-palace by-a-better than
ego descenderim omine venito. Si me ut imperatorem non
I came-down omen come if me as emperor not
istic recipi videris, occidito. Non minoris quippe criminis
there to-be-received you-see kill not of-less indeed crime
erit, me imperatorem dixisse, si non sum, quam aliquem
shall-it-be me emperor to-have-said if not I-am than someone
occidisse. Si vero te ob id mali quicquam pati formidas,
to-have-killed if but you for this evil anything to-suffer you-fear
haec fatiat mihi Deus et haec addat, si non potius
these-things may-do to-me God and these-things may-add if not rather

praemium quam pro hac re sumes supplitium'. Igitur
a-reward than for this thing you-shall-take punishment therefore
credulus carceris custos effectus, dato, ut imperator dixerat,
believing of-the-prison the-keeper made given as the-emperor had-said
matutinali signo, eum ad palatium usque comitatur. Cumque
the-morning signal him to the-palace all-the-way accompanies and-when
eodem venisset, mirabiliter sicut a se noscentibus susceptus,
there he-had-come wonderfully as by him those-knowing received
comitem suum exanimatum admiratione nimia reddidit. Sane
companion his lifeless with-wonder excessive he-made indeed
dum dignitates omnes huic occurrere, laudes reddere, adorare,
while the-dignitaries all him to-meet praises to-render to-adore
soccos detrahere, alia atque alia pro se quemquam facere
shoes to-draw-off other and other-things for him everyone to-do
contemplaretur, emori ei tunc atque vivere satius esset.
he-beheld to-die for-him then than to-live better would-be
Cui imperator: 'Contemplare', inquit, 'nunc mathesin, et
to-whom the-emperor consider he-says now astrology and
si vere quo huc adveneris omine dixeris, veram te
if truly with-what hither you-came omen you-shall-have-said true you
augurandi scientiam habere probabis. Prius tamen quaeso,
of-divining knowledge to-have you-shall-prove first yet I-ask
quid morbi sit, proferas, quod te tam pallidum reddidit'.
what of-illness it-is you-bring-forth which you so pale has-made
Cui: 'Parcarum', infit, 'optima Cloto iam nere desinit,
to-whom of-the-Fates says the-best Clotho now to-spin ceases
Lachesis vero in torquendo laborare amplius non cupit,
Lachesis but in twisting to-toil more not desires
saevissima autem harum Atropos articulos iam in condilum
the-cruelest moreover of-them Atropos her-fingers already in the-knuckle
solam imperii tui sententiam expectat, ut fila contrahens
alone of-empire your the-sentence awaits that the-threads drawing-together

rumpat. Palliditatis autem vultus mei causa est, animam
she-may-break of-the-pallor moreover of-face my the-cause is the-soul
a capite descendisse secumque in inferiorem corporis
from the-head to-have-come-down and-with-itself into the-lower of-the-body
partem sanguinem perduxisse'. Subridens igitur imperator:
part the-blood to-have-drawn smiling therefore the-emperor
'Recipe', inquit, 'animam, recipe, et cum hac bisbinas
take-back he-says the-soul take-back and with this twice-two
aureorum libras adsume; nulli vero de me, nisi aufugisse,
of-gold-pieces pounds take to-no-one but about me except to-have-fled
respondeas'. His ita gestis imperator vigiles, qui se captum
answer these so done the-emperor the-watchmen who him captured
dimiserant, quique caesum custodiae manciparant, venire
had-let-go and-who beaten to-custody had-handed-over to-come
praecepit. Quibus et ait: 'Vigilantibus vobis custodiamque
ordered to-whom also he-says watching you and-guard
civitati praebentibus, numquid fures aliquando adulterosque
to-the-city providing whether thieves sometimes and-adulterers
offenditis'? Qui eum pretio accepto dimiserant, nil se
you-meet who him for-a-price received had-let-go nothing themselves
vidisse responderant; qui vero caesum illum custodiae
to-have-seen answered who but beaten him to-custody
manciparant, ita responderant: 'Praecepit δεσποτία σοῦ η
had-handed-over so answered ordered lordship your the
αγια, despotia su i agia, id est dominatio tua sancta, ut, si
holy lordship your the holy that is lordship your holy that if
vigiles post crepusculum quemquam aliquô deambulantem
the-watchmen after twilight anyone anywhere walking
offenderent, captum protinus verberibusque caesum custodiae
should-meet captured at-once and-with-blows beaten to-custody
traderent. Tuis itaque, dominator sanctissime, iussionibus
they-should-hand-over your and-so lord most-holy commands

nos parentes hac, quae praesentem praecessit diem, nocte
we obeying in-this which the-present preceded day night
quendam lupanaria percurrentem cepimus, flagellavimus
a-certain-man the-brothels running-about we-took we-flogged
carcerique impositum imperio tuo sancto producendum
and-in-prison placed for-the-command your holy to-be-brought-forth
servavimus'. Quibus imperator: 'Cito', inquit, 'ut in medium
we-kept to-whom the-emperor quickly he-says that into the-middle
producatur, potestas imperii mei etiam atque etiam imperat'.
he-be-brought-forth the-power of-empire my again and again commands
Nec mora, vinctus ut ducatur, percurrunt. Quem dum
nor delay bound that he-be-led they-run-off whom when
aufugisse audirent, semivivi ad palatium sunt reversi. Quod
to-have-fled they-heard half-dead to the-palace have returned which
cum nuntiassent imperatori, mox imperator se exutum
when they-had-announced to-the-emperor soon the-emperor himself stripped
nimisque iis caesum ostendens: 'δεύτε, deute', id est
and-very by-these beaten showing come come that is
'venite', inquit, 'μη διλησεται, mi diliasete, nolite formidare;
come he-says do-not fear not fear do-not fear
ipse ego sum quem flagellastis quemque e carcere nunc
myself I am whom you-flogged and-whom from prison now
aufugisse confiditis. Scio enim et vere credo, quod non
to-have-fled you-trust I-know for and truly I-believe that not
imperatorem, sed imperatoris inimicum tundere cogitastis.
the-emperor but of-the-emperor the-enemy to-beat you-thought
Hos, qui me non ut imperatorem, sed ut latronem vitaeque
these who me not as emperor but as a-robber and-of-life
meae insidiatorem dimisêre, mortetenus verberatos urbe
my a-plotter let-go unto-death beaten from-the-city
expelli bonisque omnibus privari mea non solum cupit,
to-be-expelled and-of-goods all to-be-deprived my not only desires

verum etiam iubet auctoritas. Vos autem meis non
but also commands authority you moreover with-my not
solum, sed horum etiam perversorum divitiis dono'. Quod
only but of-these also perverse with-the-riches I-reward which
quam prudenter egerit, paternitas tua in hoc animadvertere
how wisely he-did fatherhood your in this to-notice
poterit, quoniam ceteri extunc civitatem diligentissime
shall-be-able since the-others thenceforth the-city most-diligently
custodire, hunc etiam absentem quasi praesentem sperare.
to-guard him even absent as-if present to-expect
Sicque factum est, ut et imperator amplius de palatio
and-so done it-was that both the-emperor further from the-palace
noctu non descenderet et sui omnia fideliter custodirent.
by-night not went-down and his-men all-things faithfully guarded
12 Alium, quem ipse egit, ludum silentio tegi
another which he-himself played game in-silence to-be-covered
absurdum esse diiudico. Constantinopolitanum palatium ob
absurd to-be I-judge the-Constantinopolitan palace for
imperatoris salutem multorum praesidiis militum custoditur.
of-the-emperor the-safety of-many by-the-garrisons of-soldiers is-guarded
Custodientibus vero victus censusque cottidianus non parvus
to-those-guarding but food and-pay daily not small
inpenditur. Contigit itaque XII post corporis refectionem in
is-spent it-happened and-so twelve after of-the-body refreshment in
ipso diei fervore una in domo quiescere. Mos denique
the-very of-the-day heat one in house to-rest the-custom finally
imperatoris erat cunctis quiescentibus totum perreptare
of-the-emperor was with-all resting the-whole to-creep-through
palatium. Qui cum eodem die quadam, quo XII
palace who when to-the-same-place day a-certain on-which the-twelve
memorati loethoeo sese dederant, pervenisset, ligno
mentioned to-Lethe themselves had-given had-come with-a-stick

modico, ut non incallidus, ostii pessulo proiecto ingrediendi
small as not unskillfully of-the-door the-bolt thrust-back of-entering
sibi aditum praebuit. Undecim vero dormientibus, ut
to-himself access gave eleven but sleeping so-that
ars artem falleret, duodecimus pervigil stertere ceu dormiens
art art might-cheat the-twelfth wide-awake to-snore as-if sleeping
coeperat contractisque in fatiem brachiis totum, quod
had-begun and-drawn over his-face arms all that
imperator faceret, diligentissime considerabat. Ingressus igitur
the-emperor did most-diligently considered having-entered therefore
imperator, dum obdormire cunctos perspiceret, aureorum
the-emperor when to-sleep all he-perceived of-gold
numismatorum libram pectori uniuscuiusque apposuit;
coins a-pound on-the-breast of-each he-placed
moxque clam regressus, ostium, ut prius fuerat, clausit.
and-soon secretly having-returned the-door as before it-had-been closed
Eo autem hoc egit, quatinus exitati et de lucro
for-this moreover this he-did so-that awakened both over the-gain
gratularentur ac, qualiter hoc accideret, non mediocriter
they-might-rejoice and how this happened not moderately
mirarentur. Denique discedente imperatore, qui vigil solus
might-wonder finally departing the-emperor he-who awake alone
extiterat, surrexit dormientiumque nummos aureos sibi
had-been rose and-of-the-sleepers the-coins golden to-himself
adsumpsit atque reposuit; postea vero quieti sese dedit.
took and put-away afterward but to-rest himself gave
Imperator igitur pro hoc ludo sollicitus post nonam horam
the-emperor therefore over this game anxious after the-ninth hour
XII hos, quos nominavimus, ad se venire praecepit eosque
twelve these whom we-have-named to himself to-come ordered and-them
ita convenit: ‘Si forte vestrum quempiam somnii visio
thus addressed if perchance of-you anyone of-a-dream the-vision

deterruit aut hilarem reddidit, ut in medium proferat,
has-frightened or cheerful has-made that into the-middle he-bring-it-forth
mea iubet auctoritas; nec minus etiam, si quid novitatis
my orders authority nor less also if any novelty
expergefactus quisquam vidit, ut detegat, imperat'. Hi
awakened anyone has-seen that he-disclose-it commands these
itaque, quemadmodum nihil viderant, nil se vidisse
and-so as nothing they-had-seen nothing themselves to-have-seen
responderant. Magis autem super hoc admirati, 'conticuere
answered more moreover over this marveling they-fell-silent
intentique ora tenebant'. Sperans igitur imperator hos non
and-intent their-faces held hoping therefore the-emperor these not
rei inscitia, sed calliditate aliqua reticere, succensus
of-the-thing from-ignorance but by-cunning some to-be-silent inflamed
est ut qui magis coepitque nonnulla terribilia reticentibus
was as he-who more and-began some terrible-things to-the-silent
comminari. Quod qui omnium conscius erat ut audivit,
to-threaten which he-who of-all aware was when he-heard
huiusmodi humillima et supplici voce imperatorem convenit:
of-this-kind with-most-humble and suppliant voice the-emperor addressed
'φιλανθροπε βασιλευ, filanthrope vasileu', id est 'humanissime
most-humane emperor most-humane emperor that is most-humane
imperator, hi quid viderint, nescio; ego tamen delectabile,
emperor these what they-have-seen I-know-not I yet a-delightful
atque utinam quod persaepe mihi contingeret, somnium vidi.
and would-that which very-often to-me might-befall dream saw
Undecim his conservis meis hodie vere, sed non oportune
eleven these with-fellow-servants my today truly but not seasonably
dormientibus visus sum, quasi non dormiens, vigilare. Ecce
sleeping seen I-was as-if not sleeping to-wake behold
autem magnitudo imperii tui quasi occulte ostium reserans
moreover the-greatness of-empire your as-if secretly the-door unbarring

clanculumque ingressa libram auri adposuit supra pectus
and-secretly having-entered a-pound of-gold placed on the-breast
omnium nostrum. Cumque imperium tuum quasi repedare
of-all of-us and-when empire your as-if to-go-back
sotiosque hac in visione cernerem dormitare, continuo ceu
and-the-companions this in vision I-saw to-sleep at-once as-if
laetus exurgens undecim dormientium aureorum numismatorum
glad rising of-the-eleven sleepers of-gold coins
libras tuli meoque in marsupio, in quo una erat, apposui,
the-pounds I-took and-my in purse in which one was I-placed
quatinus ob transgressionem decalogi ne solum essent
so-that because-of the-transgression of-the-decalogue lest only they-were
XI, verum ob memoriam apostolorum mea una adhibita
eleven but for the-memory of-the-apostles mine one added
essent et ipsae XII. Visio haec, imperator auguste, bonum
they-might-be also themselves twelve vision this emperor august good
sit, usque modo me non deterruit, sed hilarem reddidit.
may-it-be until now me not has-frightened but cheerful has-made
Ô utinam interpretatio alia imperio tuo non placeat. Nam
O would-that interpretation another to-empire your not may-please for
et me μαντην και ονιροπολον, mantin ke oniropolon', id est
also me a-prophet and dream-seller prophet and dream-seller that is
'divinum et somnii venditorem, esse liquido patet'. His auditis
a-diviner and of-dreams a-seller to-be clearly is-plain these heard
magno est imperator cachinno inflatus; verum prudentiam
with-great was the-emperor guffaw puffed but the-prudence
huius atque sollicitudinem plus admiratus protinus infit:
of-this-one and care more admiring at-once says
'Antehac σε ουτε μαντην ουτε ονιροπολον, se ute mantin ute
before-this you neither a-prophet nor dream-seller you neither prophet nor
oniropolon, te neque divinum neque somnii venditorem esse
dream-seller you neither a-diviner nor of-dreams a-seller to-be

audivi. Hanc vero rem nunc ita aperte dixti, ut nihil
I-heard this but matter now so openly you-have-told that nothing
circuitionis usus esses. Sed quia vigilandi facultatem sive
of-circumlocution used you-have but since of-waking the-faculty or
auspicandi scientiam habere non posses, nisi divino tibi esset
of-divining the-knowledge to-have not you-could unless by-divine to-you it-were
munere datum, seu verum sit, ut speramus, immo credimus,
gift given whether true it-be as we-hope nay we-believe
seu falsum, καθως ο Λουκιανος, cathos o Lukianos, id est
or false as the Lucian as the Lucian that is
sicut Lucianus de quodam dicit, quod dormiens multa
as Lucian about a-certain-man says that sleeping many-things
reppererit atque a gallo exitatus nihil invenerit, tu tamen
he-found and by the-cock awakened nothing found you yet
quicquid videris, quicquid senseris, quicquid etiam inveneris,
whatever you-have-seen whatever you-have-felt whatever also you-have-found
tuum sit'. His auditis, quanta ceteri sint confusione
yours may-it-be these heard with-how-great the-others were confusion
repleti, quantoque hic sit gaudio plenus, eorum quisque
filled and-with-how-great this-one was joy full of-them each
in se personas suscipiens animadvertere poterit.
into himself the-persons taking-on to-notice shall-be-able

Unable to subdue Zwentibald of Moravia, Arnulf opens the passes and calls in the Hungarians, a help that brings ruin on all Europe. Charles the Bald dies, and Guy and Berengar, sworn friends, had agreed to share his realm. Guy is anointed at Rome, but the Franks choose Odo after Guy's steward haggles over a meal at Metz, so Guy breaks his oath, invades Italy, and defeats Berengar on the Trebbia and again near Brescia.

Arnulfus interea, earum quae sub Arcturo sunt gentium rex 13
Arnulf meanwhile of-those which under the-Bear are of-peoples the-king
fortissimus, cum Centebaldum Maravanorum ducem, quem
most-strong since Zwentibald of-the-Moravians the-duke whom
supra memoravimus, sibi viriliter repugnantem debellare
above we-mentioned to-himself manfully resisting to-subdue
nequiret, depulsis his, pro dolor, munitissimis interpositionibus,
he-could-not removed these for grief most-fortified barriers
quas vulgo clusas nominari praediximus, Hungariorum
which commonly the-Clusae to-be-named we-said-before of-the-Hungarians
gentem cupidam, audacem, omnipotentis Dei ignaram,
the-people greedy bold of-almighty God ignorant
scelerum omnium non insciam, caedis et rapinarum
of-crimes all not unacquainted of-slaughter and of-plunder
solummodo avidam, in auxilium convocat; si tamen auxilium
only greedy to help summons if yet help
dici potest, quod paulo post eo moriente cum genti
to-be-called it-can which a-little after he dying both to-the-people
suae tum ceteris in meridie occasuque degentibus nationibus
his-own and to-the-other in the-south and-west dwelling nations
grave periculum, immo exitium fuit. Quid igitur? Centebaldus
a-grave peril nay destruction was what therefore Zwentibald
vincitur, subiugatur, fit tributarius; sed non solus. O
is-conquered is-subjugated is-made tributary but not alone O

caecam regnandi Arnulfi regis cupiditatem! o infelicem
blind of-reigning of-Arnulf the-king greed O unhappy
amarumque diem! Unius homuntii deiectio fit totius
and-bitter day of-one manikin the-overthrow becomes of-all
Europae contricio. Quot mulieribus viduitatem, patribus
Europe the-ruin how-many for-women widowhood for-fathers
orbitatem, virginibus corruptionem, sacerdotibus populisque
childlessness for-virgins corruption for-priests and-peoples
Dei captivitatem, ecclesiis desolationem, terris inhabitantibus
of-God captivity for-churches desolation for-lands for-inhabitants
solitudinem, caeca ambitio paras! Legistin', obsecro, ipsius
solitude blind ambition you-prepare have-you-read I-beg of-the-very
veritatis verba dicentis: 'Quid prodest homini, si totum
truth the-words saying what does-it-profit a-man if the-whole
mundum lucretur, animae vero suae detrimentum patiatur;
world he-gain of-the-soul but his-own loss he-suffer
aut quam dabit homo commutationem pro anima sua'?
or what shall-give a-man in-exchange for soul his
Quod si te veri iudicis non terruit severitas, ipsa
but if you of-the-true judge not terrified the-severity itself
saltem furorem tuum humanitatis temperaret communitas.
at-least fury your of-humanity should-have-tempered the-fellowship
Eras enim inter homines homo, si dignitate sublimis,
you-were for among men a-man if in-dignity exalted
non tamen natura dissimilis. Flebilis haec miserabilisque
not yet in-nature unlike lamentable this and-wretched
conditio, cum illa bestiarum serpentium seu alitum genera,
condition when those of-beasts of-serpents or of-birds the-kinds
quae intolerabilis feritas ac loetale virus ab hominibus
which intolerable ferocity and deadly venom from men
separata esse facit, ut sunt basilisci, reguli vel rinocerotes
separated to-be makes as are basilisks cockatrices or rhinoceroses

seu gripes, quae etiam aspectu ipso cunctis perniciosa esse
or griffins which even by-the-sight itself to-all destructive to-be
videntur, inter sese tamen pro origine ipsius affectionisque
seem among themselves yet for of-origin their-own and-of-affection
consortio pacata et innoxia perseverant; homo autem, ad
the-fellowship peaceful and harmless persist man moreover to
imaginem similitudinemque Dei formatus, legis Dei
the-image and-likeness of-God formed of-the-law of-God
conscius, rationis capax, non solum proximum non amare
conscious of-reason capable not only the-neighbor not to-love
iuvat, sed et odisse plurimum valeat. Videamus igitur, quid
pleases but also to-hate very-much may-avail let-us-see therefore what
Iohannes, non quilibet, sed virgo ille egregius, secreti
John not anyone but the-virgin that outstanding of-the-secret
caelestis conscius, cui Christus in cruce matrem virginem
heavenly sharer to-whom Christ on the-cross mother the-virgin
virgini commendavit, super talibus dixerat: 'Qui odit
to-the-virgin commended about such-things had-said who hates
fratrem suum, homicida est; et scitis, quia omnis homicida
brother his a-murderer is and you-know that every murderer
non habet vitam aeternam in se manentem'. Sed redeamus
not has life eternal in himself abiding but let-us-return
ad rem. Devicto namque Centebaldo Maravanorum duce,
to the-matter overcome for Zwentibald of-the-Moravians duke
Arnulfus pace habita regno potitur. Hungarii interim
Arnulf peace had of-the-kingdom takes-possession the-Hungarians meanwhile
observato exitu contemplatique regionem cordibus malum,
observed the-exit and-having-surveyed the-region in-their-hearts the-evil
quod post in propatulo apparuit, machinabantur.
which afterward in the-open appeared were-plotting

14 Dum haec aguntur, rex Galliae Karolus, qui cognominatus
while these-things are-done the-king of-Gaul Charles who surnamed
est Calvus, praesentem moriendo mutavit vitam. Cui dum
is the-Bald the-present by-dying exchanged life whom while
viveret, nobiles duo ex Italia praepotentes principes serviebant,
he-lived noble two from Italy most-powerful princes served
quorum Wido alter, alter dictus est Berengarius. Hi sane
of-whom Guy one the-other called was Berengar these indeed
tanto sunt amicitiarum foedere glutinati, ut hoc sibi
with-so-great are of-friendships bond glued that this to-themselves
iureiurando promitterent, quia, si regi Karolo superstites
by-oath they-promised that if to-the-king Charles surviving
forent, alterius alter ordinationi conniveret, scilicet ut
they-should-be of-the-other the-one to-the-appointment should-consent namely that
Wido quam Romanam dicunt Franciam, Berengarius optineret
Guy which Roman they-call Francia Berengar should-obtain
Italiam. Sed cum nonnulla sint incerta et instabilia amicitiarum
Italy but since some are uncertain and unstable of-friendships
genera, quae diversis modis humanum genus dilectionis
kinds which in-diverse ways the-human race of-love
societate conectunt, ut quosdam praecedens commendatio
by-the-fellowship bind as some a-preceding introduction
postmodum amicitiae facit inire commertia, alios negociationis
afterward of-friendship makes to-enter dealings others of-trade
seu militiae vel artis ac studii similitudo, quae etiam,
or of-soldiering or of-art and of-study likeness which also
sicut ex diversis vel lucri vel libidinis vel necessitudinum
as from diverse either of-gain or of-lust or of-needs
variarum sotietatibus adquiruntur, ita intercedente qualibet
various by-fellowships are-acquired so intervening any
divortii occasione solvuntur: hoc tamen est, hoc inquam

amicitiae genus, quod multis experimentis est saepissime
of-friendship kind which by-many experiences has most-often
comprobatum, nullo modo eos, qui amicitiarum foedus
been-proved in-no way those who of-friendships the-bond
coniurationis iniere principio, indiruptam quivisse
of-a-sworn-compact have-entered at-the-beginning unbroken to-have-been-able
servare concordiam. Sane quidem callidissimus ille humano
to-keep concord indeed truly most-cunning that to-the-human
generi inimicus, ut homines praevaricatores sui faciat
race enemy so-that men transgressors of-his-own he-may-make
sacramenti, celerius sagatiusque ad inrumpendam amicitiam
oath more-quickly and-more-shrewdly for breaking friendship
laborat. Quod si a minus recte sapientibus de vero
labors but if from less rightly wise-men about the-true
amicitiarum genere percontamur, respondebimus concordiam
of-friendships kind we-ask we-shall-answer concord
veramque amicitiam nisi inter emendatos mores eiusdemque
and-true friendship except among amended morals and-of-the-same
virtutis et propositi viros stare non posse.
virtue and purpose men to-stand not to-be-able
Contigit itaque utrumque, Widonem scilicet atque Berengarium, 15
it-happened and-so both Guy namely and Berengar
Karoli regis funeri deesse. Cuius tamen interitum Wido
of-Charles the-king from-the-funeral to-be-absent whose yet death Guy
ut audivit, Romam profectus absque Francorum consilio totius
when he-heard to-Rome having-set-out without of-the-Franks counsel of-all
Franciae unctionem suscepit imperii. Franci itaque Oddonem,
Francia the-anointing received of-the-empire the-Franks and-so Odo
quoniam Wido aberat, regem constituunt. Berengarius vero
since Guy was-away king appoint Berengar but

Widonis consilio, quemadmodum ei iureiurando promiserat,
of-Guy by-counsel as to-him by-oath he-had-promised
Italici regni suscepit imperium. Wido autem Franciam petit.
of-the-Italian kingdom received the-rule Guy moreover Francia seeks
16 Cumque Burgundionum regna transiens Franciam quam
and-when of-the-Burgundians the-kingdoms crossing Francia which
Romanam dicunt ingredi vellet, Francorum nuntii ei
Roman they-call to-enter he-wished of-the-Franks the-messengers him
occurrunt se redire nuntiantes, eo quod longa expectatione
meet him to-return announcing by-that that by-long waiting
fatigati, dum sine rege diu esse non possent, Oddonem
wearied since without a-king long to-be not they-could Odo
cunctis petentibus elegerunt. Fertur autem hac occasione
with-all asking they-chose it-is-said moreover on-this occasion
Francos Widonem regem sibi non adsumpsisse. Nam dum
the-Franks Guy as-king for-themselves not to-have-taken for while
ad Metensem venturus esset urbem, quae potentissima in
to of-Metz about-to-come he-was the-city which most-powerful in
regno Lotharii claret, praemisit dapiferum suum, qui alimenta
the-kingdom of-Lothar shines he-sent-ahead steward his who food
illi more regio praepararet. Metensis vero episcopus
for-him after-the-manner royal should-prepare of-Metz but the-bishop
dum cibaria ei multa secundum Francorum consuetudinem
when foods to-him many according-to of-the-Franks the-custom
ministraret, huiusmodi a dapifero responsa suscepit: ‘Si equum
supplied of-this-kind from the-steward answers he-received if a-horse
saltem mihi dederis, faciam, ut tercia obsonatus
at-least to-me you-shall-have-given I-shall-bring-about that with-a-third of-the-provision
huius parte sit rex Wido contentus’. Quod episcopus audiens:
this part be king Guy content which the-bishop hearing
‘Non decet’, inquit, ‘talem super nos regnare regem, qui decem
not it-befits he-says such over us to-reign a-king who for-ten

dragmis vile sibi obsonium praeparat'. Sicque factum
drachmas cheap for-himself a-meal prepares and-so it-came-about
est, ut Widonem desererent, Oddonem autem eligerent.
was that Guy they-deserted Odo moreover they-chose
Francorum igitur non parum Wido perturbatus legationibus, 17
of-the-Franks therefore not a-little Guy disturbed by-embassies
nonnullis coepit cogitationibus aestuari, tam ex Italico
some began with-thoughts to-seethe as-much from the-Italian
regno Berengario iureiurando promisso, quam ex Francorum
kingdom to-Berengar by-oath promised as from of-the-Franks
praesertim, quod poenitus se non posse sciverat
especially which wholly himself not to-be-able he-had-known
adipisci. Inter utramque autem hanc aestuationem, quoniam
to-obtain between both moreover this seething since
Francorum rex esse nequibat, frangere quod Berengario
of-the-Franks king to-be he-could-not to-break which to-Berengar
fecerat iusiurandum deliberat; collectoque prout potuit
he-had-made the-oath he-decides and-gathered as he-could
exercitu — traxerat sane et a Francis quandam affinitatis
an-army he-had-drawn indeed also from the-Franks a-certain of-kinship
lineam—, Italiamque concite ingressus, Camerinos atque
line and-Italy quickly having-entered the-Camerini and
Spoletinos fiducialiter ut propinquos adit, Berengarii
Spoletans confidently as kinsmen he-approaches of-Berengar
etiam partibus faventes, ut infidos pecuniarum gratia
even the-party favoring as faithless of-money for-the-sake
adquirit; itaque Berengario bellum parat.
he-acquires and-so for-Berengar war he-prepares
Copiis denique utraque ex parte collectis iuxta fluvium 18
forces finally both from side gathered near the-river
Triviam, qui quinque Placentia miliariis extat, civile
Trebbia which five from-Piacenza miles stands a-civil

praeparant bellum. In quo cum partibus ex utrisque caderent
they-prepare war in which when on-sides from both fell
multi, Berengarius fugam petiit, triumphum Wido obtinuit.
many Berengar flight sought triumph Guy obtained
19 Nec mora, diebus interpositis paucis, multitudine Berengarius
nor delay days interposed few a-multitude Berengar
collecta in Brixiae latissimos campos Widoni bellum praeparat.
gathered in of-Brescia the-broadest plains for-Guy war prepares
Ubi cum maxima strages fieret, fuga sese Berengarius
where when the-greatest slaughter was-made by-flight himself Berengar
liberavit.
freed

VII · ARNULF IN ITALY

Berengar calls in Arnulf, who sends his son Zwentibald to Pavia, where Guy has fortified the Vernavola; Zwentibald goes home with Guy's silver. Arnulf then comes himself, storms Bergamo and hangs its count Ambrose at the gate, and Milan and Pavia submit. At Rome, shut against him, a hare startled by his army sends the Romans fleeing from the walls, and the Leonine city is taken.

20 Iam vero Berengarius, cum Widoni resistere copiarum
now but Berengar since Guy to-resist of-forces
paucitate nequiret, potentissimum, quem praediximus,
from-the-fewness he-could-not the-most-powerful whom we-mentioned-before
Arnulfum regem in auxilium rogat, promittens se suosque
Arnulf king to help asks promising himself and-his-men
eius potentiae servituros, si virtutis suae amminiculo Widonem
his power about-to-serve if of-strength his by-the-aid Guy
superaret regnumque sibi Italicum vendicaret. Huius plane
he-overcame and-the-kingdom for-him Italian he-claimed of-this indeed

tantae promissionis gratia accitus rex Arnulfus filium
so-great promise for-the-sake summoned the-king Arnulf son
suum Centebaldum, quem ex concubina genuerat, valido
his Zwentibald whom from a-concubine he-had-begotten a-strong
cum exercitu huius in auxilium dirigit, veneruntque pariter
with army of-this-one to help sends and-they-came together
omni sub celeritate Papiam. Wido vero ita fluviolum, qui
all with speed to-Pavia Guy but so the-little-river which
Papiam uno ex latere alluit, Vernávola nomine, tam sudibus
Pavia one from side washes Vernavola by-name both with-stakes
quam exercitu munierat, quatinus altera alteram, ipso
and with-an-army had-fortified that the-one the-other itself
medio discurrente, pars partem oppugnare nequiret.
in-the-middle running party party to-attack could-not
Unus et vigesimus dies iam transierat, cum, sicut diximus, 21
one and twentieth day already had-passed when as we-said
altera pars alteram nocere non posset; et Bagoariorum unus
the-one party the-other to-harm not could and of-the-Bavarians one
cottidie agminibus exprobrans Italorum inbelles eos atque
daily the-ranks taunting of-the-Italians unwarlike them and
equitandi inscios clamitabat. Ad augmentum etiam dedecoris eos
of-riding ignorant kept-shouting to the-increase also of-disgrace them
inter prosiliit hastamque uni de manu excussit sicque laetus
among he-leapt-forth and-the-spear of-one from the-hand knocked and-so glad
in suorum castra repedavit. Hubaldus igitur Bonefatii pater,
into of-his-men the-camp returned Hubald therefore of-Boniface the-father
qui post tempore nostro Camerinorum et Spoletinorum
who afterward in-time our of-the-Camerini and of-the-Spoletans
extitit marchio, tantum gentis suae cupiens dedecus vindicare
became marquis so-great of-people his desiring the-disgrace to-avenge
clipeo accepto praedicto mox obviam Bagoario tendit. Is autem
a-shield taken the-aforesaid at-once against Bavarian heads he moreover

triumphi praeteriti non solum non immemor, sed eo factus
of-the-triumph past not only not unmindful but by-it made
audatior, ceu e victoria iam securus hunc contra properat
bolder as-if of victory already secure him against hastens
laetus. Coepitque vertibilem equum modo impetu vehementi
glad and-began the-wheeling horse now with-a-charge violent
dimittere, strictis modo habenis retrahere. Memoratus vero
to-let-go with-tightened now reins to-draw-back the-mentioned but
Hubaldus recta se coepit adire. Cumque in eo esset,
Hubald straight himself began to-approach and-when on it he-was
ut mutuis sese vulneribus figerent, more solito
that with-mutual each-other wounds they-should-pierce after-the-manner usual
Bagoarius equo versili varios perplexosque per amfractus
the-Bavarian on-horse turning various and-intricate through windings
coepit discurrere, quatinus iis argumentis Hubaldum
began to-run-about so-that by-these devices Hubald
posset decipere. Verum cum hac arte terga verteret, ut
he-might to-deceive but when by-this art his-back he-turned so-that
mox rediens Hubaldum ex adverso percuteret, equus, cui
soon returning Hubald from opposite he-might-strike the-horse which
Hubaldus insederat, vehementer calcaribus tunditur et per
Hubald had-sat-on violently with-spurs is-struck and through
scapulas, antequam reverti Bagoarius posset, lancea ad
the-shoulders before to-turn-back the-Bavarian could with-the-lance to
cor usque perforatur. Hubaldus igitur freno Bagoaricum
the-heart even is-pierced Hubald therefore by-the-bridle the-Bavarian
percipiens equum, ipsum in medio fluvioli alveo
taking horse him in the-middle of-the-little-river in-the-bed
exutum hominem dereliquit; sicque suorum iniuriae ultor
stripped the-man left and-so of-his-men of-the-injury the-avenger
de triumpho ad suos redit hilarior. Hoc sane factum non
from triumph to his-men returns more-cheerful this indeed deed not

mediocrem Bagoariis terrorem, Italicis audatiam contulit.
moderate to-the-Bavarians terror to-the-Italians boldness brought
Inito quippe Bagoarii consilio nonnullisque Centebaldus a
entered indeed the-Bavarians counsel and-some Zwentibald from
Widone argenti acceptis ponderibus in propria remeavit.
Guy of-silver received weights to his-own returned
Igitur Berengarius dum ubi prospera sibi adversari 22
therefore Berengar when where prosperous-things to-himself to-be-adverse
prospiceret, cum Centebaldo pariter Arnulfi regis adit
he-foresaw with Zwentibald together of-Arnulf the-king approaches
potentiam, orans ac pollicens, ut si ipsum adiuvaret,
the-power praying and promising that if him he-helped
se totamque Italiam, ut ante promiserat, dicioni suae
himself and-all Italy as before he-had-promised to-the-dominion his
supponeret. Tantae siquidem, ut praediximus, promissionis
he-would-subject of-such indeed as we-said-before promise
gratia excitus copiis collectis non minimis Italiam adit.
for-the-sake roused forces gathered not least Italy he-approaches
Cui Berengarius, ut promissionis suae fidem daret,
to-whom Berengar that of-promise his pledge he-might-give
credulitatis arrabonem clipeum portat.
of-credence as-earnest a-shield carries
Susceptus itaque a Veronensibus ad urbem proficiscitur 23
received and-so by the-Veronese to the-city he-sets-out
Pergamum. Ubi dum firmissima loci munitione confisi,
Bergamo where when on-most-firm of-the-place fortification trusting
immo decepti homines ei occurrere nollent, castrametatus
nay deceived the-men him to-meet would-not having-encamped
eodem belli fortitudine urbem cepit, iugulat, trucidat.
there of-war by-strength the-city he-took slaughters butchers
Civitatis etiam comitem, Ambrosius nomine, cum ense,
of-the-city also the-count Ambrose by-name with sword

balteo, armillis ceterisque pretiosissimis indumentis suspendi
belt bracelets and-other most-precious garments to-be-hanged
ante portae ianuam fecit. Quod factum ceteris omnibus
before of-the-gate the-door he-had which deed to-the-other all
urbibus cunctisque principibus terrorem parvum non attulit;
cities and-all princes terror small not brought
quicumque hoc audierat, utraque auris eius tinniebat.
whoever this had-heard both ear his tingled

24 Mediolanenses igitur atque Ticinenses hac fama perterriti
the-Milanese therefore and the-Pavians by-this report terrified
eius non passi sunt praestolari adventum, verum praemissa
his not suffered have to-await arrival but sent-ahead
legatione iussioni suae se obtemperaturos promittunt.
an-embassy to-command his themselves about-to-obey they-promise
Ottonem itaque, Saxonum potentissimum ducem, — huius
Otto and-so of-the-Saxons most-powerful duke of-this
gloriosissimi atque invictissimi regis Ottonis, qui nunc
most-glorious and most-invincible king Otto who now
superest et feliciter regnat, avus — Mediolanium
survives and happily reigns the-grandfather to-Milan
defensionis gratia dirigit; recta ipse Ticinum tendit.
of-defense for-the-sake he-sends straight he-himself to-Pavia makes

25 Wido denique huius impetum ferre non valens Camerinum
Guy finally his onset to-bear not able Camerino
Spoletumque versus fugere coepit. Quem sine dilatione
and-Spoleto toward to-flee began whom without delay
acriter rex insequitur, urbes et castella omnia sibi
sharply the-king pursues cities and castles all to-himself
resistentia vi debellans. Nullum siquidem fuerat castrum
resisting by-force subduing none indeed had-been fortress
natura etiam ipsa munitum, quod virtuti huius saltem
by-nature even itself fortified which to-the-strength his at-least

resistere moliretur. Quid autem mirum, cum ipsa civitatum
to-resist would-try what moreover wonder when itself of-cities
omnium regina, magna scilicet Roma, huius impetum ferre
all the-queen great namely Rome his onset to-bear
nequiverit? Enimvero dum a Romanis ingrediendi Urbem huic
could-not for when by the-Romans of-entering the-City to-him
fidutia negaretur, convocatos ad sese milites ita convenit:
the-confidence was-denied called to himself the-soldiers thus he-addressed

'Magnanimi proceres et clari Marte secundo, 26
great-souled nobles and famous with-Mars favoring
Arma quibus studium fulvo radiare metallo,
arms to-whom the-zeal with-tawny to-gleam metal
Romulidae sueti vacuis quod condere scriptis,
the-sons-of-Romulus accustomed in-empty which to-store writings
Sumite nunc animos, vobis furor arma ministret!
take now spirits to-you fury arms may-supply
Non Pompeius adest, non Iulius ille beatus,
not Pompey is-here not Julius that blessed
Qui nostros domuit proavos mucrone feroces.
who our subdued forefathers with-the-sword fierce
Indolis huius enim summos deduxit ad Argos,
of-nature this for the-highest led-down to Argos
Protulit in lucem quem sancta Britannica mater.
brought-forth into light whom holy British mother
His torta studium pingues captare siluros
to-these with-twisted the-zeal fat to-catch catfish
Cannabe, non clipeos manibus gestare micantes!'
hemp not shields in-the-hands to-carry gleaming

27 His eroes dictis animos accensi vitam laudis aviditate
by-these the-heroes words in-spirit inflamed life of-praise from-greed
contempnunt. Clipeis denique cratibusque catervatim operti
despise with-shields finally and-with-hurdles in-troops covered
muros adire contendunt; plurima etiam bellorum paraverant
the-walls to-approach strive very-many also of-war they-had-prepared
instrumenta, cum inter agendum, populo considerante, contingit
engines when amid the-doing the-people looking-on it-happens
lepusculum clamore eius exterritum Urbem versus fugere.
a-little-hare by-the-shouting its terrified the-City toward to-flee
Quem dum exercitus, ut adsolet, vehementi impetu sequeretur,
which when the-army as is-wont with-violent charge followed
Romani putantes se inpugnari, de muro sese proiciunt.
the-Romans thinking themselves to-be-attacked from the-wall themselves throw
Quod populus cernens sagmatibus sellisque, quibus equis
which the-people seeing with-pack-saddles and-saddles on-which on-horses
insederant, iuxta murum proiectis, per eorum acervum
they-had-sat near the-wall thrown through their heap
murum ascendunt. Pars vero populi quaedam accepta
the-wall climb part but of-the-people a-certain taken
mox trabe quinquaginta pedum procera longitudine portam
at-once a-beam of-fifty feet of-tall length the-gate
quatiunt et Romam, quam Leonianam dicunt, in qua beati
shake and Rome which Leonine they-call in which of-blessed
Petri apostolorum principis pretiosum corpus quiescit, vi
Peter of-the-apostles the-prince the-precious body rests by-force
capiunt. Ceteri vero, qui trans Tiberim erant, hoc timore
they-take the-others but who across the-Tiber were by-this fear
conpulsi huius dominatui colla submittunt.
compelled his to-the-dominion their-necks submit

Arnulf beheads many Roman nobles who had wronged Pope Formosus, whose party had once driven the deacon Sergius from the altar. After the deaths of Formosus and Arnulf, Sergius becomes pope and has Formosus dug up, tried on the throne, mutilated, and thrown into the Tiber. Liutprand defends Formosus' ordinations, and when fishermen find the body, saints' images in Saint Peter's bow to it.

Hoc in tempore Formosus papa religiosissimus a Romanis 28
at-this in time Formosus the-pope most-religious by the-Romans
vehementer aflictabatur, cuius et hortatu Romam rex
violently was-afflicted whose also at-the-urging to-Rome the-king
Arnulfus advenerat. In cuius ingressu ulciscendo papae
Arnulf had-come at whose entry by-avenging of-the-pope
iniuriam multos Romanorum principes obviam sibi properantes
the-injury many of-the-Romans leaders to-meet him hastening
decollare praecepit.
to-behead he-ordered

Causa autem simultatis inter Formosum papam et Romanos 29
the-cause moreover of-the-enmity between Formosus the-pope and the-Romans
haec fuit. Formosi decessore defuncto Sergius quidam
this was of-Formosus the-predecessor dead Sergius a-certain
Romanae ecclesiae diaconus erat, quem Romanorum pars
of-the-Roman church deacon was whom of-the-Romans party
quaedam papam sibi elegerat. Quaedam vero pars non
a-certain as-pope for-itself had-chosen a-certain but party not
infima nominatum Formosum, Portuensis civitatis episcopum,
lowest the-named Formosus of-Porto city bishop
pro vera religione divinarumque doctrinarum scientia papam
for true religion and-of-divine doctrines knowledge pope
sibi fieri anhelabat. Nam dum in eo esset, ut Sergius
for-itself to-be-made panted for while on it he-was that Sergius

apostolorum vicarius ordinari debuisset, ea, quae Formosi
of-the-apostles vicar to-be-ordained he-ought that which of-Formosus
favebat partibus, pars Sergium non mediocri cum tumultu
favored the-side party Sergius with-no moderate with uproar
et iniuria ab altari expulit et Formosum papam constituit.
and injury from the-altar drove and Formosus pope established
30 Descenditque Sergius in Tusciam, quatinus Adelberti,
and-went-down Sergius into Tuscany so-that of-Adalbert
potentissimi marchionis, auxilio iuvaretur; quod et factum
the-most-powerful marquis by-the-help he-might-be-helped which also done
est. Nam Formoso defuncto atque Arnulfo in propria
was for Formosus dead and Arnulf in his-own-land
extincto is, qui post Formosi necem constitutus est, expellitur,
dead he who after of-Formosus the-death appointed was is-expelled
Sergiusque papa per Adelbertum constituitur. Quo constituto,
and-Sergius pope through Adalbert is-established who established
ut inpius doctrinarumque sanctarum ignarus, Formosum e
as impious and-of-doctrines holy ignorant Formosus from
sepulcro extrahere atque in sedem Romani pontificatus
the-tomb to-draw-out and on the-seat of-the-Roman pontificate
sacerdotalibus vestimentis indutum collocare praecepit. Cui
in-priestly vestments clothed to-place he-ordered to-whom
et ait: 'Cum Portuensis esses episcopus, cur ambitionis
also he-says when of-Porto you-were bishop why of-ambition
spiritu Romanam universalem usurpasti sedem?' His
in-the-spirit the-Roman universal did-you-usurp see these-things
expletis, sacratis mox exutum vestimentis digitisque tribus
completed of-the-sacred at-once stripped vestments and-fingers three
abscisis, in Tiberim iactare praecepit cunctosque, quos ipse
cut-off into the-Tiber to-throw he-ordered and-all whom he-himself
ordinaverat, gradu proprio depositos iterum ordinavit. Quod
had-ordained from-rank their-own deposed again ordained which

quam male egerit, pater sanctissime, in hoc animadvertere
how wrongly he-did father most-holy in this to-notice
poteris, quoniam et hi, qui a Iuda, domini nostri Iesu
you-shall-be-able since also those who from Judas of-the-Lord our Jesus
Christi proditore, ante proditionem salutem seu benedictionem
Christ the-betrayer before the-betrayal greeting or blessing
apostolicam perceperunt, ea post proditionem propriique
apostolic received of-it after the-betrayal and-of-his-own
corporis suspensionem minime sunt privati, nisi quos improba
body the-hanging by-no-means were deprived unless whom wicked
forte defaedarunt flagitia. Benedictio siquidem, quae ministris
perhaps have-defiled crimes the-blessing indeed which on-the-ministers
Christi impenditur, non per eum qui videtur, sed qui non
of-Christ is-bestowed not through him who is-seen but who not
videtur, sacerdotem infunditur. Neque enim qui rigat est
is-seen upon-the-priest is-poured neither for he-who waters is
aliquid, neque qui plantat, sed, qui incrementum dat, Deus.
anything nor he-who plants but who the-increase gives God
Quantae autem esset auctoritatis quantaeque religionis papa 31
of-how-great moreover was authority and-of-how-great religion pope
Formosus fuerit, hinc colligere possumus, quoniam, dum a
Formosus was hence to-gather we-can since when by
piscatoribus postmodum esset inventus atque ad beati Petri
fishermen afterward he-had-been found and to of-blessed Peter
apostolorum principis ecclesiam deportatus, sanctorum quaedam
of-the-apostles the-prince the-church carried of-the-saints certain
imagines hunc in loculo positum venerabiliter salutarunt.
images him in the-coffin placed reverently greeted
Hoc namque a religiosissimis Romanae urbis viris persaepe
this for from most-religious of-the-Roman city men very-often
audivi. Sed his ommissis ad narrandi ordinem redeamus.
I-heard but these omitted to of-narrating the-order let-us-return

Arnulf besieges Guy's wife in Fermo, and she bribes one of his intimates to give him a draft that leaves him three days in a stupor, so the army turns back. Liutprand sees God's judgment for the outrages his men committed. Learning that Arnulf means to blind him, Berengar flees to Verona, and the Italians now scorn Arnulf; Pavia rises and slaughters his men. At Ivrea Anscar hides in the rocks outside the walls so the citizens can swear he is not inside, and Arnulf goes home to die eaten by lice.

32 Rex Arnulfus desiderii sui compos effectus persequi Widonem
the-king Arnulf of-desire his master made to-pursue Guy
non desiit profectusque Camerinum castrum vocabulo et
not ceased and-having-set-out of-Camerino the-fortress by-name and
natura Firmum, in quo Widonis uxor erat, obsedit. Wido
by-nature Firm in which of-Guy the-wife was he-besieged Guy
autem in incertis latuit locis. Igitur praefatum castrum nomine
moreover in uncertain hid places therefore the-aforesaid fortress by-name
et natura Firmum vallo circumdatur, omnia bellorum
and by-nature Firm with-a-rampart is-surrounded all of-wars
instrumenta, quibus capi possit, paratur. Cumque Widonis
the-engines by-which to-be-taken it-could is-prepared and-when of-Guy
uxor magnis undique angustiis premeretur, et evadendi spes
the-wife by-great on-all-sides straits was-pressed and of-escaping hope
illi omnimodis negaretur, causas mortis regiae vipperina
to-her in-every-way was-denied the-causes of-death royal with-viperish
coepit calliditate exquirere. Accitum namque ad se quendam
she-began cunning to-seek-out summoned for to herself a-certain
Arnulfi regis familiarissimum magnis cum muneribus rogat,
of-Arnulf the-king most-intimate great with gifts she-asks
ut se adiuvet. Qui cum se non aliter posse testaretur,
that her he-help who when himself not otherwise to-be-able testified
nisi civitatem domini sui traderet dicioni, illa etiam
unless the-city of-lord his he-should-hand-over to-the-dominion she again

atque etiam auri pondera non solum pollicens, verum etiam
and again of-gold weights not only promising but also
in praesentiarum tribuens orat, ut poculo quodam ab ea sibi
in the-present giving begs that with-a-cup a-certain by her to-him
collato dominum suum regem potaret; quod non mortis
brought lord his the-king he-should-give-to-drink which not of-death
periculum daret, sed mentis feritatem mulceret. Quae etiam,
the-peril would-give but of-the-mind the-ferocity would-soothe she-who also
suis ut fidem dictis praeberet, ante sui ipsius praesentiam hoc
to-her that faith words she-might-give before of-him himself the-presence this
unum suorum potat servorum; qui unius horae spatio
to-one of-her she-gives-to-drink servants who of-one hour for-the-space
conspectui huius adstans sanus abscessit. Verum veridicam,
in-the-sight of-him standing sound departed but the-truthful
Maronis inquam, illius sententiam in medium proferamus:
of-Maro I-say of-that the-sentence into the-middle let-us-bring-forth

'Auri sacra fames, quid non mortalia pectora cogis?'
of-gold accursed hunger to-what not mortal hearts do-you-drive

Sumptum namque loetale poculum festinus regi propinat.
taken for the-deadly cup hastily to-the-king he-pledges
Quo accepto tanta hunc confestim somni virtus invasit,
which received so-great him at-once of-sleep the-force seized
quatinus tocius exercitus strepitus eum triduo evigilare
that of-the-whole army the-din him for-three-days to-wake
nequiret. Fertur autem, quoniam dum familiares hunc modo
could-not it-is-said moreover that when his-intimates him now
strepitu, modo tactu inquietarent, apertis oculis nil
with-din now with-touch disturbed with-open eyes nothing
sentire, nil loqui posse perfecte. Positus tamen in mentis
to-feel nothing to-speak he-could perfectly placed yet in of-mind

exessu, mugitum reddere, non verba edere videbatur. Huius
a-departure a-lowing to-give not words to-utter he-seemed of-this
quippe rei actio repedare omnes compulit, non pugnare.
indeed matter the-action to-go-back all compelled not to-fight
33 Credo autem Arnulfum regem iusta severi iudicis
I-believe moreover Arnulf the-king by-the-just of-the-severe judge
huiusmodi pestem incurrisse censura. Secundae enim res dum
of-this-kind plague to-have-incurred censure prosperous for things while
imperium huius ubiubi magni facerent, virtuti suae cuncta
the-power his everywhere great made to-strength his all-things
tribuit, non debitum omnipotenti Deo honorem reddidit.
he-ascribed not the-owed to-almighty God honor he-rendered
Sacerdotes Dei vincti trahebantur, sacrae virgines vi
the-priests of-God bound were-dragged sacred virgins by-force
obprimebantur, coniugatae violabantur. Neque enim ecclesiae
were-ravished married-women were-violated nor for the-churches
confugientibus poterant esse asylum. In his namque simbolam
to-those-fleeing could be an-asylum in these for drinking-parties
faciebant, gestus turpis, cantus ludicres, debachationes. Sed
they-made gestures foul songs playful revels but
et mulieres eodem publice, pro nefas, prostituebantur.
even women in-the-same publicly for shame were-prostituted
34 Denique redeuntem regem magna cum valetudine Arnulfum
finally returning the-king great with sickness Arnulf
paulatim rex Wido persequitur. Cumque Arnulfus Bardonis
gradually the-king Guy pursues and-when Arnulf of-Bardo
montem conscenderet, hoc suorum consilio definivit,
the-mountain climbed this of-his-men by-the-counsel he-decided
quatinus Berengarium lumine privaret sicque securus
so-that Berengar of-sight he-should-deprive and-so secure
Italiam obtineret. Cognatorum vero Berengarii unus, qui non
Italy he-should-hold of-the-kinsmen but of-Berengar one who with-no

parva Arnulfo regi familiaritatis gratia inhaerebat, huiusmodi
small to-Arnulf the-king of-familiarity in-favor clung of-this-kind
consilium ut agnovit, absque mora Berengario patefecit. Qui
counsel when he-learned without delay to-Berengar disclosed who
mox ut sensit, lucerna, quam ante Arnulfi regis praesentiam
as-soon as he-perceived the-lamp which before of-Arnulf the-king the-presence
tenuerat, alii tradita fugiit atque Veronam percitus venit.
he-had-held to-another handed fled and to-Verona in-haste came
Omnes extunc Italienses Arnulfum floccipendere, nichili 35
all thenceforth the-Italians Arnulf to-count-for-a-straw for-nothing
habere. Unde cum Ticinum veniret, non modica horta est in
to-hold whence when to-Pavia he-came no small arisen was in
civitate sedicio; tantaque istic exercitus strages facta est, ut
the-city revolt and-so-great there of-the-army slaughter made was that
criptae civitatis, quas alio nomine cloacas dicunt, horum
the-crypts of-the-city which by-another name sewers they-call of-them
cadaveribus replerentur. Quod Arnulfus cernens, quoniam per
with-corpses were-filled which Arnulf seeing since through
Veronam non potuit, per Hannibalis viam, quam Bardum
Verona not he-could through of-Hannibal the-road which Bardone
dicunt, et montem Iovis repedare disponit. Cumque Eporegiam
they-call and the-mount of-Jove to-return he-arranges and-when to-Ivrea
pervenisset, Anscarius marchio istic aderat, cuius et hortatu
he-had-come Anscar the-marquis there was-present whose also at-the-urging
civitas rebellabat. Verum hoc Arnulfus iureiurando promiserat
the-city rebelled but this Arnulf by-oath had-promised
numquam se a loco eodem discessurum, quoad praesentiae
never himself from place the-same about-to-depart until to-presence

suae praesentarent Anscarium. Is autem ut erat homo valde
his they-should-present Anscar he moreover as he-was a-man very
formidolosus, ei omnino similis, quo de Maro ait:
fearful to-him altogether like whom about Maro says

'Largus opum, lingua melior, sed frigida bello
generous of-wealth in-tongue better but cold in-war
Dextera',
his-right-hand

de castello exiit et iuxta murum civitatis in cavernis
from the-fortress went-out and near the-wall of-the-city in the-caves
petrarum latuit. Hoc autem eo fecit, quatinus licite
of-the-rocks hid this moreover for-this he-did so-that lawfully
possent regi Arnulfo satisfacere, Anscarium in urbe non
they-could to-the-king Arnulf to-satisfy Anscar in the-city not
esse. Itaque iusiurandum rex istud accepit atque iter
to-be and-so oath the-king this accepted and the-road
quod coeperat abiit.
which he-had-begun went
36 Profectusque in propria turpissima valetudine expiravit.
and-having-set-out into his-own-land of-a-most-foul sickness expired
Minutis quippe vermibus, quos pedunculos aiunt, vehementer
by-tiny indeed worms which lice they-call violently
aflictus spiritum reddidit. Fertur autem, quod praefati vermes
afflicted the-spirit he-gave-up it-is-said moreover that the-aforesaid worms
adeo scaturirent, ut nullis medicorum curis minui possent.
so swarmed that by-no of-physicians cares to-be-diminished they-could
Utrum vero pro tam inmenso scelere, Hungariorum scilicet
whether but for so immense a-crime of-the-Hungarians namely
emissione, secundum prophetam duplici sit contricione
the-letting-out according-to the-prophet with-a-double he-was destruction

attritus, an ex praesenti supplicio consequeretur veniam in
ground or from the-present punishment he-obtained pardon in
futuro, soli illius scientiae dimittamus, quo de apostolus
the-future to-the-sole of-that knowledge let-us-leave whom about the-apostle
dicit: 'Nolite ante tempus iudicare, donec veniat Dominus,
says do-not before the-time judge until come the-Lord
qui et inluminabit abscondita tenebrarum et manifestabit
who both shall-bring-to-light the-hidden of-darkness and shall-make-manifest
consilia cordium; et tunc laus erit unicuique a Deo'.
the-counsels of-hearts and then praise shall-be to-each from God

X · LAMBERT

Guy dies beside the Taro, Berengar takes Pavia, and Guy's partisans, wanting two lords to play off against each other, make his young son Lambert king; Berengar retreats to Verona. Lambert's severity soon weighs on the princes, and he has Maginfred of Milan beheaded after five years of rebellion. Adalbert of Tuscany, called the Rich and urged on by his wife Bertha, marches on Pavia with Count Hildebrand while Lambert hunts at Marengo, and the king rides to meet them with about a hundred men.

Iustus igitur Deus uxori Widonis, quae huic paraverat 37
just therefore God for-the-wife of-Guy who for-him had-prepared
mortem, parat viduitatis dolorem. Sicut enim praefati sumus,
death prepares of-widowhood the-grief as for mentioned we-have
dum redeuntem Arnulfum Wido rex e vestigio sequeretur,
while the-returning Arnulf Guy the-king from the-track followed
iusta fluvium defunctus est Tarum. Cuius obitum Berengarius
near the-river dead is Taro whose death Berengar
ut audivit, festinus Papiam venit regnumque potenter accepit.
when he-heard in-haste to-Pavia came and-the-kingdom powerfully received

Fideles vero fautoresque Widonis veriti, ne ab eis inlatam
the-faithful but and-supporters of-Guy fearing lest by them inflicted
Berengarius ulcisceretur iniuriam, et quia semper Italienses
Berengar should-avenge the-injury and since always the-Italians
geminis uti dominis volunt, quatinus alterum alterius terrore
two to-use lords wish so-that the-one of-the-other by-terror
coherceant, Widonis regis defuncti filium nomine Lambertum,
they-may-restrain of-Guy the-king dead the-son by-name Lambert
elegantem iuvenem adhuc ephoebum nimisque bellicosum, regem
an-elegant youth still a-stripling and-very warlike king
constituunt. Coepit denique hunc adire populus, Berengarium
they-appoint began finally him to-approach the-people Berengar
deserere. Cumque Berengarius Lamberto magno cum exercitu
to-desert and-when Berengar Lambert a-great with army
Papiam tendenti copiarum paucitate obviare nequiret, Veronam
to-Pavia making-for of-forces from-the-fewness to-meet could-not Verona
petiit isticque securus deguit. Non post multum vero temporis
he-sought and-there secure lived not after much but time
Lambertus rex, cum esset vir severus, principibus gravis est
Lambert the-king since he-was a-man severe to-the-princes heavy was
visus. Unde et legatos Veronam dirigunt, regem Berengarium
seen whence also envoys to-Verona they-send the-king Berengar
ad se venire, Lambertum vero expellere petunt.
to themselves to-come Lambert but to-expel they-ask

38 Magimfredus praeterea, praedives Mediolanensis urbis comes,
Maginfred moreover the-very-rich of-Milan city count
quinquennio huic rebellis extiterat; qui non solum urbem,
for-five-years to-him rebellious had-been who not only the-city
in qua rebellis erat, Mediolanium scilicet, defenderat, verum
in which rebellious he-was Milan namely had-defended but
etiam vicina circumquaque loca Lamberto servientia nimis
also neighboring round-about places to-Lambert serving greatly

depopulabat. Quod factum rex non passus est abire
ravaged which deed the-king not suffered has to-pass
inultum, psalmographum illud persaepe ruminans: 'Cum
unavenged of-the-Psalmist that very-often pondering when
accepero tempus, ego iustitias iudicabo'. Nam post
I-shall-have-received the-time I justices shall-judge for after
paululum capitis hunc iusserat damnare sententia. Quae
a-little of-the-head him he-had-ordered to-condemn by-sentence which
res terrorem cunctis Italiensibus non minimum adtulit.
thing terror to-all the-Italians not least brought
Denique hoc eodem tempore Adelbertus, illustris Tuscorum 39
finally in-this same time Adalbert the-illustrious of-the-Tuscans
marchio, atque Ildeprandus, praepotens comes, huic nisi
marquis and Hildebrand the-very-powerful count against-him striven
sunt rebellare. Tantae quippe Adelbertus erat potentiae, ut
have to-rebel of-such indeed Adalbert was power that
inter omnes Italiae principes solus ipse cognomento diceretur
among all of-Italy the-princes alone he by-surname was-called
Dives. Huic erat uxor nomine Berta, Hugonis nostro post
the-Rich to-him was a-wife by-name Bertha of-Hugh in-our afterward
tempore regis mater; cuius instinctu tam nefaria coepit
time the-king the-mother whose at-instigation so wicked began
ipse facinora. Nam collecto exercitu cum Ildeprando comite
he crimes for gathered an-army with Hildebrand the-count
constanter Papiam tendere festinat.
steadily to-Pavia to-make hastens
Lambertus interea rex harum rerum inscius in Marinco, 40
Lambert meanwhile the-king of-these things unaware at Marengo
XL ferme milibus Papia distans, venationibus occupatur.
forty nearly miles from-Pavia distant with-hunting is-occupied
Cumque praefati marchio et comes cum inmenso, sed
and-when the-aforesaid marquis and count with an-immense but

invalido Tuscorum exercitu Bardonis montem transirent,
weak of-the-Tuscans army of-Bardo the-mountain crossed
Lamberto regi medio in nemore venanti, ut sese res
to-Lambert the-king the-middle-of in the-wood hunting how itself the-matter
habuerat, nuntiatur. Is vero, sicut erat animi constans
had is-announced he but as he-was in-mind steadfast
viribusque potens, suos non passus est milites praestolari,
and-in-strength powerful his-own not suffered has soldiers to-wait-for
sed collectis, quos secum habuerat, centum ferme militibus
but gathered whom with-him he-had a-hundred about soldiers
cursu praepeti eis obviare festinat.
at-a-pace swift them to-meet hastens

XI · THE DEATH OF LAMBERT

Lambert surprises the Tuscans asleep near Borgo San Donnino, Hildebrand flees, and Adalbert is found hiding in a stable; the king jokes that Bertha promised to make him a king or an ass. Back at the hunt Lambert dies, some say by a fall from his horse. The likelier story is that Maginfred's son Hugh, whom he had favored, broke his neck with a club while he slept and kept the secret until Berengar's reign. Liutprand mourns a king of rare virtue who might have conquered the world.

41 Iamiam Placentiam venerat, cum hi iusta fluvium Sesterionem
already-now to-Piacenza he-had-come when they near the-river Stirone
ad burgum, in quo sanctissimi et pretiosi martyris Domnini
at the-borough in which of-the-most-holy and precious martyr Donninus
corpus positum veneratur, castra metasse nuntiantur.
the-body placed is-venerated camp to-have-pitched are-announced
Ignorantes itaque, quid superventura nox pareret, temetolenti
unaware and-so what the-coming night would-bring drunk
post nonnulla inutilia tragodimata, id est cantiones,
after some useless songs that is songs

somno sese dedere, stertere; nauseam alii sumptus
to-sleep themselves gave to-snore to-vomit others from-the-consumed
intemperantia facere. Rex igitur, cum animi ferox tum
excess to-do the-king therefore both in-mind fierce and
ingenio callens, in ipso eos noctis conticinio opprimit,
in-wit skilled in the-very them of-the-night in-the-dead-silence overwhelms
dormientes ferit, oscitantes iugulat. Ventum denique ad
the-sleeping he-strikes the-yawning he-slaughters come finally to
ipsos est, qui huius ductores exercitus erant. Cumque
the-very-ones it-was who of-this the-leaders army were and-when
iis non ex multitudine alius, sed rex ipse praeclari huius
to-them not from the-multitude another but the-king himself of-the-famous this
facinoris nuntius esset, non dico pugnandi, verum fugiendi
deed the-messenger was not I-say of-fighting but of-fleeing
terror ipse abstulit facultatem. Verum Ildeprandus fuga lapsus
terror itself took-away the-means but Hildebrand by-flight escaping
Adelbertum intra animalium praesaepe latitantem dereliquit.
Adalbert inside of-animals the-manger hiding left
Qui dum repertus esset atque ante regis praesentiam
who when found he-was and before of-the-king the-presence
ductus, eum ilico ita convenit: ‘Sibillino spiritu uxorem
led him at-once thus he-addressed with-the-Sibylline spirit wife
tuam Bertam prophetasse credimus, quae te scientia sua
your Bertha to-have-prophesied we-believe who you by-knowledge her-own
regem aut asinum facturam promisit. Verum quia regem
king or ass about-to-make promised but since king
noluit aut, ut magis credendum est, non potuit, asinum,
she-would-not or as rather to-be-believed it-is not she-could ass
ne mentiretur, effecit, dum te cum Arcadiae pecuaribus ad
lest she-should-lie she-made while you with of-Arcadia the-beasts to

praesaepe declinare coegit!' Praeterea hoc cum isto nonnulli
the-manger to-turn-aside she-forced moreover this-one with him some
capiuntur, vinciuntur, Papiam ducuntur, custodiae mancipantur.
are-taken are-bound to-Pavia are-led to-custody are-handed-over
42 His ita gestis rex iterum Lambertus praefato in loco
these-things so done the-king again Lambert the-aforesaid in place
Marinco venationibus occupatur, quoad omnium principum
Marengo with-hunting is-occupied until of-all of-the-princes
decreto, quid super captis agendum esset, deliberaretur. Sed
by-the-decree what about the-captives to-be-done was should-be-deliberated but
ó utinam venatio haec feras, non caperet reges! Aiunt sane
O would-that hunt this beasts not took kings they-say indeed
hunc, dum, sicut moris est, apros effreni sectaretur equo,
him while as of-custom is boars unbridled he-pursued from-his-horse
cecidisse collumque fregisse. Verum assertioni huic fidem
to-have-fallen and-his-neck to-have-broken but to-assertion this credence
praebere non absurdum esse non dico. Est enim alia mortis
to-give not absurd to-be not I-say there-is for another of-death
huius, quae mihi verisimilior videtur atque omnibus a populis
this which to-me more-likely seems and all by peoples
narratur, assertio. Magimfredus, Mediolanensis urbis comes,
is-told assertion Maginfred of-Milan city count
cuius paulo superius fecimus mentionem, dum pro scelere
of-whom a-little above we-made mention when for the-crime
in rem publicam atque in regem commisso capitis
against the-affairs public and against the-king committed of-the-head
iuditio damnaretur, unicum possessionis suae vicarium
by-judgment he-was-condemned the-only of-possession his heir
Hugonem filium dereliquit. Quem dum Lambertus rex cum
Hugh his-son left whom when Lambert the-king both
forma egregia tum nonnullos superare videret audatia, animi
in-form outstanding and some to-surpass he-saw in-boldness of-mind

sui non parvum pro patris morte dolorem collatis nisus
his not small for of-the-father the-death grief with-conferred striven
est beneficiis mulcere quam plurimis. Unde et eum praeter
has with-benefits to-soothe as very-many whence also him beyond
ceteros familiaritatis privilegio dederat. Factum est autem,
the-others of-intimacy with-the-privilege he-had-given done it-was moreover
dum Lambertus rex nominato in loco Marinco venaretur,
while Lambert the-king the-named in place Marengo hunted
— est enim eodem mirae magnitudinis et amoenitatis
is for there of-wonderful size and of-pleasantness
lucus adeo venationibus aptus — huc illucque cunctis, ut
a-grove so for-hunting fit hither and-thither with-all as
moris est, discurrentibus, hoc cum uno scilicet Hugone
of-custom is running-about this-one with one namely Hugh
ipsum solummodo in nemore remansisse. Cumque rex
he-himself only in the-wood to-have-remained and-when the-king
aprum in transitu praestolaretur diuque multum remorante
the-boar in passage awaited and-for-long much it-delaying
longa expectatione lassaretur, paululum sese quieti dedit,
by-long waiting was-wearied a-little himself to-rest gave
vigiliae custodiam huic infido, quasi fido, committens. Igitur
of-the-watch the-guard to-this faithless as-if faithful entrusting therefore
absentibus cunctis Hugonis mens custodis, immo proditoris
absent all of-Hugh the-mind of-the-guard nay of-the-traitor
atque carnificis, collatorum beneficiorum immemor plurium
and of-the-executioner of-the-conferred benefits unmindful many
patris mortem animo coepit revolvere. Non consideravit
of-his-father the-death in-mind began to-turn-over not he-considered
genitorem suum iustam incurrisse necem; iusiurandum,
the-father his a-just to-have-incurred death the-oath
regi quod fecerat, violare non metuit; vicarium se
to-the-king which he-had-made to-violate not he-feared the-heir himself

Iudae, domini nostri Iesu Christi proditoris, apellari non
of-Judas of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ the-betrayer to-be-called not
erubuit; et quod est gravius, sempiternum supplicium
he-blushed and what is graver everlasting punishment
subiturum sese non timuit; verum conamine toto virium
about-to-undergo himself not he-feared but with-the-effort whole of-his-strength
ligno non modico dormienti collum fregit. Gladio
with-a-cudgel not small of-the-sleeper the-neck broke with-a-sword
quippe ferire timuit, ne peccati huius auctorem res eum
indeed to-strike he-feared lest of-sin this the-author the-thing him
manifesta probaret. Eo namque mens perversa ita egit,
plain should-prove for-this for the-mind perverse so acted
ut non gladii cicatrix, sed ligni manifesta collisio hunc
that not of-a-sword a-scar but of-wood plain bruising him
repperientibus fidem darent equo cecidisse collique
to-those-finding credence should-give from-his-horse to-have-fallen and-of-the-neck
fractione hominem exivisse. Latuitque per annos res
by-the-breaking the-man to-have-departed and-lay-hidden through years the-thing
quam plurimos. Sed dum processu temporis Berengarius
very many but while in-the-course of-time Berengar
rex nullo sibi resistente regnum viriliter obtineret,
the-king with-none to-himself resisting the-kingdom manfully held
ipse reatus proprii, sicut fuerat auctor, extitit proditor,
he-himself of-guilt his-own as he-had-been the-author became the-betrayer
impleturque illud, quod rex et propheta canit: 'Quoniam
and-is-fulfilled that which the-king and prophet sings for
laudatur peccator in desideriis animae suae, et iniqua gerens
is-praised the-sinner in the-desires of-his-soul his and the-wicked doing
benedicitur'. Sed et aliud fecisse minime potuit propter
is-blessed but also otherwise to-have-done by-no-means he-could because-of

haec ipsius veritatis verba dicentis: ‘Nichil opertum, quod
these of-the-very truth the-words saying nothing covered that
non reveletur, et occultum, quod non in publicum veniat’.
not shall-be-revealed and hidden that not into public shall-come
His ita gestis rex Berengarius ampliori pristina 43
these-things so done the-king Berengar with-greater than-his-former
dignitate regia honoratur; Adelbertus marchio et ceteri ad
dignity royal is-honored Adalbert the-marquis and the-others to
propria destinantur.
their-own-lands are-sent
Iuvat autem, pater karissime, tanti huius obitum regis et 44
it-pleases moreover father dearest of-so-great this the-death king both
deflendo scribere et scribendo deflere. Inerat namque illi
by-weeping to-write and by-writing to-weep there-was for in-him
honesta morum probitas, sancta et formidolosa severitas,
an-honest of-character uprightness holy and fearsome severity
et quem iuventus ornabat in corpore splendida, mentis
and whom youth adorned in body splendid of-mind
canities decoraverat sancta. Plane plus ipse rei publicae
gray-hair had-graced holy plainly more he to-the-affairs public
quam res publica decoris ei contulerat. Quod si non
than the-affairs public of-honor to-him had-brought but if not
cita mors hunc raperet, is esset, qui post Romanorum
swift death him had-snatched he would-be who after of-the-Romans
potentiam totum sibi orbem viriliter subiugaret.
the-power the-whole to-himself world manfully would-subjugate

BOOK II

I · THE HUNGARIANS ON THE LECH

When Arnulf dies and his son Louis is made king, the Hungarians rejoice, seize Moravia and burn through Bavaria, drinking their victims' blood. Louis summons every man on pain of hanging and meets them near Augsburg on the Lech. They fall on the Christians at dawn, feign flight in the afternoon and spring an ambush, and the king's army is slaughtered. The Hungarians then ravage the Bavarians, Swabians, Franks, and Saxons and make the people tributary for years.

Postquam vitalis calor Arnulfi regis membra deserens reddidit 1
after the-vital warmth of-Arnulf the-king the-limbs leaving rendered
corpus exanime, suus ipsius filius Hulodoicus rex cunctis
the-body lifeless his-own of-himself son Louis king all
a populis ordinatur. Tanti denique casus viri vicinos
by peoples is-appointed of-so-great finally the-fall man the-neighboring
Hungarios, sicut nec in toto orbe degentes, latere non
Hungarians as nor in the-whole world dwelling to-escape not
potuit. Siquidem loeti dies eius iis fuit omni festivitate
could indeed of-death the-day his to-them was than-every festival
iucundior, gazis omnibus praestantior. Quid igitur?
more-pleasant than-treasures all more-excellent what therefore
Primo namque mortis huius gnatique sui ordinationis 2
in-the-first for of-death this and-of-the-son his of-the-appointment
anno permagno collecto exercitu Maravanorum gentem,
year a-very-great gathered army of-the-Moravians the-people
quam virtutis eorum amminiculo rex Arnulfus subdiderat,
which of-strength their by-the-aid the-king Arnulf had-subdued
sibi vendicant; Bagoariorum etiam fines occupant,
for-themselves they-claim of-the-Bavarians also the-borders they-occupy
castra diruunt, ecclesias igne consumunt, populos iugulant,
the-forts they-tear-down the-churches with-fire they-consume the-peoples they-slaughter

et ut magis magisque timeantur, interfectorum sese
and so-that more and-more they-may-be-feared of-the-slain themselves
sanguine potant.
with-the-blood they-give-drink

3 Hulodoicus itaque rex, gentis suae depopulationem huiusque
Louis and-so the-king of-people his the-ravaging and-of-this-one
intellegens crudelitatem, suorum omnium animos hac
understanding the-cruelty of-his-men of-all the-spirits with-this
formidine inflammat, ut, si quemquam bello eodem, quod cum
dread he-inflames that if anyone from-war the-same which with
iis acturus esset, deesse contingeret, laqueo procul dubio
them about-to-wage he-was to-be-absent should-happen by-a-noose without doubt
vitam finiret. Innumerabilis denique illa gentis pessimae
his-life he-should-end countless finally that of-the-people worst
multitudo copiis huius maximis obviam properare festinat.
multitude the-forces of-this-one greatest to-meet to-hurry hastens
Nec videas sitientem animam ardentius haustum laticis
nor would-you-see a-thirsty soul more-ardently a-draft of-water
gelidae, quam prelii diem gentem hanc crudelem appetere;
cold than of-battle the-day the-people this cruel to-seek
neque enim hanc aliud quam dimicasse iuvat. Ut autem ex
nor for it other than to-have-fought pleases as moreover from
libro, qui de origine huius inscribitur, didici, horum matres
the-book which about the-origin of-this is-inscribed I-learned their mothers
mox pueris editis 'ferro acutissimo faciem secant, scilicet ut,
as-soon-as the-boys borne with-steel sharpest the-face cut namely that
antequam lactis nutrimenta percipiant, vulnerum tolerantiam
before of-milk the-nourishment they-receive of-wounds the-endurance
subire cogantur'. Dant huic assertioni fidem vulnera,
to-undergo they-be-compelled they-give to-this assertion credence the-wounds
quae pro defitientium dolore propinquum vivorum corporibus
which for of-the-dead the-grief of-kinsmen on-the-living bodies

infliguntur. Sanguinemque prout ἄθεοι καὶ ἀσεβοῖς αντι των
are-inflicted and-blood as godless and impious instead-of the
δακρειων athei ke asevìs ante ton dacrion, id est sine Deo
tears godless and impious instead-of the tears that is without God
et impii pro lacrimis, fundunt. Iamiam rex Hulodoicus
and impious for tears they-pour already-now the-king Louis
collecta multitudine Augustam venerat, quae est in Suevorum,
gathered a-multitude to-Augsburg had-come which is on of-the-Swabians
Bagoariorum seu orientalium Francorum confinio civitas, cum
of-the-Bavarians or of-the-eastern Franks the-border a-city when
insperata, magis autem non optata gentis huius nuntiatur
the-unhoped-for rather moreover not wished-for of-the-people this is-announced
vicinitas. Sequenti igitur die secus Lemanni fluminis campos,
nearness on-the-following therefore day beside of-the-Lech river the-fields
Martio operi capacitate sui aptos, utraeque acies convenere.
to-martial work in-breadth their-own fit both battle-lines came-together
Prius itaque ac 4
before and-so than

'Titoni croceum linqueret Aurora cubile',
of-Tithonus the-saffron should-leave Dawn bed

Hungariorum gens, necis sitiens, belli avida, hos, videlicet
of-the-Hungarians the-people of-slaughter thirsting of-war greedy these namely
Christianos, adhuc opprimit oscitantes; nonnullos namque
Christians still overwhelms yawning some for
spicula priusquam clamores evigilarunt, alios vero cubilibus
the-arrows before the-shouts awoke others but in-their-beds
confossos neque strepitus neque vulnera exitarunt; citius
pierced neither the-din nor wounds roused more-quickly
enim ab iis spiritus recessit atque somnus. Gravis itaque hinc
for from them the-spirit departed than sleep heavy and-so hence

indeque oritur pugna, versique terga ceu in fugam Turci
and-thence arises the-battle and-turned their-backs as-if into flight the-Turks
directis acriter boelis, id est sagittis, plurimos sternunt.
with-aimed sharply arrows that is arrows very-many lay-low

Nubibus omnipotens Heloim cum condere Phoebi
in-clouds the-almighty Elohim when to-hide of-Phoebus
Lumina chrisocomi venerandus coeperit atris,
the-lights of-golden-haired venerable has-begun dark
Vertice cumque polus summo clangore remugit,
from-the-summit and-when the-sky from-the-highest crash bellows-back
Fulgura crebra volant throno demissa tonantis
lightnings frequent fly from-the-throne sent of-the-thunderer
Ignea: mox trepidant, qui nigrum in candida vertunt;
fiery soon tremble who black into white turn
Conscia tum metuunt scelerum sulcare suorum
conscious then fear of-crimes to-plow of-their-own
Pectora, Vulcano pariter ruitura superno:
breasts by-Vulcan likewise about-to-fall heavenly
Haud secus e vacuis volitant concussa pharetris
not otherwise from empty fly shaken quivers
Spicula, scinduntur validae quis terga loricae.
the-arrows are-split of-the-strong for-whom the-backs of-the-corselet
Concutit ipsa ruens segetes cum grando superba,
shakes itself rushing the-crops when the-hail proud
Fit sonitus clangorque simul per tecta sonorus,
there-is a-sound and-a-clangor together through the-roofs resounding
Sic galeae strictis reboant tunc ensibus ictae,
so helmets with-drawn bellow then swords struck
Corpora sicque cadunt mutuis confossa sagittis.
bodies and-so fall with-mutual pierced arrows

Iam septimam descendens Phoebus occupaverat horam,
already the-seventh descending Phoebus had-occupied hour
et serenus adhuc Hulodoici partibus Mars favebat, cum
and fair still of-Louis to-the-side Mars favored when
Turci, sicut non incallidi, positis ex adverso insidiis fugam
the-Turks as not unskillful set from opposite an-ambush flight
simulant. Quos dum regis populus doli ignarus impetu
feign whom while of-the-king the-people of-the-trick unaware with-an-onset
validissimo sequeretur, omni prodeunt ex parte insidiae et
most-violent followed every come-forth from side the-ambushes and
quasi victi ipsi victores interimunt. Rex ipse e victore
as-if conquered themselves the-victors they-kill the-king himself from victor
se victum esse miratur, fitque illi non opinatus
himself conquered to-be wonders and-there-becomes to-him not expected
gravior casus. Videres equidem saltus, agros passim
a-heavier fall you-would-see indeed the-glades the-fields everywhere
cadaveribus stratos, rivos et flumina sanguine permixta
with-corpses strewn the-brooks and the-rivers with-blood mingled
rubere; tunc hinnitus equum clangorque tubarum fugientes
to-redden then the-neighing of-horses and-the-clangor of-the-trumpets the-fleeing
etiam atque etiam terrere, persequentes magis magisque hortari.
again and again to-terrify the-pursuers more and-more to-urge-on
Hungarii praeterea compotes desiderii sui effecti Christianorum 5
the-Hungarians moreover masters of-desire their made of-the-Christians
hac tam inmensa nece propriae non satisfecere nequiciae;
by-this so immense slaughter their-own not satisfied wickedness
sed rabiem ut perfidiae satiarent, Bagoariorum, Suevorum,
but the-rage that of-faithlessness they-might-sate of-the-Bavarians of-the-Swabians
Francorum, Saxonum omnia deflagrando regna percurrunt.
of-the-Franks of-the-Saxons all burning the-kingdoms they-run-through
Nec quisquam erat, qui horum praesentiam, nisi labore non
nor anyone was who their presence unless with-labor not

parvo naturave munitissimis praestolaretur in locis, factusque
small or-by-nature most-fortified awaited in places and-made
est per nonnullos populus hic tributarius annos.
was for some the-people this tributary years

II · ADALBERT OF BAMBERG AND THE HUNGARIANS AT THE BRENTA

For about seven years Adalbert defies Louis from his castle of Bamberg. Archbishop Hatto of Mainz swears to bring him out safe and bring him back, then, a short way out, says he regrets not eating, leads him back for a meal, and so frees himself of the oath; Adalbert is condemned and beheaded. The Hungarians, having made the Bulgarians and Greeks tributary, scout Italy from the Brenta, and their scouts advise them to come back in greater numbers, so they spend the winter making arms.

6 Huius tempore Adelbertus quidam, non quilibet, sed magnus
his in-time Adalbert a-certain not anyone but great
ille heros, simultatem non modicam in castello vocabulo
that hero a-feud not moderate in the-fortress by-name
Bavemberg contra rem publicam exercebat. Saepe etenim
Bamberg against the-affairs public waged often for
rex Hulodoicus congregatis omnibus super eum irruerat.
the-king Louis gathered all upon him had-rushed
Cui nominatus heros non iuxta castellum, ut a plerisque
to-whom the-named hero not near the-fortress as by most
assolet, sed procul a munitione praeparat bellum. Regis
is-wont but far from the-defenses prepares battle of-the-king
etenim milites priusquam re ipsa huius audatiam
for the-soldiers before by-the-thing itself his boldness
mirarentur, regem praeeuntes pugnae proludio hunc extra
they-marveled-at the-king going-ahead of-the-fight in-a-prelude him outside
castrum illicere atque interficere cogitabant. Adelbertus itaque
the-fort to-lure and to-kill planned Adalbert and-so

proludii huiusmodi non solum gnarus, verum etiam debriatus
of-a-prelude of-this-kind not only aware but also drunk
obviam his tam longe a castro processerat, ut non hunc
to-meet them so far from the-fort had-advanced that not him
milites eousque ex adversariis esse cognoscerent, quoad eorum
the-soldiers until of the-enemies to-be recognized until their
cervicibus istius mucro caedis inpaciens desaeviret. Igitur
on-necks his sword of-slaughter impatient raged therefore
cum septennio ferme Adelbertus heros rebellionem huiusmodi
when for-seven-years about Adalbert the-hero rebellion of-this-kind
exerceret, sciens Hulodoicus istius audatiae fortitudinem
waged knowing Louis of-his boldness the-strength
haudquaquam se nisi tergiversatione quadam posse
by-no-means himself except by-trickery some to-be-able
devincere, Hattonem Magontinae sedis archiepiscopum, quid
to-conquer Hatto of-Mainz of-the-see archbishop what
sibi super hac re faciendum esset, consuluit. Qui, ut erat
to-him about this thing to-be-done was consulted who as he-was
versutiae pollens: 'Desine', ait; 'ego te securum iis
in-craftiness strong stop he-says I you secure from-these
sollicitudinibus reddam. Ego, ut tete adveniat, providebo; tu,
anxieties shall-render I that to-you be-come shall-see-to you
ne redeat, curato'. Hatto itaque animi confidentia, qua
that-not he-return see-to-it Hatto and-so of-mind by-the-confidence by-which
nonnullas res ex infortunio secundas effecerat, animatus
some things from misfortune prosperous he-had-made animated
Bavemberg quasi Adelbertum adiit conpassurus. Cui et
Bamberg as-if Adalbert approached about-to-sympathize to-whom also
ait: 'Si et non aliam vitam praeter instantem putares, tamen
he-says if even not another life besides the-present you-thought yet
iniuste faceres, quod domino tuo rebellis existeres, praesertim
unjustly you-would-do that to-lord your rebellious you-were especially

cum et quod agis, facias gratis; eo enim quo
when also what you-do you-may-do for-nothing in-that for by-which
ferocitate animi vinceris, quantum ab omnibus, praecipue a
by-ferocity of-mind you-are-conquered how-much by all especially by
rege diligaris, non intellegis. Consulenti itaque mihi fidem
the-king you-are-loved not you-understand advising and-so to-me trust
admitte; iusiurandum accipe, quo sine animi vacillatione
admit an-oath receive by-which without of-mind wavering
de castello exire valeas et redire. Si sacerdotii
from the-fortress to-go-out you-may-be-able and to-return if of-priesthood
mei promissionibus minime credis, iuramento saltem ne
my to-the-promises by-no-means you-believe the-oath at-least do-not
diffidas, quoniam, ut te salvum et incolumem de castello
distrust since as you safe and unharmed from the-fortress
hoc eduxero, ita et reducere procurabo'. Adelbertus
this I-shall-have-led-out so also to-lead-back I-shall-see-to-it Adalbert
igitur huiusmodi melle dulcioribus elogiis delibutus, immo
therefore by-this-kind than-honey sweeter with-sayings smeared nay
deceptus iusiurandum ab Hattone accepit eumque, ut secum
deceived the-oath from Hatto received and-him that with-him
pranderet, protinus invitavit. Hatto vero tergiversationis, quam
he-should-dine at-once invited Hatto but of-the-trickery which
exercere post paululum cuperat, non inmemor, eodem se
to-practice after a-little he-had-begun not unmindful there himself
haudquaquam pransurum omnimodis interdixit. Nec mora,
by-no-means about-to-dine in-every-way refused nor delay
Hatto de castello egreditur. Cuius dexteram Adelbertus
Hatto from the-fortress goes-out whose right-hand Adalbert
tenens mox eum prosequitur. Quem cum extra castellum
holding soon him accompanies whom when outside the-fortress
Hatto conspiceret: 'Poenitet', infit, 'me, heros egregie, quod
Hatto beheld I-regret says me hero outstanding that

secundum tuum consultum, praesertim cum perlongum iter
according-to your advice especially since very-long a-journey
immineat, corpus edulio aliquo non refecerim'. Ignorans
impends (my)-body with-food any not I-refreshed not-knowing
denique Adelbertus, quantum incommodi quantumve infortunii
finally Adalbert how-much of-harm or-how-much of-misfortune
haec sententia habeat: 'Revertamur', ait, 'domine mi, et ne
this saying holds let-us-return he-says lord my and lest
ieiunii maceratione corpus tabescat, cibo saltem paululum
of-fasting by-the-wasting (your)-body waste-away with-food at-least a-little
recreato'. Conivens itaque eius peticionibus Hatto, per quam
restored conniving and-so his with-requests Hatto by which
eum eduxit viam, repedavit et reducens dexteram tenens.
him he-had-led-out road went-back and leading-back the-right-hand holding
Haud mora, cibus assumitur, atque ab eis die eadem usque
no delay food is-taken and by them on-day the-same as-far
ad regem properatur. Clamor in castris oritur, fit tumultus
to the-king they-hurry a-shout in the-camp arises there-is an-uproar
non modicus, quoniam quidem Adelbertus regem advenisse
not moderate since indeed Adalbert the-king to-have-come
nuntiatur. Rex praeterea huius ob adventum non
is-announced the-king moreover his on-account-of coming not
parum exhilaratus proceres ad se venire atque in iuditio
a-little gladdened the-nobles to himself to-come and in judgment
residere praecepit. Quibus et ait: 'Iam fere septennio
to-sit ordered to-whom also he-says now nearly for-seven-years
Adelbertus quantas strages dederit, quas nobis turbas egerit,
Adalbert how-great slaughters he-has-given what for-us troubles he-has-caused
quot rapinarum et incendiorum infortunia nobis intulerit,
how-many of-plunderings and of-burnings misfortunes on-us he-has-brought
re ipsa potius quam fama deferente percepimus. Unde
by-the-thing itself rather than by-report bringing-it we-have-perceived whence

et sententiam vestram, pro hoc tam praeclaro facinore quid
also the-judgment your for this so splendid deed what
recompensationis inpraesentiarum accipiat, expectamus'. Qui
of-recompense at-present he-should-receive we-await who
omnium decreto secundum priscorum instituta regum
of-all by-the-decree according-to of-the-ancient the-institutions of-kings
maiestatis reus adiudicatus capite truncatur. Verum dum
of-majesty guilty judged by-the-head is-cut-short but while
vinctus traheretur ad mortem, Hattonem intuitus: 'Periurii',
bound he-was-dragged to death Hatto beholding of-perjury
infit, 'reus eris, si memet necem incurrere sinis'. Cui
he-says guilty you-shall-be if me death to-incur you-allow to-whom
Hatto: 'Sanum te', inquit, 'e castro educturum, ita et
Hatto sound you he-says from the-fort about-to-lead-out so also
reducturum promisi; quod me tunc conplesse intellexi,
about-to-lead-back I-promised which me then to-have-fulfilled I-understood
cum te, e castello eductum, salvum et incolumem quam
when you from the-fortress led-out safe and unharmed as
mox in castellum reduxi'. Tum se istuc advenisse dolens
soon into the-fortress I-led-back then himself thither to-have-come grieving
et Hattonis dolum tarde intellexisse suspirans tam invitus
and of-Hatto the-trick late to-have-understood sighing as unwilling
spiculatorem sequitur, quam libenter viveret, si liceret.
the-executioner follows as gladly he-would-live if it-were-allowed

7 Paucis igitur interpositis annis, cum nullus esset, qui in
few therefore interposed years when none there-was who in
orientali australive plaga Hungariis resisteret — nam
the-eastern or-southern region to-the-Hungarians resisted for
Bulgariorum gentem atque Grecorum tributariam fecerant —
of-the-Bulgarians the-people and of-the-Greeks tributary they-had-made
ne quid inexpertum his esset, quae sub meridiano atque
lest anything untried by-them should-be which under the-southern and

occidentali degerent climate, visere satagunt nationes. Inmenso
western dwell clime to-visit they-are-busy the-nations immense
itaque innumerabilique collecto exercitu miseram petunt
and-so and-countless gathered an-army wretched they-seek
Italiam. Cumque iuxta fluvium Brentam defixis tentoriolis,
Italy and-when near the-river Brenta pitched little-tents
immo centonibus, triduo exploratoribus directis, terrae
nay patchwork-rags for-three-days scouts sent of-the-land
situm gentisque multitudinem seu raritatem considerarent,
the-site and-of-the-people the-multitude or thinness they-considered
repedantibus nuntiis huiusmodi responsa suscipiunt: 'Planities
the-returning messengers of-this-kind answers they-receive plain
haec nonnullis plena collibus uno, ut cernitis, ex latere
this with-some full hills on-one as you-see from side
montibus asperrimis atque fertilibus, altero mari cingitur
by-mountains most-rugged and fertile on-the-other by-the-sea is-girt
Adriatico; opida vero cum nonnulla, tum munitissima. Gentis
Adriatic towns but both some and most-fortified of-the-people
quamquam ignoretur inbecillitas aut fortitudo, inmensa tamen
although is-unknown the-weakness or strength immense yet
conspicitur multitudo. Neque enim tam copiis paucis aggredi
is-seen the-multitude nor for with-so forces few to-attack
hanc hortamur. Verum cum nonnullae sint res, quae nos
it we-urge but since some there-are things which us
pugnare compellant, triumphus scilicet assuetus, animi fortitudo,
to-fight compel the-triumph namely accustomed of-mind the-strength
pugnandi scientia, opes praesertim, quarum desiderio fatigamur,
of-fighting the-knowledge riches especially of-which by-the-desire we-are-wearied
quae hic tot insunt, quot toto in orbe nec vidimus nec
which here as-many are-in as the-whole in world neither we-have-seen nor
videre speravimus, nobis tamen consultis — neque enim longum
to-see we-hoped to-us yet consulted nor for long

arduumve remeandi iter est, quod decem potest et eo
or-arduous of-returning the-road is which in-ten can and in-it
minus diebus perfici — revertemur, venturo quatinus vere
fewer days be-completed we-shall-return in-the-coming so-that in-spring
omnibus gentis nostrae collectis fortissimis redeamus, sitque
of-all of-people our gathered the-strongest we-may-return and-may-be
his cum in fortitudine tum noster in multitudine terror'.
to-these both in strength and our in multitude a-terror
8 Nec mora, his auditis ad propria revertuntur totamque
nor delay these heard to their-own-lands they-return and-the-whole
hiemis asperitatem in fabricandis armis, in acuendis spiculis,
of-winter the-harshness in making arms in sharpening arrows
in docendis iuvenibus belli noticiam ducunt.
in teaching young-men of-war knowledge they-spend

The Hungarians pour into Italy and reach Pavia unopposed, and Berengar raises an army three times theirs, then idles in a little town. They flee across the Adda and offer to give back their plunder, and at the Brenta everything they have and their sons as hostages, but the Christians scorn them. Driven to despair, they cross the Brenta, catch the Christians at their meal and rout them, helped by the Italians' own rivalries, and ravage Italy and the German lands, as Jeremiah foretold.

Sol necdum piscis signum deserens arietis occupabat, 9
the-sun not-yet of-the-Fish the-sign leaving of-the-Ram occupied
cum inmenso atque innumerabili collecto exercitu Italiam
when an-immense and countless gathered army Italy
petunt, Aquilegiam, Veronam, munitissimas pertranseunt
they-seek Aquileia Verona most-fortified they-pass-through
civitates, et Ticinum, quae nunc alio exellentiori
cities and to-Pavia which now by-another more-excellent
Papia notatur vocabulo, nullis resistentibus veniunt. Rex
Papia is-known name with-none resisting they-come the-king
igitur Berengarius tam praeclarum novumque facinus —
therefore Berengar so remarkable and-new a-deed
antehac enim neque nomen gentis huius audierat — satis
before-this for neither the-name of-people this he-had-heard enough
mirari non potuit. Italorum igitur, Tuscorum, Volscorum,
to-marvel-at not could of-the-Italians therefore of-the-Tuscans of-the-Volscians
Camerinorum, Spoletinorum quosdam libris, alios nuntiis
of-the-Camerini of-the-Spoletans some by-letters others by-messengers
directis, omnes tamen in unum venire praecepit, factusque
sent all yet into one to-come he-ordered and-made
est exercitus triplo Hungariorum validior.
was the-army threefold than-the-Hungarians stronger

10 Cumque sibi rex Berengarius tot adesse copias
and-when to-himself the-king Berengar so-many to-be-present forces
cerneret, superbiae spiritu inflatus magisque triumphum de
saw of-pride with-the-spirit puffed and-more the-triumph over
hostibus multitudini suae quam Deo tribuens, solus ipse
the-enemies to-the-multitude his-own than to-God ascribing alone he-himself
cum paucis quodam in opidulo degens voluptati operam dabat.
with few a-certain in little-town dwelling to-pleasure attention gave
Quid igitur? Tantam mox ut Hungarii contemplati sunt
what therefore so-great as-soon as the-Hungarians beheld have
multitudinem, animo consternati, quid facerent, deliberare
the-multitude in-mind dismayed what they-should-do to-deliberate
non poterant. Preliari poenitus formidabant, fugere omnino
not could to-fight utterly they-dreaded to-flee at-all
nequibant. Verum inter utramque hanc aestuationem fugere
they-could-not but between both this seething to-flee
magis quam preliari iuvat; persequentibusque Christianis
rather than to-fight pleases and-pursuing the-Christians
Adduam fluvium natando, ita ut nimia festinatione
the-Adda river by-swimming so that from-excessive haste
plurimi necti submergerentur, pertranseunt.
very-many killed were-drowned they-cross

11 Hungarii denique consilio non malo accepto internuntiis
the-Hungarians finally a-counsel not bad taken through-intermediaries
Christianos rogant, quatinus praeda omni cum lucro reddita
the-Christians ask that the-booty all with the-gain returned
ipsi incolumes remeare possent. Quam peticionem
they-themselves unharmed to-return might-be-able which petition
Christiani funditus abdicantes his, pro dolor, insultabant
the-Christians utterly rejecting them for grief mocked
potiusque vincula, quis Hungarii vincirentur, quam
and-rather chains with-which the-Hungarians should-be-bound than

arma, quibus necarentur, exquirunt. Cumque pagani
arms with-which they-should-be-killed they-seek and-when the-pagans
Christianorum animos hoc pacto mulcere nequirent, vetus
of-the-Christians the-spirits by-this means to-soothe could-not old
rati melius consilium, coepta sese liberare satagunt fuga
thinking better the-counsel by-begun themselves to-free strive flight
sicque fugiendo in Veronenses latissimos campos perveniunt.
and-so by-fleeing into the-Veronese very-broad plains they-come
Christianorum primi horum iam novissimos insecuntur; 12
of-the-Christians the-first of-them already the-last pursue
fitque eodem pugnae proludium, in quo victoriam habuere
and-there-is there of-the-fight a-prelude in which the-victory had
pagani. Validiore vero propinquante exercitu fugae non
the-pagans the-stronger but approaching army of-flight not
immemores coeptum iter percurrunt.
unmindful the-begun road they-run-through
Veneruntque Christicolae cum idololatribus pariter iuxta fluvium 13
and-came the-Christians with the-idolaters together near the-river
Brentam; equi enim nimium defetigati fugiendi copiam
Brenta the-horses for very worn-out of-fleeing the-means
negabant Hungariis. Simul igitur utraeque acies convenere,
denied to-the-Hungarians together therefore both battle-lines came-together
memorati tantummodo fluvii alveo separatae. Hungarii
of-the-mentioned only river by-the-bed separated the-Hungarians
denique nimio terrore coacti omnem suppellectilem, captivos,
finally by-excessive terror compelled all the-baggage the-captives
arma omnia, equos, singulis tantum quibuscum repedare
arms all horses single only with-which to-return
possent retentis, dare promittunt; hoc praeterea in honere
they-might-be-able kept to-give promise this moreover in the-burden
suae petitionis adiungunt, ut, si vita tantum comite datis
of-their petition they-add that if life only companion given

omnibus illos remeare permitterent, se numquam amplius
all-things them to-return they-permitted they never more
Italiam ingressuros, filiis suis obsidibus datis, promitterent.
Italy about-to-enter sons their as-hostages given they-would-promise
Verum heu Christiani superbiae tumore decepti minis
but alas the-Christians of-pride by-the-swelling deceived with-threats
paganos, ceu iam victos, insecuntur eisque continuo
the-pagans as-if already conquered pursue and-to-them at-once
huiusmodi apologiam απολογειαν, id est responsionem,
of-this-kind an-apology an-apology that is an-answer
remittunt: 'Si contraditum nobis, praesertim a contraditis
send-back if a-thing-handed-over to-us especially from those-handed-over
iamque canibus mortuis, munus reciperemus foedusque aliquod
and-already dogs dead a-gift we-should-receive and-a-treaty any
iniremus, insanos capite non sanus iuraret Orestes!'
we-should-enter insane in-the-head not sane would-swear Orestes
14 Hac igitur Ungarii legatione desperati collectis in
by-this therefore the-Hungarians embassy driven-to-despair gathered into
unum fortissimis tali sese mutuo sermone solantur:
one the-strongest with-such themselves mutual speech console
'Si hac, quae inpraesentiarum cernitur, luce perdita nichil
if this which at-present is-seen light lost nothing
est, quod deterius proveniri possit hominibus, et quia locus
is which worse to-happen it-can to-men and since place
preci nullus, fugiendi spes omnis ablata, colla summittere
for-prayer none of-fleeing hope all taken-away the-necks to-submit
mori est, quid verendum nobis est tela inter ipsa
to-die is what to-be-feared for-us is the-weapons among themselves
ruere, morte mortem inferre? Numquid non fortunae et
to-rush by-death death to-bring surely not to-fortune and
non inbecillitati casus deputandus est noster? Viriliter enim
not to-weakness fall to-be-assigned is our manfully for

pugnando occumbere non est mori, sed vivere. Hanc famam
fighting to-fall not is to-die but to-live this fame
tantam, hanc κλιρονομείαν clironomian, id est hereditatem,
so-great this inheritance inheritance that is inheritance
ut a patribus nostris accepimus, nostris etiam relinquamus
as from fathers our we-received to-our also let-us-leave
heredibus. Nobis debemus, nobis saltem credere expertis,
heirs to-ourselves we-owe to-ourselves at-least to-believe experienced
qui copiarum paucitate nonnunquam plurimos stravimus.
who of-forces from-the-fewness sometimes very-many have-laid-low
Invalidae plebis sane congregatio plurima ad caedem est
of-weak people indeed a-gathering very-large to slaughter is
tantum exposita. Sed et Mars fugientem saepissime perhimit,
only exposed but also Mars the-fleeing very-often kills
dimicantem fortiter protegit. Hi enim, qui nobis supplicantibus
the-fighting bravely protects these for who to-us beseeching
non miserentur, ignorant neque mente percipiunt, quia
not have-mercy know-not nor in-mind perceive that
vincere quidem bonum est, supervincere nimis invidiosum'.
to-conquer indeed good is to-over-conquer too odious
Hac itaque exhortatione utcumque animos recreati tres in 15
by-this and-so exhortation somehow in-spirit refreshed three in
partes insidias ponunt, recta ipsi fluvium transeundo
parts ambushes they-set straight they-themselves the-river crossing
hostes in medios ruunt. Christianorum enim plurimi longa
the-enemies into the-midst rush of-the-Christians for very-many long
propter internuntios expectatione fatigati per castra, ut
because-of the-intermediaries by-waiting wearied through the-camp that
cibo recrearentur, descenderant; quos tanta Hungarii
with-food they-might-be-refreshed had-dismounted whom with-such the-Hungarians
celeritate confoderant, ut in gula cibum transfigerent aliis,
speed pierced that in the-throat the-food they-transfixed to-others

quibusdam equis fugam negarent ablatis, eoque illos
certain with-horses flight they-denied taken-away and-by-that them
levius perhimebant, quo sine equis eos esse conspexerant.
more-easily they-killed by-which without horses them to-be they-had-seen
Ad augmentum denique perditionis Christianorum non parva
to the-increase finally of-the-ruin of-the-Christians no small
inter eos erat discordia. Nonnulli plane Hungariis non solum
among them was discord some indeed to-the-Hungarians not only
pugnam non inferebant, sed, ut proximi caderent, anhelabant;
battle not brought but that their-neighbors should-fall panted
atque ad hoc perversi ipsi perverse fecerant, quatinus, dum
and to this perverse themselves perversely had-acted so-that while
proximi caderent, soli ipsi quasi liberius regnarent.
their-neighbors fell alone they-themselves as-if more-freely might-reign
Qui dum proximorum necessitatibus subvenire neglegunt
who while of-the-neighbors to-the-needs to-come-to-aid they-neglect
eorumque necem diligunt, ipsi propriam incurrunt.
and-their death love they-themselves their-own incur
Fugiunt itaque Christiani, saeviuntque pagani, et qui prius
flee and-so the-Christians and-rage the-pagans and who before
supplicare muneribus nequibant, supplicantibus postmodum
to-beseech with-gifts could-not the-beseeching afterward
parcere nesciebant. Interfectis denique fugatisque Christianis
to-spare knew-not killed finally and-routed the-Christians
omnia Hungarii regni loca saeviendo percurrunt. Neque
all the-Hungarians of-the-kingdom places raging run-through nor
erat, qui eorum praesentiam nisi munitissimis forte
was-there who their presence unless most-fortified perhaps
praestolaretur in locis. Illorum sane adeo praevaluerat virtus,
awaited in places their indeed so had-prevailed the-power

quatinus eorum pars quaedam Bagoariam, Sueviam, Franciam,
that of-them part a-certain Bavaria Swabia Francia
Saxoniam, quaedam vero depopularetur Italiam.
Saxony a-certain but ravaged Italy
Neque enim hoc eorum meruerat virtus, sed verus 16
nor for this their had-earned power but the-true
Domini sermo, terra caeloque durabilior, mutari non
of-the-Lord word than-earth and-heaven more-lasting to-be-changed not
poterat, quemadmodum per Hyeremiam prophetam omnibus
could as through Jeremiah the-prophet to-all
nationibus in persona domus Israhel comminatur dicens:
nations in the-person of-the-house of-Israel he-threatens saying
'Ecce ego adducam super vos gentem de longinquo, gentem
behold I shall-bring upon you a-people from afar a-people
robustam, gentem antiquam, gentem, cuius ignorabis
mighty a-people ancient a-people whose you-shall-not-know
linguam, nec intelleges, quid loquatur. Pharetra eius
the-tongue nor shall-you-understand what it-says quiver its
quasi sepulcrum patens, universi fortes, et comedet segetes
as-if a-tomb open all mighty and it-shall-eat harvests
tuas et panem tuum; devorabit filios tuos et filias tuas;
your and bread your shall-devour sons your and daughters your
comedet gregem tuum et armenta tua; comedet vineam tuam
shall-eat flock your and herds your shall-eat vine your
et ficum tuam, et conteret urbes munitas tuas, in quibus
and fig-tree your and shall-crush cities fortified your in which
tu habes fidutiam, gladio. Veruntamen in diebus illis, ait
you have trust by-the-sword nevertheless in days those says
Dominus Deus, non fatiam vos in consummationem'.
the-Lord God not I-shall-make you into consumption

Louis dies and Conrad is made king. He brings the rebel dukes to heel, and Arnulf of Bavaria flees with his family to the Hungarians. Dying in his seventh year, Conrad names Henry of Saxony, once the chief rebel, as heir, and the princes carry the crown and regalia to Henry. Arnulf returns and is urged to take the throne, but Henry meets him alone and rebukes him in verse, and Arnulf's men advise him to accept Henry and the right to appoint the Bavarian bishops.

17 Hac igitur eadem tempestate Hulodoicus rex moritur.
in-this therefore same season Louis the-king dies
Chunradus Francorum ex genere oriundus, vir strenuus
Conrad of-the-Franks from the-stock sprung a-man vigorous
bellorumque exercitio doctus, rex cunctis a populis ordinatur.
and-of-wars in-the-practice skilled king all by peoples is-appointed

18 Sub quo potentissimi principes Arnaldus in Bagoaria,
under whom the-most-powerful princes Arnulf in Bavaria
Bruchardus in Suevia, Everardus comes potentissimus in
Burchard in Swabia Eberhard a-count most-powerful in
Francia, Giselbertus dux in Lotharingia erant. Quos inter
Francia Giselbert duke in Lotharingia were whom among
Heinricus, Saxonum et Turingiorum praepotens dux, clarebat.
Henry of-the-Saxons and of-the-Thuringians the-very-powerful duke shone

19 Secundo itaque regni huius susceptionis anno memorati
in-the-second and-so of-reign this of-the-taking-up year the-mentioned
principes huic, praesertim Heinricus, rebelles extiterant.
princes against-him especially Henry rebels had-stood-forth
Quos Chuonradus rex tam sapientiae vigore quam
whom Conrad the-king as-much of-wisdom by-the-vigor as
fortitudinis robore superavit suamque ad fidelitatem
of-courage by-the-strength overcame and-his-own to fealty
perduxit. Arnaldus autem eius nimio terrore coactus cum
led Arnulf moreover his by-excessive terror compelled with

uxore et filiis ad Hungarios fugit deguitque eodem, quoad
wife and sons to the-Hungarians fled and-lived there until
vitalis aura Chuonradi regis rexerat artus.
the-vital breath of-Conrad the-king had-ruled the-limbs
Septimo denique regni sui anno vocationis suae ad Deum 20
in-the-seventh finally of-reign his year of-calling his to God
tempus agnovit. Cumque memoratos principes se adire
the-time he-recognized and-when the-mentioned princes him to-approach
fecisset, Heinrico solummodo non praesente, ita convenit:
he-had-made with-Henry only not present thus he-addressed
'Ex corruptione ad incorruptionem, ex mortalitate ad
from corruption to incorruption from mortality to
inmortalitatem vocationis meae tempus, ut cernitis, praesto
immortality of-calling my the-time as you-see at-hand
est; proin pacem vos concordiamque sectari etiam atque etiam
is therefore peace you and-concord to-pursue again and again
rogo. Me hominem exeunte nulla vos regnandi cupiditas,
I-ask with-me the-man putting-off no you of-reigning greed
nulla praesidendi ambitio inflammet. Heinricum, Saxonum et
no of-presiding ambition inflame Henry of-the-Saxons and
Turingiorum ducem prudentissimum, regem eligite, dominum
of-the-Thuringians the-duke most-wise as-king elect as-lord
constituite. Is enim est et scientia pollens et iustae severitatis
establish he for is both in-knowledge strong and of-just severity
censurae habundans'. His ita prolatis propriam coronam non
in-judgment abounding these so brought-forth his-own crown not
auro, quo poene cuiuscumque ordinis principes pollent,
with-gold with-which almost of-every rank princes are-strong
verum gemmis preciosissimis, non solum inquam ornatam,
but with-gems most-precious not only I-say adorned
sed gravatam, sceptrum etiam cunctaque regalia indumenta
but weighed-down the-scepter also and-all the-royal garments

in medium venire praecepit ac, prout valuit, huiusmodi verba
into the-middle to-come he-ordered and as he-could of-this-kind words
effudit: 'Heredem regiaeque dignitatis vicarium regalibus
poured-forth heir and-of-the-royal dignity successor with-royal
his ornamentis Heinricum constituo; cui ut oboediatis,
these ornaments Henry I-establish to-whom that you-obey
non solum consulo, sed exoro'. Quam iussionem interitus
not only I-advise but I-implore which command death
et interitum mox est oboedientia prosecuta. Ipso namque
and death at-once has obedience followed he for
mortem obeunte memorati principes coronam cunctaque
death meeting the-mentioned princes the-crown and-all
regalia indumenta Heinrico duci contulerunt; atque ut
royal garments to-Henry the-duke brought and as
rex Chuonradus dixerat, cuncta per ordinem enarrarunt.
the-king Conrad had-said all-things in order related
Qui regiae dignitatis culmen et prius humiliter declinavit
who of-royal dignity the-summit both first humbly declined
ac paulo post non ambitiose suscepit. Verum nisi 'pallida
and a-little after not ambitiously took-up but unless pale
mors, quae pauperum tabernas regumque turres aequo
death which of-the-poor the-huts and-of-kings the-towers with-equal
pulsat pede', Chuonradum regem tam citissime raperet, is
knocks foot Conrad the-king so very-quickly had-snatched he
esset, cuius nomen multis mundi nationibus imperaret.
would-be whose name to-many of-the-world nations would-command
21 Hoc eodem tempore Arnaldus cum uxore et filiis Hungaria
at-this same time Arnulf with wife and sons from-Hungary
rediens honorifice a Bagoariis atque ab orientalibus suscipitur
returning honorably by the-Bavarians and by the-eastern is-received
Francis. Neque enim solum suscipitur, sed, ut rex fiat, ab
Franks nor for only is-he-received but that king he-become by

iis vehementer hortatur. Rex Heinricus cum obtemperare
them vehemently he-is-urged the-king Henry when to-obey
suis omnes iussionibus, Arnaldum solummodo resistere
his all commands Arnulf only to-resist
cerneret, pervalido collecto exercitu Bagoariam tendit. Quod
he-saw a-very-strong gathered army to-Bavaria makes which
Arnaldus ut audivit, eius non passus est in Bagoaria
Arnulf when he-heard his not suffered has in Bavaria
praestolari adventum; verum collectis, quibus valuit, copiis
to-await arrival but gathered which he-could forces
huic obviam properat. Cuperat sane et ipse rex fieri.
him to-meet hastens he-had-desired indeed also himself king to-become
Cumque in eo esset, ut bellum pariter inire deberent, sicut
and-when on it he-was that battle together to-enter they-ought as
vir sapiens et Dei timens rex Heinricus cogitans ex
a-man wise and God fearing the-king Henry thinking from
utraque parte inrecuperabile posse damnum accidere, Arnaldo,
both side irreparable could loss to-befall to-Arnulf
quatinus cum solo solus loquatur, denuntiat. Putans igitur
that with alone alone he-should-speak announces thinking therefore
Arnaldus, quod singulari se acciret certamine, ad
Arnulf that to-single him he-was-summoning combat to
condictum locum solus hora statuta pervenit.
the-appointed place alone at-the-hour fixed came

22 Quem sibi obviam properantem rex Heinricus tali
whom to-himself to-meet hastening the-king Henry with-such
est sermone adgressus:
has speech addressed

'Insana Domini iussis quid mente resistis?
with-insane of-the-Lord to-the-commands why mind do-you-resist
Quod populus regem me cupit esse, scias,
that the-people king me desires to-be know
Imperio Christi, quo constat machina mundi;
by-the-command of-Christ by-which stands the-fabric of-the-world
Tartarus hunc metuit, hunc Flegeton timuit.
Tartarus him feared him Phlegethon has-feared
Conterit hic nitidos reges dudumque tremendos
grinds he gleaming kings and-long-since dreaded
Sublimesque volens, erigit hic miseros,
and-the-lofty willing raises he the-wretched
Quo debitas Domino laudes per secula solvant.
so-that owed to-the-Lord praises through the-ages they-may-pay
Tune, superbe, reus, perfide, dure, ferox,
you proud guilty faithless hard fierce
Invidiae stimulis saevaque cupidine tactus,
of-envy by-the-goads and-by-cruel by-greed touched
Corpora Christicolum perdere valde sitis?
the-bodies of-the-Christians to-destroy greatly you-thirst
Si regem populus cuperet praeponere temet,
if as-king the-people desired to-set-over yourself
Protinus is essem, qui magis hoc cuperet.
at-once he would-be who more this would-desire

Hoc igitur quadrifario dicendi genere, copioso scilicet, brevi,
by-this therefore four-fold of-speaking kind copious namely brief
sicco et florido, rex Heinricus, ut erat animi prudens,
dry and flowery the-king Henry as he-was in-mind prudent
Arnaldi animum mulcens ad suos rediit.
of-Arnulf the-mind soothing to his-own returned
Arnaldus vero cum suis haec omnia retulisset, huiusmodi 23
Arnulf but when to-his-men these-things all he-had-related of-this-kind
ab eis audivit ἀπόκρισην, apócrisin, id est responsionem:
from them heard an-answer answer that is an-answer
'Sapientis illius, immo sapientiae verae sententiam, quae ait:
of-the-wise that nay of-wisdom true the-sentence which says
Per me reges regnant, principes imperant, et prudentes
through me kings reign princes command and the-prudent
iustitiam decernunt, illamque apostoli dicentis, quod omnis
justice decree and-that of-the-apostle saying that every
ordinatio a Deo est, et qui potestati resistit, Dei ordinationi
ordinance from God is and who the-power resists of-God the-ordinance
resistit, quis ambigit? Neque enim in huius electione totius
resists who doubts nor for in his election of-the-whole
populi posset esse animus unus, si a trinitate summa, quae
people could be the-mind one if by the-Trinity highest which
Deus unus est, ante mundi constitutionem non esset
God one is before of-the-world the-foundation not he-had-been
electus. Si bonus fuerit, diligendus erit, Deusque
chosen if good he-shall-have-been to-be-loved he-shall-be and-God
in eo laudandus; si vero malus, aequanimiter tolerandus.
in him to-be-praised if but bad calmly to-be-borne
Subditorum namque plerumque exigunt merita, quatinus
of-subjects for often demand the-merits that
nonnumquam a praelatis graventur, non regantur. Aequum
sometimes by prelates they-be-burdened not be-ruled fair

autem iustumque nobis videtur, ut a ceteris non dissentiens
moreover and-just to-us it-seems that from the-others not dissenting
hunc regem eligeres, ipse vero te, ut tam fortunatum et
him as-king you-should-elect he but you as so fortunate and
praedivitem virum, hoc pacto bearet animique tui furorem
very-rich a-man on-this condition should-bless and-of-mind your the-fury
mulceret, ut, quod decessores non habuere tui, tibi concedatur,
soothe that what predecessors not had your to-you be-granted
scilicet quatinus totius Bagoariae pontifices tuae subiaceant
namely that of-the-whole of-Bavaria the-bishops to-your be-subject
dicioni, tuaeque sit potestati uno defuncto alterum ordinare'.
to-dominion and-to-your be power one dead another to-ordain
Conivens igitur Arnaldus suorum hoc optimo bonoque consilio
assenting therefore Arnulf of-his-men this best and-good by-counsel
Heinrici regis miles efficitur et ab eo, ut iam dictum
of-Henry the-king the-man is-made and by him as already said
est, concessis totius Bagoariae pontificibus honoratur.
it-is with-the-granted of-the-whole of-Bavaria bishops is-honored

Hearing that Henry is king, the Hungarians march on Saxony to test whether he will pay the old tribute. Henry, gravely ill, gathers an army, rouses it with a song, and vows to drive simony out of his kingdom. He teaches his men to take the first arrows on their shields and charge before a second volley; the Hungarians flee, and Henry has the victory painted in his hall at Merseburg.

Per idem tempus dum Chuonradi regis interitum atque 24
through the-same time when of-Conrad the-king the-death and
Heinrici in regnum successionem audirent Hungarii, tali
of-Henry into the-kingdom the-succession heard the-Hungarians with-such
sese sunt mutuo sermone adgressi: 'Rex forte novus
each-other have mutual speech addressed the-king perhaps new
novis uti legibus cupit. Copiis igitur collectis non minimis
new to-use laws desires forces therefore gathered not least
ascendamus scrutemurque, debita utrum rex Heinricus
let-us-go-up and-let-us-examine the-dues whether the-king Henry
velit tributa persolvere. Quod si, non ut credimus,
is-willing the-tributes to-pay but if not as we-believe
regibus dissentit a ceteris, regnum eius caede atque
from-the-kings he-dissents from the-others kingdom his with-slaughter and
inmensis depopuletur incendiis. Non Bagoariorum, sed
with-immense let-it-be-ravaged burnings not of-the-Bavarians but
Saxonum, ubi rex ipse est, primo fines occupemus;
of-the-Saxons where the-king himself is first the-borders let-us-occupy
ut, si forte, quod non speramus, congregare exercitum
so-that if perhaps which not we-hope to-gather an-army
velit, neque de Lotharingia, neque de Francia, neque de
he-wish neither from Lotharingia nor from Francia nor from
Suevia, neque de Bagoaria ei mature occurrere possit. Sed
Swabia nor from Bavaria to-him in-time to-meet can but

et Saxonum ac Turingionum terra facile depopulatur, quae
also of-the-Saxons and of-the-Thuringians the-land easily is-ravaged which
nec montibus adiuta nec firmissimis oppidis est munita'.
neither by-mountains aided nor with-very-firm towns is fortified
25 Rex Heinricus gravissima valetudine detinetur, et
the-king Henry by-a-most-grave illness is-held and
Hungariorum ei adventus proxime nuntiatur. Vix finetenus
of-the-Hungarians to-him the-coming very-soon is-announced scarcely to-the-end
nuntiantis verba audierat, cum directis per Saxoniam
of-the-announcer the-words he-had-heard when sent through Saxony
nuntiis post quatriduum quotquot poterat capitali sententia
messengers after four-days as-many-as he-could by-capital sentence
se adire commendat. Validissimo igitur per quatriduum
him to-approach he-bids most-strong therefore in four-days
congregato exercitu — est enim Saxonum mos laudandus
gathered army is for of-the-Saxons the-custom to-be-praised
atque imitandus, quatinus annum post unum atque duodecimum
and to-be-imitated that year after one and twelfth
nemini militum bello deesse contingat — etsi corporis
to-no-one of-the-soldiers from-war to-be-absent it-may-happen although of-body
invalidus viribus, mentis tamen vigore animatus, prout
weak in-strength of-mind yet by-the-vigor animated as
valuit equum conscendit atque collectis in unum copiis
he-could a-horse he-mounted and gathered into one forces
huiusmodi eas verbis ad pugnandi rabiem exitavit:
of-this-kind them with-words to of-fighting the-fury roused

26 'Inclita Saxonum Ceu leo frendens
renowned of-the-Saxons as a-lion gnashing
Bella per innumera Gens erat olim.
in-wars through countless the-people was once

Restitit haec Karolo, Ense cruento
resisted this to-Charles with-sword bloody
Qui sibimet totum Straverat orbem.
who for-himself the-whole had-laid-low world
Fugiit hic victus Victor ubique.
fled this-one conquered the-conqueror everywhere
Quod sibi nos rediens Subdidit omnes,
that to-himself us returning he-subjected all
Id Domini pietas Gessit, ob hoc quod
this of-the-Lord the-mercy did for this that
Participes voluit Esse salutis.
sharers he-wished to-be of-salvation
Nunc mala Turcorum Nescia Christi
now evil of-the-Turks ignorant of-Christ
Gens, inimica Deo, Gaudet in omnem
the-people hostile to-God rejoices against every
Ecclesiae populum Ducere ferrum.
of-the-Church people to-draw the-sword
Pro dolor, heroes, Heus mage, quod nunc
for grief heroes alas the-more that now
Subdere nostra volunt Colla tributo!
to-subject our they-wish necks to-tribute
Sumite nunc animos More virili!
take now courage in-manner manly
Membra secare precor Vique ferire!
limbs to-cut I-pray and-with-force to-strike
Sit furor heus ardens, Sancta cupido;
let-there-be fury ho burning holy desire
Haec Stigias referant Munera ad undas
these-things to-the-Stygian let-them-carry gifts to waves
Et calidos numerent Igne trientes!'
and hot let-them-count in-the-fire thirds

27 Talibus itaque rex exhortationibus ad pugnam suorum
with-such and-so the-king exhortations to the-fight of-his-men
accendi animos videns indicto cunctis silentio, hoc iterum
to-be-kindled the-spirits seeing proclaimed to-all silence this again
divini munere flaminis tactus adiecit: 'Priscorum facta regum,
of-divine by-the-gift of-the-Spirit touched added of-the-ancient the-deeds of-kings
sanctorum scripta patrum nobis, quid agere debeamus,
of-holy the-writings fathers to-us what to-do we-ought
insinuant. Non enim est Deo difficile paucis plures sternere,
suggest not for is to-God difficult with-few more to-lay-low
si tamen horum, qui id agere cupiunt, fides meretur; fides,
if yet of-these who it to-do desire the-faith deserves faith
inquam, non professionis tantum, sed operis, non solummodo
I-say not of-profession only but of-work not only
oris, set etiam cordis. Voveamus itaque ac secundum
of-the-mouth but also of-the-heart let-us-vow and-so and according-to
psalmistam vota reddamus, ego, inquam, ego prius, qui
the-psalmist vows let-us-pay I I-say I first who
dignitate videor et ordine primus. Simoniaca heresis Deo
in-dignity seem and in-rank first the-Simoniac heresy to-God
invisa et a beatissimo apostolorum principe Petro damnata,
hateful and by the-most-blessed of-the-apostles prince Peter condemned
quae a decessoribus nostris hactenus est temere custodita,
which by predecessors our hitherto has-been rashly kept
modis omnibus a nostro sit regno expulsa. Conectet
by-means all from our let-it-be kingdom expelled shall-join
invicem unitatis caritas, si quos diaboli divisit calliditas'.
in-turn of-unity the-love if any of-the-devil has-divided the-cunning
28 Rex nonnulla his similia dicere cuperat, cum volipes nuntius
the-king some to-these like-things to-say had-desired when a-swift messenger
Hungarios in Meresburg, quod est in Saxonum, Turingionum
the-Hungarians at Merseburg which is on of-the-Saxons of-the-Thuringians

et Sclavorum confinio castrum, esse nuntiabat. Adiecerat etiam
and of-the-Slavs the-border a-fortress to-be announced he-had-added also
eos non modicam parvulorum ac mulierum habere praedam,
them no small of-little-ones and of-women to-have booty
virorum vero inmensam fecisse stragem; condixerant enim
of-men but an-immense to-have-made slaughter they-had-agreed for
a decimo et deinceps anno neminem se superstitem
from the-tenth and onward year no-one themselves surviving
relicturos, quatinus per hoc terrorem non parvum Saxonibus
about-to-leave so-that through this terror not small on-the-Saxons
adhiberent. Rex igitur, ut erat animi constans, talibus
they-might-bring the-king therefore as he-was in-mind steadfast by-such-things
non terretur; verum magis magisque, ut pro patria
not is-terrified but more and-more that for the-fatherland
pugnare ac laudabiliter debeant occumbere, exhortatur.
to-fight and praiseworthily they-ought to-fall he-exhorts
Vinctos interea Hungarii, si inpugnari debeant, 29
the-bound meanwhile the-Hungarians whether to-be-attacked they-ought
sciscitantur. Cumque ab his non aliter posse fieri
ask and-when by them not otherwise to-be-able to-happen
testaretur, exploratoribus directis, si hoc verum esse
it-was-testified scouts sent whether this true to-be
posset, exquirunt. Profecti denique exploratores Heinricum
could they-inquire having-set-out finally the-scouts Henry
regem inmenso cum exercitu iuxta praefatum oppidum
the-king an-immense with army near the-aforesaid town
Meresburg contemplantur. Denique vix ad suos poterant
Merseburg behold finally scarcely to their-own could-they
repedare, adventum exercitus nuntiare; neque enim his
to-return the-coming of-the-army to-announce nor for to-them
fuerat alius, verum rex ipse belli nuntius.
had-been another but the-king himself of-war the-messenger

30 Haud mora, bellum incipitur, atque ex Christianorum parte
no delay the-battle is-begun and on of-the-Christians side
sancta ac mirabilis vox Κύριε ελεισον, kyrie eleison, ex
holy and wonderful the-voice Lord have-mercy Lord have-mercy on
eorum vero turpis et diabolica húi, húi, frequenter auditur.
their but foul and devilish hui hui often is-heard
31 Dederat rex Heinricus suis ante belli inchoationem
had-given the-king Henry to-his-men before of-the-battle the-beginning
huiusmodi sapiens ac salubre consilium: 'Cum ad Martis
of-this-kind wise and wholesome counsel when to of-Mars
proludium coeperitis properare, nemo sotium velotiori,
the-prelude you-shall-have-begun to-hasten no-one his-comrade with-a-swifter
quamquam habeat, temptet equo praeire. Verum clipeis
although he-have let-him-try on-horse to-go-before but with-shields
altrinsecus operti primos super scuta sagittarum ictus recipite;
on-both-sides covered the-first on the-shields of-the-arrows strokes receive
deinde cursu rapido impetuque vehementissimo super eos
then at-a-run swift and-with-an-onset most-violent upon them
irruite, quatinus non prius vobis secundo sagittarum possint
rush so-that not before at-you a-second of-arrows they-can
ictus emittere, quoad vestrorum sibi armorum sentiant vulnera
strokes to-send-out until of-your on-them arms they-feel the-wounds
pervenisse'. Saxones igitur admonitionis huius saluberrimae
to-have-arrived the-Saxons therefore of-admonition this most-wholesome
non inmemores ordinata aequaliter acie currunt, nec est,
not unmindful ordered evenly in-line run nor is-there-one
qui velociori tardiorem transeat equo; verum clipeis, ut
who on-a-swifter the-slower passes horse but with-shields as
rex dixerat, altrinsecus cooperti sagittarum super clipeos
the-king had-said on-both-sides covered of-the-arrows on the-shields
recipiunt ictus innocuos; deinde, ut vir prudentissimus
receive the-strokes harmless then as the-man most-prudent

dixerat, super hos cursu praepeti veniunt, adeo ut eorum
had-said upon them at-a-run swift they-come so that their
prius vita cum gemitu fugeret, quam secundo iaculorum
sooner life with a-groan fled than a-second of-the-javelins
fulmina mitterentur. Fitque divini muneris pietate,
the-thunderbolts were-sent and-it-comes-about of-divine gift by-the-mercy
ut potius hos fugere quam preliari iuvet. Velox tunc sonipes
that rather them to-flee than to-fight pleases swift then the-horse
piger queritur; falerarum praeterea decor armorumque
slow is-complained-of of-the-trappings moreover the-beauty and-of-arms
honor non Hungariis tutelae, sed honeri erant.
the-honor not to-the-Hungarians for-protection but for-a-burden were
Abiectis quippe arcubus, dimissis spiculis, faleris etiam,
thrown-away indeed the-bows let-go the-arrows the-trappings even
quo expeditius equi currerent, proiectis, fugae solummodo
so-that more-freely the-horses might-run cast-off to-flight only
operam dabant. Verum omnipotens Deus, qui pugnandi eis
attention they-gave but almighty God who of-fighting to-them
audatiam tulerat, fugiendi etiam copiam omnino negabat.
the-boldness had-taken-away of-fleeing also the-means utterly denied
Caesis igitur fugatisque Hungariis inmensa captivorum
cut-down therefore and-routed the-Hungarians an-immense of-captives
turba dissolvitur, atque in laetitiae cantum vox gemitus
crowd is-set-free and into of-gladness song the-voice of-groaning
permutatur. Hunc vero triumphum tam laude quam memoria
is-changed this but triumph as-much of-praise as of-memory
dignum ad Meresburg rex in superiori cenaculo domus
worthy at Merseburg the-king in the-upper dining-room of-the-house
per ζογραφεῖαν, zografían, id est picturam, notare praecepit,
through painting painting that is painting to-set-down ordered
adeo ut rem veram potius quam veri similem videas.
so that a-thing real rather than of-the-real like you-see

Urged by Adalbert of Ivrea and other Italians, Louis, of Burgundian blood, invades, is outnumbered by Berengar, and swears never to return. Invited back by Adalbert of Tuscany and his wife Bertha, he drives Berengar from Verona, but Bertha turns the princes against him. Berengar slips into Verona by night, finds Louis hiding in Saint Peter's, and has him blinded for breaking his oath.

32 Dum haec aguntur, Italienses poene omnes Hulodoicum
while these-things are-done the-Italians almost all Louis
quendam, Burgundionum sanguine genitum, nuntiis directis
a-certain of-the-Burgundians from-the-blood born messengers sent
invitant, ut eos adveniat regnumque Berengario auferat
invite that them he-come-to and-the-kingdom from-Berengar take-away
sibique obtineat.
and-for-himself hold

33 Huius vero tam turpis sceleris auctor Adelbertus, Eporegiae
of-this but so foul crime the-author Adalbert of-Ivrea
civitatis marchio, erat, cui et idem Berengarius filiam
city marquis was to-whom also the-same Berengar daughter
suam nomine Gislam coniugio copularat; ex qua et
his by-name Gisela in-marriage had-joined from whom also
filium genuerat, cui avi sui vocabulum dederat.
a-son he-had-begotten to-whom of-grandfather his the-name he-had-given
Iste est, inquam, iste Berengarius ille, cuius inmensitate
this is I-say this Berengar that whose by-the-immensity
tyrannidis tota nunc luget Italia, cuiusque lenocinio a
of-tyranny all now mourns Italy and-by-whose pandering by
quibuscumque gentibus perhimitur, non iuvatur. Sed ut ad
whatever peoples it-is-destroyed not is-helped but that to
rem redeamus, satis nunc dixisse suffitiat.
the-matter we-may-return enough now to-have-said let-it-suffice

Praeterea idem Adelbertus, quod bonis omnibus cavendum 34
moreover the-same Adalbert which by-the-good all to-be-shunned
est, nequissimi moris fuit. Nam dum fervente sanguine
is of-most-wicked of-character was for while with-boiling blood
iuvenilem duceret vitam, mirae humanitatis miraeque
a-youthful he-led life of-wonderful kindliness and-of-wonderful
sanctitatis fuit, adeo sane ut, si ei a venatione redeunti
holiness he-was so indeed that if to-him from hunting returning
pauper occurreret, aliudque ei deesset, quod illi
a-poor-man should-come and-anything-else to-him was-lacking which to-him
praestare quiret, cornu protinus, quod eius collo fibulis
to-give he-could the-horn at-once which his from-neck by-clasps
aureis dependebat, sine dilatione concederet rursumque ab
golden hung without delay he-would-give and-again from
eodem, quanti aestimabatur, adquireret. Tam dirae autem
the-same at-what it-was-valued would-buy-back of-such dire moreover
postmodum factus est famae, ut huiusmodi vera de
afterward made he-was repute that of-this-kind true about
eo tam a maioribus quam a pueris cantio diceretur.
him as-much by elders as by boys a-song was-said
Et quia sonorius est, Grece illud dicamus: ‘Αδελβέρτος
and since more-sonorous it-is in-Greek it let-us-say Adalbert
κόμις κουρτης, μακροσπάθης, γουνδοπιστης, Adelbertos comis
count of-the-court long-sword faith-breaker Adalbert count
curtis, macrospathis, gundopistis’; quo significatur et
of-the-court long-sword faith-breaker by-which is-meant and
dicitur longo eum uti ense et minima fide.
is-said a-long him to-use sword and least faith
Huius denique aliorumque nonnullorum Italiensium hortatu 35
of-this finally and-of-other some Italians at-the-urging
praefatus Hulodoicus in Italiam venit. Cui mox Berengarius,
the-aforesaid Louis into Italy came whom soon Berengar

ut cognovit, obviam tendit. Cumque Hulodoicus Berengario
when he-learned to-meet heads and-when Louis for-Berengar
sibi obviam venienti magnas adesse copias, sibi vero
to-himself to-meet coming great to-be-present forces for-himself but
cerneret parvas, iureiurando ei hoc terrore compulsus
he-saw small by-oath to-him by-this terror compelled
promisit, ut, si se tunc dimitteret, aliquibus promissionibus
promised that if him then he-let-go by-any promises
accitus amplius in Italiam non veniret. Fecerat namque
summoned more into Italy not he-would-come had-made for
sibi Berengarius plurimis conlatis muneribus Adelbertum,
to-himself Berengar with-very-many conferred gifts Adalbert
Tuscorum praepotentissimum marchionem, sibi valde
of-the-Tuscans the-very-powerful marquis to-himself very
fidelem, atque ideo Hulodoicus tam facile est expulsus.
faithful and therefore Louis so easily was expelled
36 Modica vero temporis transcursa intercapedine rex
a-small but of-time passed interval the-king
Berengarius nominato Adelberto gravis est visus. Cui rei
Berengar to-the-named Adalbert heavy was seen to-which thing
Berta coniux sua, regis Hugonis qui nostro post tempore
Bertha wife his of-the-king Hugh who in-our afterward time
in Italia regnavit mater, non modice fomitem ministrabat.
in Italy reigned the-mother not moderately kindling supplied
Unde factum est, ut consulto eodem Adelberto marchione
whence it-came-about was that consulted the-same Adalbert the-marquis
ceteri Italienses principes propter eundem Hulodoicum, ut
the-other Italian princes for the-same Louis that
adveniret, transmitterent. Qui cupiditate regnandi iurisiurandi
he-should-come sent who with-greed of-reigning of-his-oath
oblitus concitus in Italiam venit.
forgetful hastily into Italy came

Videns itaque Berengarius, quod Hulodoicus tam ab 37
seeing and-so Berengar that Louis as-much by
Italiensium quam a Tuscorum susciperetur principibus,
of-the-Italians as by of-the-Tuscans was-received the-princes
Veronam profectus est. Hulodoicus vero eum cum Italiensibus
to-Verona set-out has Louis but him with the-Italians
persequi non desistens, Verona etiam illum expulit totumque
to-pursue not ceasing from-Verona also him expelled and-the-whole
sibi regnum viriliter subiugavit.
to-himself kingdom manfully subjugated
His ita gestis bonum Hulodoico est visum, ut, 38
these so done good to-Louis it-was seen that
sicut circumcirca viderat Italiam, videret et Tusciam.
as round-about he-had-seen Italy he-should-see also Tuscany
Exiens denique Papia proficiscitur Lucam, ubi decenter
going-out finally from-Pavia he-sets-out to-Lucca where becomingly
miroque apparatu ab Adelberto suscipitur.
and-with-wonderful splendor by Adalbert he-is-received
Cumque Hulodoicus in domo Adelberti tot militum 39
and-when Louis in the-house of-Adalbert of-so-many soldiers
elegantes adesse copias cerneret, tantam etiam dignitatem
elegant to-be-present the-forces he-saw so-great also dignity
totque inpensas prospiceret, invidiae zelo tactus suis
and-so-many expenses he-perceived of-envy by-the-zeal touched to-his-men
clanculum infit: 'Hic rex potius quam marchio poterat
secretly says this-one king rather than marquis could
appellari; nullo quippe mihi inferior, nisi nomine solummodo
to-be-called in-nothing indeed to-me inferior except in-name only
est'. Quae res Adelbertum latere non potuit. Quod Berta,
is-he which thing Adalbert to-escape not could which Bertha
ut erat mulier non incallida, audiens, non solum virum
as she-was a-woman not unskillful hearing not only husband

suum ab eius fidelitate amovit, verum etiam ceteros Italiae
her from his fealty removed but also the-other of-Italy
principes ei infideles effecit. Unde factum est, ut dum
princes to-him unfaithful made whence it-came-about was that while
Tuscia rediens Veronam pergeret degeretque eodem nichil
from-Tuscany returning to-Verona he-went and-stayed there nothing
hesitans nichilque mali suspicans, Berengarius dato pretio
hesitating and-no evil suspecting Berengar given a-price
custodes civitatis corruperit collectisque viris fortissimis in
the-guards of-the-city bribed and-gathered men strongest in
ipso noctis conticinio civitatem ingressus fuerit.
the-very of-the-night dead-silence the-city entered had
40 Fluvius Athesis, sicut Tiberis Romam, mediam
the-river Adige as the-Tiber Rome through-the-middle-of
civitatem Veronam percurrit. Super quem ingens marmoreus
the-city Verona runs over which a-huge of-marble
miri operis miraeque magnitudinis pons est fabricatus.
of-wonderful work and-wonderful size bridge is built
A laeva autem parte fluminis, quae est aquilonem versus
on the-left moreover side of-the-river which is the-north toward
posita, civitas est difficili arduoque colle munita, adeo ut,
placed the-city is by-a-difficult and-steep hill fortified so that
si ea pars civitatis, quam memoratus fluvius dexteram alluit,
if that part of-the-city which the-mentioned river on-the-right washes
ab hostibus capiatur, ea tamen viriliter possit defendi.
by enemies be-taken that yet manfully can to-be-defended
In huius vero collis summitate preciosi operis est ecclesia
on of-this but hill the-summit of-costly work is a-church
fabricata, in honore beatissimi Petri apostolorum principis
built in honor of-the-most-blessed Peter of-the-apostles the-prince

consecrata, ubi et propter ecclesiae amoenitatem locique
consecrated where also because-of of-the-church the-pleasantness and-of-the-place
munitionem Hulodoicus manebat.
the-fortification Louis stayed
Berengarius denique, ut praefati sumus, noctu civitatem 41
Berengar finally as said-before we-have by-night the-city
ingressus, clam Hulodoico suis cum militibus pontem
entered secretly from-Louis his with soldiers the-bridge
pertransiens, in ipso aurorae crepusculo hunc usque advenit.
crossing in the-very of-dawn twilight him as-far-as came
Qui clamore strepituque militum exitatus sciscitatusque,
who by-the-shouting and-din of-the-soldiers roused and-having-asked
quid esset, in ecclesiam fugiit, nullusque eum, praeter
what it-was into the-church fled and-no-one him except
Berengarii militum unum, ubi esset, agnovit. Qui misericordia
of-Berengar of-the-soldiers one where he-was knew who by-pity
motus noluit hunc prodere, sed celare. Timens vero isdem,
moved would-not him betray but hide fearing but the-same-man
ne ab aliis repertus proderetur vitaque multaretur, Berengarium
lest by others found he-be-betrayed and-of-life deprived Berengar
adit eumque ita convenit: 'Quoniam quidem tanti
approaches and-him thus addressed since indeed of-so-much
te Deus habuit, ut tuum proprias in manus traderet
you God has-held that your own into hands he-should-deliver
hostem, debes et tu eius monita, immo praecepta, magni
enemy you-ought also you his admonitions nay commands great
facere. Inquit enim: 'Estote misericordes, sicut et pater
to-make he-says for be merciful as also father
vester misericors est. Nolite iudicare, et non iudicabimini;
your merciful is do-not judge and not you-shall-be-judged
nolite condempnare, et non condempnabimini'. Intellexit
do-not condemn and not you-shall-be-condemned understood

itaque Berengarius, ut vir non incallidus, hunc, quo ipse
and-so Berengar as a-man not unskillful this-one where he
lateret, scium esse, eumque sophystica hac responsione
lay-hidden aware to-be and-him with-sophistical this answer
decepit: 'Putasne me, insulse, quem Dominus tradidit
deceived do-you-think me stupid whom the-Lord has-delivered
hominem, immo regem, velle occidere? Numquid et David
a-man nay a-king to-wish to-kill surely also David
sanctus regem Sahulem a Deo sibi in manus datum
the-holy the-king Saul by God to-him into the-hands given
non occidere potuit, sed noluit?' His sermonibus miles
not to-kill could but would-not by-these words the-soldier
inclinatus locum ostendit, ad quem confugerat Hulodoicus.
swayed the-place showed to which had-fled Louis
Qui captus et ante Berengarii praesentiam ductus, huiusmodi
who taken and before of-Berengar the-presence led of-this-kind
eum Berengarius sermonibus increpavit: 'Quousque tandem
him Berengar with-words rebuked how-long at-length
abutere, Hulodoice, patientia nostra? Num infitiari potes te
shall-you-abuse Louis patience our surely to-deny can-you you
illo tempore meis praesidiis, mea diligentia circumclusum
at-that time by-my garrisons by-my diligence hemmed-in
commovere etiam te contra me non potuisse? meque
to-stir even yourself against me not to-have-been-able and-me
misericordia inclinatum, quae nulla tibi debebatur, te
by-mercy inclined which none to-you was-owed you
dimisisse? Sensistine, inquam, te periurii institis esse
to-have-let-go have-you-felt I-say yourself of-perjury in-the-snares to-be
vinctum? Confirmasti sane mihi te ipsum numquam Italiam
bound you-confirmed indeed to-me you yourself never Italy
ingressurum. Vitam tibi, sicut ei, qui tete mihi prodidit,
about-to-enter life to-you as to-him who you to-me betrayed

promiseram, concedo; oculos vero tibi auferre non solum
I-had-promised I-grant the-eyes but from-you to-take not only
iubeo, sed compello'. His expletis Hulodoicus lumine privatur,
I-order but I-compel these completed Louis of-sight is-deprived
et Berengarius regno potitur.
and Berengar of-the-kingdom takes-possession

VII · THE SARACENS ON THE GARIGLIANO

While the Hungarians range Italy unopposed, the Saracens of Fraxinetum raid as far as Acqui, and Saracens from Africa take much of Calabria, Apulia, and Benevento and fortify Mount Garigliano. They are said to have come because the emperor Romanus paid the African king to subdue a revolt in Apulia and Calabria. Liutprand reflects on how God draws some by kindness and drives others by terror.

Hungariorum interea rabies, quia per Saxones, Francos, 42
of-the-Hungarians meanwhile the-rage since through the-Saxons the-Franks
Suevos, Bagoarios nequibant, totam per Italiam nullis
the-Swabians the-Bavarians they-could-not all through Italy with-none
resistentibus dilatatur. Verum quia Berengarius firmiter suos
resisting is-spread but since Berengar firmly his
milites fideles habere non poterat, amicos sibi Hungarios
soldiers faithful to-have not could friends to-himself the-Hungarians
non mediocriter fecerat.
not moderately had-made
Sed et Saraceni, qui, sicut dixi, Fraxenetum inhabitabant, 43
but also the-Saracens who as I-said Fraxinetum inhabited
post labefactionem Provincialium quasdam summas Italiae
after the-collapse of-the-Provençals certain highest of-Italy
partes sibi vicinas non mediocriter laniabant; adeo ut
parts to-themselves near not moderately tore so that

depopulatis plurimis urbibus Aquas venirent, quae est civitas
ravaged very-many cities to-Acqui they-came which is a-city
XL ferme miliariis Papia distans. Quae etiam propter
forty about miles from-Pavia distant which also because-of
thermas miro in tetragonum modo ad lavandum ibi
the-hot-baths wonderful in square way for bathing there
constitutas vocabulum huiusce sortita est. Tantus enim timor
set-up the-name of-this received has so-great for fear
invaserat universos, ut nullus esset, qui horum praesentiam
had-seized all that none was who their presence
nisi forte tutissimis praestolaretur in locis.
unless perhaps in-the-safest awaited in places

44 Eodem tempore Saraceni ab Africa ratibus exeuntes
at-the-same time the-Saracens from Africa in-ships coming-out
Calabriam, Appuliam, Beneventum, Romanorum etiam poene
Calabria Apulia Benevento of-the-Romans also almost
omnes civitates ita occupaverunt, ut unamquamque civitatem
all cities so occupied that each city
mediam Romani obtinerent, mediam Africani. In monte quippe
half the-Romans held half the-Africans on the-mount indeed
Gareliano munitionem constituerant, in quo uxores, parvulos,
Garigliano a-fortress they-had-built in which wives little-ones
captivos omnemque suppellectilem satis tuto servabant. Nemo
captives and-all baggage quite safely they-kept no-one
etiam ab occasu sive ab arcturo orationis gratia ad
even from the-west or from the-north of-prayer for-the-sake to
beatissimorum apostolorum limina Romam transire poterat,
of-the-most-blessed apostles the-thresholds to-Rome to-cross could
qui ab his aut non caperetur aut non modico dato precio
who by them either not was-taken or not a-small paid price
dimitteretur. Quamvis enim misera Italia multis Hungariorum
was-released although for wretched Italy by-many of-the-Hungarians

et ex Fraxeneto Saracenorum cladibus premeretur, nullis
and from Fraxinetum of-the-Saracens disasters was-pressed by-no
tamen furiis aut pestibus sicut ab Africanis agitabatur.
yet furies or plagues as by the-Africans was-it-harried
Fertur autem hac occasione ab Africa exivisse atque 45
it-is-said moreover on-this occasion from Africa to-have-gone-out and
Italiam adventasse. Leone atque Alexandro imperatoribus
to-Italy to-have-come Leo and Alexander the-emperors
augustis hominem exeuntibus Romanos, ut latius dicturi
august the-man putting-off Romanus as more-widely about-to-say
sumus, cum Constantino, qui nunc usque superest, Leonis
we-are with Constantine who now still survives of-Leo
imperatoris filio, Constantinopolitanum regebat imperium.
the-emperor the-son the-Constantinopolitan ruled empire
Et sicut fieri adsolet, primo, quo Romanos suscepit
and as to-happen is-wont in-the-first in-which Romanus took-up
imperium, anno nonnullae ei gentes, praesertim ἀνατολικαὶ,
the-empire year some to-him peoples especially eastern
anatolike, id est orientales, nisae sunt rebellare. Factum
eastern-ones that is eastern striven have to-rebel done
est autem, dum imperator exercitum ad expugnandas eas
it-was moreover while the-emperor an-army to subdue them
transmitteret, Appuliam et Calabriam, binas regiones, quae
sent Apulia and Calabria two regions which
ei tunc temporis serviebant, huic rebellasse. Cumque
to-him at-that of-time were-subject against-him to-have-rebelled and-when
imperator maximis orientem versus copiis directis exercitus
the-emperor with-the-greatest the-east toward forces sent of-the-army
huc multitudinem destinare non posset, rogavit primo, ut ad
hither a-multitude to-dispatch not could he-asked first that to
sui fidelitatem pristinam sponte redirent. Qui cum
of-him the-fealty former of-their-own-accord they-should-return who when

recusarent atque hoc se facturos minime dicerent, ad
they-refused and this themselves about-to-do by-no-means said to
Africanum mox imperator succensus dirigit regem, eum pretio
the-African soon the-emperor inflamed sends king him for-a-price
rogans, ut se adiuvet virtutisque eius auxilio Appuliam sibi
asking that him he-help and-of-strength his with-the-help Apulia to-himself
atque Calabriam subdat. Hac legatione rex Africanus accitus
and Calabria subdue by-this embassy the-king African summoned
innumerabiles ratibus copias in Calabriam Appuliamque direxit
countless in-ships forces into Calabria and-Apulia sent
binasque has regiones imperatoris dominatui potentissime
and-both these regions of-the-emperor to-the-dominion most-powerfully
subdidit. Sed dum processu temporis has regiones dimitterent,
subjected but while in-the-course of-time these regions they-left
Romam versus aciem giraverunt montemque Garelianum
Rome toward the-battle-line turned and-the-mount Garigliano
maxima pro tuitione sibi vendicaverunt multasque
the-greatest for protection for-themselves claimed and-many
munitissimas civitates debellantes vi ceperunt.
most-fortified cities subduing by-force took

46 Dominus vero noster Iesus Christus, coaeternus et
the-Lord but our Jesus Christ coeternal and
consubstantialis patri sanctoque spiritui, cuius misericordia
consubstantial with-the-Father and-the-holy Spirit of-whose mercy
plena est terra, qui neminem hominum vult perire, sed
full is the-earth who no-one of-men wishes to-perish but
omnes salvos fieri et ad agnitionem veritatis venire, ne pereat,
all saved to-be and to the-knowledge of-the-truth to-come lest perish
quod solus Deus ante mundi constitutionem praevidit, atque
what alone God before of-the-world the-foundation foresaw and
post omnem creaturam, quasi dominum ceteris utentem ac
after every creature as-if a-lord the-others using and

dominantem, creavit hominem, quemque in finem temporis
ruling created man and-whom at the-end of-time
per sanguinis sui effusionem verus homo verusque Deus,
through of-blood his the-shedding true man and-true God
non duo sed unus, redemit, ad amorem sui propriaeque
not two but one redeemed to the-love of-himself and-of-his-own
patriae dilectionem quosdam beneficiis invitat, terroribus alios
fatherland the-love some by-benefits invites by-terrors others
compellit, non quo sibi, qui nec augmentum bonitate
compels not because to-himself who neither increase by-goodness
nostra, ut propheta testatur dicens: 'quoniam bonorum
our as the-prophet testifies saying for of-goods
meorum non eges', nec detrimentum malitia sumere
my not you-have-need nor loss by-malice to-take
possit, sed ut nobis prosit. Placuit itaque ei, quia beneficiis
could but that to-us it-may-profit it-pleased and-so him since by-benefits
noluimus, huiusmodi nos ad tempus castigare terroribus.
we-would-not in-this-way us for a-time to-chastise with-terrors
Sed ne Saraceni diutius insultarent et dicerent: 'Ubi est
but lest the-Saracens longer should-mock and should-say where is
Deus eorum?' convertit Deus corda Christicolum, adeo ut
God their turned God the-hearts of-the-Christians so that
amplior iis pugnandi quam fugiendi prius esset cupido.
greater to-them of-fighting than of-fleeing before was desire

John of Ravenna holds the papacy through Theodora, a shameless woman who rules Rome and loves him. A young Saracen, wronged by his own people, leads sixty young men in ambushes, and the Saracens withdraw to Mount Garigliano. With Landulf of Benevento and Greek forces from Constantinople the pope hems them in and destroys them; some saw Saints Peter and Paul in the battle.

47 Quo tempore venerandae Romanae sedis summum Iohannes
at-which time of-the-venerable Roman see the-highest John
Ravennas pontificatum tenebat. Hic autem tam nefario
of-Ravenna pontificate held this-one moreover by-so wicked
scelere contra ius fasque pontificii culmen ita obtinuit.
a-crime against right and-divine-law of-the-pontificate the-summit thus obtained

48 Theodora scortum inpudens, huius Alberici qui nuper
Theodora a-whore shameless of-this Alberic who lately
hominem exiit avia, quod dictu etiam fedissimum
the-man put-off the-grandmother which to-say even most-foul
est, Romanae civitatis non inviriliter monarchiam obtinebat.
is of-the-Roman city not unmanfully the-monarchy held
Quae duas habuit natas, Marotiam atque Theodoram,
who two had daughters Marozia and Theodora
sibi non solum coaequales, verum etiam Veneris exercitio
to-herself not only equal but also of-Venus in-the-exercise
promptiores. Harum Marotia ex papa Sergio, cuius supra
readier of-these Marozia from pope Sergius of-whom above
fecimus mentionem, Iohannem, qui post Iohannis Ravennatis
we-made mention John who after of-John of-Ravenna
obitum Romanae ecclesiae obtinuit dignitatem, nefario genuit
the-death of-the-Roman church obtained the-dignity in-wicked bore
adulterio; ex Alberico autem marchione Albericum, qui nostro
adultery from Alberic moreover the-marquis Alberic who in-our

post tempore eiusdem Romanae urbis principatum sibi
afterward time of-the-same Roman city the-principate for-himself
usurpavit. Per idem tempus Ravennatae sedis, secundus qui
usurped through the-same time of-the-Ravennate see second who
post Romanum archierean archipraesulatus habebatur, Petrus
after the-Roman archbishop of-the-archiepiscopacy was-held Peter
pontificatum regebat. Qui dum subiectionis offitio debitae
the-pontificate ruled who while of-subjection by-the-office due
iam nominatum Iohannem papam, qui suae minister
the-already named John pope who of-his minister
ecclesiae tunc temporis habebatur, Romam saepius et iterum
church at-that of-time was-held to-Rome more-often and again
domno dirigeret apostolico, Theodora, ut testatus sum, meretrix
to-the-lord sent apostolic Theodora as testified I-have a-harlot
satis impudentissima, Veneris calore succensa, in huius spetiei
quite most-shameless of-Venus with-the-heat inflamed in of-his form
decorem vehementer exarsit seque hunc scortari solum non
the-beauty violently blazed and-herself him to-whore-with only not
voluit, verum post etiam atque etiam compulit. Haec dum
wished but after again and again compelled these-things while
inpudenter aguntur, Bononiensis ecclesiae episcopus moritur,
shamelessly are-done of-Bologna of-the-church the-bishop dies
et Iohannes iste loco eius eligitur. Paulo post ante huius
and John this in-place his is-elected a-little after before his
diem consecrationis nominatus Ravennas archipraesul mortem
the-day of-consecration the-named of-Ravenna archbishop death
obiit, locumque eius Iohannes hic, Theodorae instinctu,
met and-place his John this of-Theodora at-the-instigation
priore Bononiense deserta ecclesia, ambitionis spiritu
the-former Bolognese deserted church of-ambition by-the-spirit
inflatus contra sanctorum instituta patrum sibi usurpavit.
puffed against of-the-holy the-institutions fathers for-himself usurped

Romam quippe adveniens mox Ravennatae ecclesiae ordinatur
to-Rome indeed coming soon of-the-Ravennese church is-ordained
episcopus. Modica vero temporis intercapedine Deo vocante et
bishop a-small but of-time in-the-interval God calling also
qui eum iniuste ordinaverat papa defunctus est. Theodorae
who him unjustly had-ordained the-pope dead is of-Theodora
autem Glycerii mens perversa, ne amasii sui ducentorum
moreover of-Glycerium the-mind perverse lest of-lover her of-two-hundred
miliariorum interpositione, quibus Ravenna sequestratur
miles by-the-interposition by-which Ravenna is-separated
Roma, rarissimo concubitu potiretur, Ravennatae hunc
from-Rome by-very-rare intercourse might-enjoy of-the-Ravennese him
sedis archipraesulatum coegit deserere Romanumque, pro
of-the-see the-archiepiscopacy compelled to-desert and-the-Roman for
nefas, summum pontificium usurpare. Hoc igitur sanctorum
shame highest pontificate to-usurp this therefore of-the-holy
apostolorum taliter vicario constituto Poeni, ut praefatus
apostles in-such-a-way vicar established the-Phoenicians as said-before
sum, Beneventum Romanasque urbes misere laniabant.
I-have Benevento and-the-Roman cities wretchedly tore

49 Accidit interea Poenorum quendam iuvenem iniuriis
it-happened meanwhile of-the-Phoenicians a-certain young-man by-injuries
lacessitum Poenos deserere huncque Iohannem papam
provoked the-Phoenicians to-desert and-this John the-pope
advenire seque divino tactum spiramine papam ita
to-come-to and-himself by-divine touched inspiration the-pope thus
convenisse: ‘Sacerdos magne, si saperes, populum terramque
to-have-addressed priest great if you-were-wise the-people and-the-land
tibi subiectam Poenos tam graviter laniare non sineres.
to-you subject the-Phoenicians so grievously to-tear not you-would-allow
Elige igitur iuvenes nimia quasi mobilitate volipedes,
choose therefore young-men with-excessive as-if mobility swift-footed

qui me imperatorem, praeceptorem, dominum aequanimiter
who me as-commander instructor lord calmly
audiant. Horum neminem aliquid praeter singulas parmas
may-hear of-these none anything besides single small-shields
singulosque pilos ensesque singulos ac simplices vestes cum
and-single javelins and-swords single and simple clothes with
exiguitate obsonii habere permitto'.
scantiness of-food to-have I-permit
LX denique huiusmodi inventis sibique traditis Poenos 50
sixty finally of-this-kind found and-to-himself handed-over the-Phoenicians
contra properat latuitque secus angustas, qua Poenorum
against hastens and-lay-hidden beside the-narrow by-which of-the-Phoenicians
iter erat, vias. Cumque circumcirca saepius et iterum
the-route was roads and-when round-about more-often and again
Poeni depopulantes redirent, clangore cum maximo ex
the-Phoenicians ravaging returned a-clangor with greatest from
improviso atque insperato hi ex insidiis prosilientes eos
unforeseen and unexpected these from ambushes leaping-out them
leviter trucidabant. Clamor ex ore ictusque simul a
easily slaughtered the-shout from the-mouth and-the-blow together from
manu processerant. Neque enim Poeni, qui, quidve
the-hand proceeded nor for the-Phoenicians who or-what
esset, prius scire poterant, quam istorum spicula horum
it-was before to-know could than of-these the-javelins their
corporibus inhaererent. Hac denique fama hocque exercitio
in-bodies stuck by-this finally report and-by-this exercise
nonnulli Romanorum acciti plurimis Poenos in locis
some of-the-Romans summoned in-very-many the-Phoenicians in places
prostraverant; callidoque hoc Africani consilio adtriti civitates
had-laid-low and-by-crafty this the-Africans counsel worn-down the-cities

poenitus rupto foedere deserebant solumque Garelianum
wholly broken the-treaty were-deserting and-only the-Garigliano
montem sibi pro munitione delegerant.
mount for-themselves for a-fortress had-chosen
51 Iohanne itaque, ut praefati sumus, papa constituto Landolfus
John and-so as said-before we-have pope established Landulf
quidam, vir strenuus bellorumque exercitio doctus,
a-certain a-man vigorous and-of-wars in-the-exercise skilled
Beneventanorum et Capuanorum omnium princeps clarebat.
of-the-Beneventans and of-the-Capuans all prince shone
Poenis igitur statum rei publicae non mediocriter
the-Phoenicians therefore the-state of-the-thing public not moderately
labefactantibus Landolfum hunc principem egregium, quid
undermining Landulf this prince outstanding what
super re huiuscemodi faciendum esset, quam Africani agunt,
about a-thing of-this-kind to-be-done was which the-Africans do
Iohannes consulit papa. Quod princeps ut audivit, papam
John consults the-pope which the-prince when he-heard the-pope
per internuntios ita convenit: 'Res haec, spiritalis pater,
through intermediaries thus addressed thing this spiritual father
magnis est investiganda consiliis. Mittito denique ad Argorum
with-great is to-be-investigated counsels send finally to of-the-Greeks
imperatorem, cuius et ipsi eam quae cis mare est terram,
the-emperor whose also they that which on-this-side of-the-sea is land
sicut et nostram, depopulare non cessant. Camerinos etiam
as also ours to-ravage not cease the-Camerini also
atque Spoletinos nostrum ad auxilium invitato; ineamusque
and the-Spoletans our to help invite and-let-us-enter
Deo protectore cum his acriter bellum. Si vincimus, non
God protecting with these sharply war if we-conquer not

multitudini, sed Deo victoria imputetur; si vero vicerint
to-the-multitude but to-God the-victory be-ascribed if but shall-have-conquered
Poeni, peccatis nostris et non inhertiae deputetur'.
the-Phoenicians to-sins our and not to-sloth let-it-be-assigned
His auditis papa nuntios confestim Constantinopolim dirigit, 52
these heard the-pope messengers at-once to-Constantinople sends
suppliciter imperatoris amminicula sibi dari deposcens.
suppliantly of-the-emperor the-aids to-himself to-be-given demanding
Imperator vero, ut vir sanctissimus Deique timens, copias
the-emperor but as a-man most-holy and-God fearing forces
absque mora classibus advectas direxit. Cumque per Garelianum
without delay in-fleets carried sent and-when by the-Garigliano
flumen conscenderent, adfuit et papa Iohannes cum Landolfo
river they-went-up was-present also the-pope John with Landulf
pariter Beneventanorum principe potentissimo, Camerinis
together of-the-Beneventans prince most-powerful the-Camerini
etiam atque Spoletinis. Horrida satis denique inter eos
also and the-Spoletans dreadful quite finally among them
pugna exoritur. Verum dum Christianorum partem Poeni
a-battle arises but when of-the-Christians the-side the-Phoenicians
praevalere conspicerent, in Gareliani montis summitatem
to-prevail saw to of-the-Garigliano mount the-summit
confugiunt angustasque tantum vias defendere moliuntur.
they-flee and-the-narrow only roads to-defend strive
Ex parte vero illa, qua difficilior erat ascensus Poenisque 53
on side but that where more-difficult was the-ascent and-for-the-Phoenicians
ad fugiendum aptior, Greci castrum die ipsa constituunt,
for fleeing more-suited the-Greeks a-fort on-day the-same build
in quo residentes, Poenos, ne fugerent, observabant
in which staying the-Phoenicians lest they-flee watched
cottidieque oppugnantes non mediocriter trucidabant.
and-daily attacking not moderately slaughtered

54 Grecis igitur Latinisque cottidie conflictantibus, Deo miserante,
the-Greeks therefore and-the-Latins daily fighting God pitying
Poenorum nec unus quidem superfuit, qui non aut gladio
of-the-Phoenicians not one even survived who not either by-the-sword
trucidaretur aut vivus continuo caperetur. Visi sunt autem a
was-slaughtered or alive at-once was-taken seen were moreover by
religiosis fidelibus in eodem bello sanctissimi Petrus et Paulus
religious faithful in the-same battle the-most-holy Peter and Paul
apostoli, quorum Christianos credimus precibus meruisse,
the-apostles whose by-the-Christians we-believe prayers to-have-earned
quatinus Poeni fugerent et ipsi victoriam obtinerent.
that the-Phoenicians should-flee and they-themselves the-victory should-obtain

IX · BERTHA, ERMENGARD, AND THE REBELS AGAINST BERENGAR

Adalbert of Tuscany dies; his widow Bertha keeps her cities from Berengar and wins her release and her son Guy's. Her daughter Ermengard marries Adalbert of Ivrea. Adalbert, the count palatine Odelric, Gislebert, and Archbishop Lambert of Milan rebel; Lambert, set to guard the captive Odelric, frees him and answers Berengar's summons with a priest's ironic refusal.

55 Hoc in tempore Adelbertus, Tuscorum potens marchio,
this in time Adalbert of-the-Tuscans powerful marquis
moritur, filiusque eius Wido a Berengario rege marchio
dies and-son his Guy by Berengar king marquis
patris loco constituitur. Berta autem uxor eius cum
of-the-father in-place is-established Bertha moreover wife his with
Widone filio post mariti obitum non minoris facta
Guy son after of-the-husband the-death not of-less made
est quam vir suus potentiae. Quae cum calliditate,
was than husband her power who as-well by-cunning

muneribus, tum hymenaei exercitio dulcis nonnullos sibi
by-gifts as of-marriage by-the-exercise sweet not-a-few to-herself
fideles effecerat. Unde contigit, ut, dum paulo post a
faithful had-made whence it-happened that when a-little after by
Berengario simul cum filio caperetur et Mantuae custodiae
Berengar together with her-son she-was-taken and at-Mantua in-custody
teneretur, suos tamen civitates et castella omnia regi
was-held her-men yet the-cities and castles all to-king
Berengario minime reddidisse, sed firmiter tenuisse eamque
Berengar by-no-means to-have-returned but firmly to-have-held and-her
postmodum de custodia simul cum filio liberasse.
afterward from custody together with her-son to-have-freed
Haec, ut rumor est, tres ex viro suo genuerat: Widonem, 56
she as the-report is three from husband her had-borne Guy
quem praediximus, atque Lambertum, qui nunc usque
whom we-mentioned-before and Lambert who now still
lumine privatus superest, Ermengardam etiam gnatam suam
of-light deprived survives Ermengard also daughter her
sibi Afroditi dulcedine coaequalem, quam Adelberto,
to-herself of-Aphrodite in-sweetness equal whom to-Adalbert
Eporegiae civitatis marchioni, Gisla Berengarii regis filia,
of-Ivrea city marquis Gisela of-Berengar king the-daughter
Berengarii scilicet regis huius matre, mortua, hýmenaei
of-Berengar namely king of-this the-mother being-dead of-marriage
consortio copularat. Quae ei filium genuerat nomine
in-the-partnership had-joined who to-him a-son had-borne by-name
Anscarium, qui quantae virtutis quantaeque audatiae fuerit,
Anscar who of-how-great valor and-of-how-great boldness was
liber subsequens declarabit.
the-book following shall-declare

57 His temporibus isdem Adelbertus, gener regius, Eporegiae
in-these times the-same Adalbert son-in-law royal of-Ivrea
civitatis marchio, atque Odelricus palatii comes, qui ex
city marquis and Odelric of-the-palace count who from
Suevorum sanguine duxerat originem, necnon et Gislebertus,
of-the-Swabians blood had-drawn origin and also Gislebert
praedives comes et strenuus, Lampertus etiam Mediolanensis
very-rich count and vigorous Lambert also of-Milan
archiepiscopus nonnullique alii principes Italiae Berengario
archbishop and-not-a-few other princes of-Italy to-Berengar
rebelles extiterant. Causa autem rebellionis horum haec
rebels had-stood-forth the-cause moreover of-the-rebellion of-these this
fuit. Dum Lampertus defuncto decessore suo Mediolanensis
was when Lambert dead predecessor his of-Milan
archiepiscopus ordinari debuisset, non parvam ab eo rex
archbishop to-be-ordained ought not small from him king
Berengarius contra sanctorum instituta patrum pecuniam
Berengar against of-the-holy the-institutions fathers money
exigebat iussitque scribi in tabulis post datam sibi
was-demanding and-ordered to-be-written on tablets after the-given to-himself
pecuniam, quantum cubicularii, quantum hostiarii, quantum
money how-much the-chamberlains how-much the-doorkeepers how-much
pavonarii, ipsi etiam altilium custodes, accipere
the-peacock-keepers themselves even of-the-fatted-fowl the-keepers to-receive
deberent. Lampertus igitur archipraesulatus amore vehementer
ought Lambert therefore of-the-archbishopric by-love vehemently
animatus, quaecumque rex poposcerat, quanto cum dolore
stirred whatever-things the-king had-demanded how-much with grief
tribueret, ex hoc intelligere poteris, quod subsequens
he-paid from this to-understand you-shall-be-able which the-following
lectio declarabit.
reading shall-declare

Odelricum palatii comitem, quem praediximus, vinctum 58
Odelric of-the-palace count whom we-mentioned-before bound
Berengarius tunc tenebat. Cumque Lampertum archipraesulem
Berengar then was-holding and-when Lambert archbishop
constitueret, Odelricum ei, donec quid de eo deliberaret
he-established Odelric to-him until what about him he-should-deliberate
ageret, commendavit. Is autem pecuniae multae, quam pro
he-should-do he-entrusted he moreover of-the-money much which for
episcopatu erogarat, non inmemor hoc cum capto
the-bishopric he-had-paid-out not unmindful this-matter with the-captive
coepit de eius infidelitate discutere.
began about his disloyalty to-discuss
Paucis denique interpositis solibus rex Berengarius nuntiis 59
a-few finally intervening suns king Berengar messengers
directis Odelricum ad se venire praecepit. Quos hyronica
sent Odelric to himself to-come ordered whom with-ironic
hac responsione convenisse non dubium est: 'Sacerdotis officio
this answer to-have-met not doubtful it-is of-a-priest the-office
penitus carere debeo, si iugulandum quempiam in manus
wholly to-lack I-ought if one-to-be-slain anyone into the-hands
alicuius tradidero'. Intellexerant itaque nuntii hunc
of-someone I-shall-have-handed-over had-understood and-so the-messengers this-one
publice rebellasse, quem a rege sibi traditum absque
publicly to-have-rebelled whom by the-king to-himself handed-over without
eius licentia noverant dimisisse. Qui regressi protinus ad
his permission they-knew to-have-released who having-returned at-once to
regem Terentianum illud pro responsione dederunt: 'Huic
the-king Terence's that for answer gave to-this-one
commendes, si quid recte curatum velis'.
entrust if anything rightly cared-for you-wish

The Italians invite Rudolf of Burgundy. Hungarians friendly to Berengar surprise the rebels in the hills of Brescia: Odelric falls, Adalbert of Ivrea is bought cheaply in disguise, and Gislebert is forgiven and released. Gislebert goes straight to Rudolf, who takes the kingdom, and the two kings fight near Fiorenzuola, where Boniface's ambush wins the day and Berengar flees to Verona.

60 Quo tempore Rodulfus rex superbissimis Burgundionibus
at-which time Rudolf king over-the-most-arrogant Burgundians
imperabat. Cui in augmentum potentiae hoc accessit, ut
was-ruling to-whom for the-increase of-power this was-added that
potentissimi Suevorum ducis Bruchardi filiam nomine
of-the-most-powerful of-the-Swabians duke Burchard the-daughter by-name
Bertam sibi coniugio copularet. Igitur Italienses nuntiis
Bertha to-himself in-marriage he-joined therefore the-Italians messengers
directis hunc venire, Berengarium vero expellere petunt.
sent this-one to-come Berengar but to-drive-out ask

61 Inter agendum autem contigit Hungarios Veronam his
amid the-doing moreover it-happened the-Hungarians to-Verona these
ignorantibus advenisse, quorum duo reges Dursác et Bugat
unaware to-have-arrived of-whom two kings Dursac and Bugat
amicissimi Berengario fuerant. Adelbertus denique marchio atque
most-friendly to-Berengar had-been Adalbert finally marquis and
Odelricus comes palatii, Gislebertus etiam comes pluresque alii
Odelric count of-the-palace Gislebert also count and-more others
dum in montanis Brixianae civitatis, quae L miliariis Verona
while in the-mountains of-Brescia city which fifty miles from-Verona
distat, conventicula ob Berengarii deiectionem haberent, rogavit
is-distant small-gatherings for of-Berengar the-overthrow were-holding asked
Berengarius Hungarios, ut, si se amarent, super inimicos suos
Berengar the-Hungarians that if him they-loved upon enemies his

irruerent. Hi vero, ut erant necis avidi, bellandi cupidi,
they-should-rush these but as they-were for-slaughter greedy for-warring eager
a Berengario mox praeduce accepto per ignotas vias a
from Berengar soon a-guide received through unknown ways from
tergo hos usque adveniunt tantaque illos tunc celeritate
the-rear these all-the-way arrive and-with-such them then speed
confodiunt, ut nec induendi quidem sumendive arma
they-stab that not-even of-putting-on indeed or-of-taking-up arms
spatium habere quirent. Captis igitur caesisque multis Odelricus
the-space to-have they-could taken therefore and-slain many Odelric
palatii comes, qui se non inviriliter defenderat, occiditur,
of-the-palace count who himself not unmanfully had-defended is-killed
Adelbertus autem marchio et Gislebertus vivi capiuntur.
Adalbert moreover marquis and Gislebert alive are-taken
Verum Adelbertus, ut erat vir non bellicosus, sed sagacitatis 62
but Adalbert as he-was a-man not warlike but of-shrewdness
nimiaeque calliditatis, dum inruere Hungarios undique cerneret
and-of-excessive cunning when to-rush-in the-Hungarians on-all-sides he-saw
essetque illi fugiendi spes omnis ablata, balteum armillasque
and-was to-him of-fleeing hope all taken-away the-belt and-bracelets
aureas omnemque preciosum apparatum proiecit vilibusque
golden and-all costly apparel threw-away and-in-the-cheap
se militis sui induit vestimentis, ne ab Hungariis, quis
himself of-soldier his he-clothed garments lest by the-Hungarians who
esset, dinosceretur. Captus itaque sciscitatusque, quis esset,
he-was he-be-discerned taken and-so and-questioned who he-was
militis cuiusdam militem se esse respondit. Rogavitque
of-a-soldier a-certain soldier himself to-be answered and-asked
se ad vicinum castellum vocabulo Calcinaria duci, in quo
himself to the-neighboring castle by-name Calcinaria to-be-led in which
parentes, qui eum redimerent, se habere asserebat. Ductus
kinsmen who him should-ransom himself to-have he-asserted led

igitur, quia non agnitus, vilissimo pretio comparatur. Emit
therefore because not recognized at-a-most-cheap price is-bought bought
autem illum suus ipsius miles nomine Leo.
moreover him his own soldier by-name Leo
63 Gislebertus denique, quia agnitus, flagellatus, vinctus,
Gislebert finally because recognized whipped bound
seminudus ante regis Berengarii praesentiam ducitur. Enimvero
half-naked before of-king Berengar the-presence is-led indeed
dum ante eum sine femoralibus, curta indutus endromade
while before him without breeches a-short wearing cloak
ductus regis ad pedes pronus concite caderet, in genitalium
led of-the-king at the-feet prone hastily fell in of-the-genital
ostensione membrorum risu omnes emorirer. Rex
the-display members with-laughter all to-die-away the-king
autem, pietatis ut erat amator, misericordia, quae illi nulla
moreover of-piety as he-was a-lover by-mercy which to-him none
debebatur, inclinatus ei non, ut populus optavit, malum pro
was-owed inclined to-him not as the-people wished evil for
malo reddidit, verum confestim lotum optimisque vestibus
evil returned but at-once washed and-with-the-best clothes
indutum, eum abire permisit. Cui et ait: 'Iusiurandum
dressed him to-go-away permitted to-whom also he-says an-oath
a te nullum exigo, fidei tuae te ipsum committo, si
from you none I-demand to-faith your you yourself I-commit if
male contra me egeris, rationem redditurum Deo'.
badly against me you-shall-have-done an-account about-to-render to-God
64 Hunc denique ad propria redeuntem regis gener
this-one finally to his-own returning of-the-king the-son-in-law
Adelbertus ceterique, qui cum eo simul rebelles extiterant,
Adalbert and-the-rest who with him together rebels had-stood-forth
accepti inmemorem benefitii ob Rodulfum, ut adveniat,
of-the-received unmindful kindness for Rudolf that he-come

dirigunt. Profectus denique eodem Gislebertus ante XXX
send having-set-out finally thither Gislebert before thirty
dies eum Italiam adventare coegit. Qui susceptus ab omnibus
days him to-Italy to-come compelled who received by all
nil Berengario ex omni regno praeter Veronam dimisit
nothing to-Berengar from all the-kingdom except Verona left
tenuitque totum per triennium viriliter regnum.
and-held the-whole for three-years manfully kingdom
Cum XII sibimet horis homo placeat, displiceat, hoc modo 65
since in-twelve to-himself hours a-man may-please may-displease this now
diligat, illud mox aspernetur, qui fieri potest, ut omnibus
may-love that soon may-spurn how to-happen can-it that to-all
semper aequanimiter placeat? Igitur infra triennium istud
always with-even-mind he-may-please therefore within three-years that
rex Rodulfus quibusdam bonus, aliis gravis est visus.
king Rudolf to-some good to-others harsh was seen
Unde factum est, ut totius regni media populi pars
whence done it-was that of-the-whole kingdom half of-the-people part
Rodulfum, media Berengarium vellet. Parant itaque civile
Rudolf half Berengar wanted they-prepare and-so civil
non modicum bellum; et quoniam Wido, Placentinae civitatis
not moderate war and since Guy of-Piacenza city
episcopus, Berengarii partibus favebat, XII longe Placentia
bishop of-Berengar the-side favored twelve far from-Piacenza
miliariis iuxta Florentiolam bellum constituunt.
miles near Fiorenzuola the-battle they-set

Tum quam satis horrida pugna
then how quite dreadful a-fight
Oritur civilis et atra,
arises civil and black

Heu, quattuor ante Kalendas
alas four before the-Kalends
Quater Sextilis. At ipse
four-times of-August but himself
Radios emergere Phoebus,
rays to-emerge Phoebus
Bucina Mars cum strepit alta,
with-the-trumpet Mars when blares high
Gnato pater ipse perhennem
to-the-son the-father himself everlasting
Fert interitum, genitusque
brings death and-the-begotten
Perhimit patrem, dolor heu quis?
destroys the-father grief alas who
Loetum parat ecce nepoti
death prepares behold for-the-grandson
Abavus, sternendus ab ipso;
the-great-great-grandfather to-be-laid-low by him
Furiis pulsatus ab atris
by-furies driven by black
Fratrem fodit eminus alter.
the-brother pierces from-afar another
Berengarius ruit ipse
Berengar rushes himself
Medios rex per citus hostes
the-midst the-king through swift the-enemies
Properans. Ceu fulgur ab alto,
hastening as lightning from on-high
Cancri grave sidus aristas
of-the-Crab the-heavy star the-ears-of-grain
Deicit cum falce novellas,
casts-down with the-sickle the-young

Aliter non ferus et atrox
otherwise not fierce and terrible
Miserum rex ipse Rodulfus
the-wretched king himself Rudolf
Deicit mucrone popellum.
casts-down with-the-sword the-common-folk

Dederat rex Rodulfus Waldradam sororem suam, tam forma 66
had-given king Rudolf Waldrada sister his as-much in-form
quam sapientia quae nunc usque superest honesta matrona,
as in-wisdom who now still survives an-honorable matron
coniugem Bonefatio comiti potentissimo, qui nostro post
as-wife to-Boniface count most-powerful who in-our afterward
tempore Camerinorum et Spoletinorum extitit marchio. Hic
time of-the-Camerini and of-the-Spoletans stood-forth marquis this-one
collecta multitudine cum Gariardo pariter comite Rodulfo in
gathered a-multitude with Gariard together count to-Rudolf to
auxilium venerat atque, ut erat vir tam callidus quam audax,
help had-come and as he-was a-man as cunning as bold
maluit potius cum suis in insidiis positus rei exitum
preferred rather with his-men in ambush placed of-the-affair the-outcome
expectare quam primum belli impetum sustinere. Iamiam
to-await than the-first of-battle the-onset to-sustain already-now
Rodulfi poene omnes milites fugerant et Berengarii dato
of-Rudolf almost all the-soldiers had-fled and the-Berengarians given
victoriae signo colligere spolia satagebant, cum Bonefacius
of-victory the-signal to-gather the-spoils were-busy when Boniface
atque Gariardus subito ex insidiis properantes hos tanto
and Gariard suddenly from ambush hastening these by-so-much
levius quanto inopinatius sautiabant. Pepercerat Gariardus
more-easily by-how-much more-unexpectedly were-wounding had-spared Gariard

nonnullis, hasta eos et non ferro percutiens; Bonefatius
some with-the-spear them and not with-iron striking Boniface
vero nulli parcens inmensam fecerat stragem. Signum itaque
but none sparing an-immense had-made slaughter the-signal and-so
victoriae Bonefacius concrepat, conveniuntque, qui ex Rodulfi
of-victory Boniface sounds and-they-come-together who from of-Rudolf
parte aufugerant, persequentesque Berengaricos fugam illos
the-side had-fled and-pursuing the-Berengarians flight them
inire cogebant. Berengarius vero ad non incognitum Veronae
to-enter compelled Berengar but to not unknown of-Verona
perrexit asilum. Tanta quippe tunc interfectorum strages
went refuge so-great indeed then of-the-slain a-slaughter
facta est, ut militum usque hodie permagna raritas habeatur.
made was that of-soldiers up-to today a-very-great scarcity is-held
67 His ita peractis regnum sibi rex Rodulfus potentissime
these thus done the-kingdom to-himself king Rudolf most-powerfully
subiugavit Papiamque concite veniens congregatisque omnibus:
subjugated and-to-Pavia hastily coming and-gathered all
'Quoniam', inquit, 'superni muneris largitate mihi contigit
since he-says of-supernal gift by-the-bounty to-me it-has-befallen
devictis hostibus regni solium adipisci, nunc cordi est
conquered the-enemies of-the-kingdom the-throne to-obtain now at-heart it-is
vestrae me regnum Italicum fidei commendare Burgundiamque
to-your me the-kingdom Italian faith to-commend and-Burgundy
patriam veterem visere'. Cui mox Italienses: 'Si bonum
fatherland old to-visit to-whom soon the-Italians if good
tibi', inquiunt, 'videtur, praesto sumus'.
to-you they-say it-seems at-hand we-are

XI · THE MURDER OF BERENGAR

The Veronese plot against Berengar, led by Flambert, whose son he had sponsored at the font; Berengar warns him and gives him a golden cup. At cockcrow the king goes to the church to pray, goes among Flambert's armed band, and is struck from behind. A stone before a church still shows his blood. Milo hangs Flambert and his accomplices three days later.

Igitur post Rodulfi regis abscessum malo Veronenses 68
therefore after of-Rudolf king the-departure evil the-Veronese
accepto consilio vitae insidiari Berengarii moliuntur, quod
taken counsel the-life to-plot-against of-Berengar strive which
Berengarium non latuit. Tam saevi autem auctor
Berengar not escaped-the-notice-of so savage moreover the-author
ac repertor facinoris Flambertus quidam erat, quem sibi,
and inventor of-the-crime Flambert a-certain was whom to-himself
quoniam ex sacrosancto fonte filium eius susceperat,
since from the-sacrosanct font son his he-had-received
compatrem rex effecerat. Pridie vero, quam pateretur,
co-father the-king had-made on-the-day-before but that he-suffered
eundem ad se Flambertum venire praecepit. Cui et
the-same to himself Flambert to-come he-ordered to-whom also
ait:
he-says
'Si mihi tecum hactenus non et multae et iustae causae 69
if to-me with-you hitherto not both many and just causes
amoris essent, quoquo modo, quae de te dicuntur,
of-love were in-any way the-things-which about you are-said
credi possent. Insidiari te vitae meae aiunt; sed non
to-be-believed could to-plot-against you the-life my they-say but not
ego credulus illis. Meminisse autem te volo, quantaecumque
I credulous to-them to-remember moreover you I-wish whatever

tibi accessiones et fortunae et dignitatis fuerint, eas
to-you additions both of-fortune and of-dignity have-been them
te non potuisse nisi meis beneficiis consequi. Unde
you not to-have-been-able except by-my kindnesses to-attain whence
et hoc animo in nos esse debes, ut dignitas mea
also with-this mind toward us to-be you-ought that the-dignity my
in amore atque in fidelitate tua conquiescat. Neque vero
in the-love and in the-fidelity your may-rest nor indeed
cuiquam salutem ac fortunas suas tantae curae fuisse
to-anyone the-safety and fortunes his of-such care to-have-been
umquam puto, quanti mihi fuit honos tuus. In quo
ever I-think of-how-much to-me was the-honor your in which
mea omnia studia, omnem operam, curam, industriam,
my all efforts all work care industry
cogitationem huius civitatis omnem fixi. Unum hoc sic
thought of-this city all I-fixed one this thus
habeto: si a te mihi servatam fidem intellexero, non mihi
hold if by you for-me kept the-faith I-shall-understand not to-me
tam mea salus cara, quam pietas erit in referenda gratia
so my safety dear as gratitude shall-be in returning thanks
iucunda'.
pleasant

70 His expletis aureum non parvi ponderis poculum
these completed a-golden not of-small weight cup
rex ei porrexit atque subiunxit: 'Amoris salutisque
the-king to-him held-out and added of-love and-of-safety
mei causa, quod continetur, bibito, quod continet,
my for-the-sake what is-contained drink what it-contains
habeto'. Vere quippe et absque ambiguitate post potum
keep truly indeed and without ambiguity after the-drink
introivit in illum Sathanas, quemadmodum et de
entered into him Satan as also about

Iuda proditore domini nostri Iesu Christi scriptum
Judas the-betrayer of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ written
est: 'Quia post bucellam tunc introivit in illum
it-is that after the-morsel then entered into him
Sathanas'.
Satan
Beneficii quippe praeteriti et praesentis immemor insomnem 71
of-the-kindness indeed past and present unmindful sleepless
illam regis in necem populos instigando pertulit noctem.
that of-the-king to the-death the-peoples by-stirring-up he-passed night
Rex nocte illa, quemadmodum et solitus erat, iuxta
the-king in-night that as also accustomed he-was beside
ecclesiam non in domo, quae defendi posset, sed
the-church not in a-house which to-be-defended could but
in tuguriolo quodam manebat amoenissimo. Sed et
in a-little-hut a-certain was-staying most-pleasant but also
custodes nocte eadem non posuerat nichil suspicans etiam
guards in-night the-same not he-had-posted nothing suspecting even
mali.
of-evil

Se primum quatiens strepit
itself first shaking clamors
Gallus, cum vigiles facit
the-cock when watchful makes
Mortales, solito sonat
mortals at-the-accustomed-hour sounds
Et pulsata Deo canit
and struck to-God sings
Iam tunc aenea machina
already then the-bronze machine

Invitatque docens bene
and-invites teaching well
Loetheum grave spernere,
Lethean heavy-(sleep) to-spurn
Laudes huic modo reddere,
praises to-him now to-render
Qui vitam tribuit, dedit
who life bestowed gave
Et nobis superam bene
and to-us the-heavenly well
Sanctam quaerere patriam;
holy to-seek fatherland
Hic rex ecclesiam petit
here the-king the-church seeks
Ac laudes Domino canit.
and praises to-the-Lord sings
Flambertus properans volat,
Flambert hastening flies
Quocum multa simul manus,
with-whom a-great together band
Ut regem perhimat bonum.
that the-king he-may-slay good
Rex horum vigil inscius
the-king of-these watchful unaware
Audit dum strepitum, nichil
hears while the-din nothing
Formidans properat citus,
fearing hastens swift
Hoc quid visere sit; videt
this what to-see it-is he-sees
Armatas militum manus.
armed of-soldiers bands

Flambertum vocat eminus.
Flambert he-calls from-afar
'Quid turbae est', ait, 'en bone
what of-a-crowd is-this he-says lo good
Vir? quid nunc populus cupit
man what now the-people desires
Armatas referens manus?'
armed reporting bands
Respondit: 'Vereare nil.
he-answered fear nothing
Te non ut perhimat ruit,
you not that it-may-slay it-rushes
Sed pugnare libens cupit
but to-fight gladly it-desires
Hac cum parte, tuum petit
on-this with side your it-seeks
Mox qui tollere spiritum'.
soon he-who to-take-away the-spirit
Deceptus properat fide
deceived hastens by-faith
Rex hac in medios simul,
the-king this-way into the-midst together
Tum captus male ducitur;
then taken wickedly is-led
A tergo hunc ferit impius
from behind him strikes the-impious-one
Romphaea; cadit heu pius
by-the-sword falls alas the-pious-one
Felicemque suum Deo
and-happy his to-God
Commendat pie spiritum!
commends piously spirit

72 Denique quam innocentem sanguinem fuderint
finally how innocent blood they-shed
quantumque perversi perverse egerint, nobis reticentibus
and-how-much the-perverse perversely acted with-us being-silent
lapis ante cuiusdam ecclesiae ianuam positus,
a-stone before of-a-certain church the-door placed
sanguinem eius transeuntibus cunctis ostendens
blood his to-the-passers-by all showing
insinuat. Nullo quippe delibutus aspersusque liquore
intimates by-no indeed smeared and-sprinkled liquid
discedit.
it-departs

73 Nutrierat sibi rex Berengarius familiariter lauteque
had-brought-up for-himself king Berengar intimately and-lavishly
iuvenem, immo heroem quendam Milo nomine, memoria
a-young-man nay a-hero a-certain Milo by-name of-memory
satis ac laude dignum. Cuius si rex fretus consiliis
quite and of-praise worthy whose if the-king relying on-the-counsels
esset, fortunas sibi omnes non tantum adversari sentiret,
had-been the-fortunes to-himself all not so-much to-be-adverse he-would-feel
nisi quia forte hoc divinae praevidentiae consilium fuit,
except because perhaps this of-divine providence the-counsel was
ut aliter fieri non posset. Is sane nocte eadem, qua
that otherwise to-happen not it-could he indeed in-night the-same in-which
rex deceptus est Berengarius, adhibitis sibi copiis
the-king deceived was Berengar employed for-himself forces
nocturnas ei vigiliarum custodias voluit exhibere. Rex
nocturnal to-him of-the-watches guards wished to-provide the-king
vero promissionibus Flamberti deceptus Milonem se
but by-the-promises of-Flambert deceived Milo himself
non solum custodire non sivit, verum etiam atque etiam
not only to-guard not allowed but again and again

vehementer prohibuit. Milo autem, sicut vir fidelis et
vehemently forbade Milo moreover as a-man faithful and
rectus ac beneficii sibi a rege conlati non immemor,
upright and of-the-kindness to-himself by the-king conferred not unmindful
quem defendere, quia defuit, non potuit, brevi acriter
whom to-defend because he-was-absent not he-could shortly sharply
vindicare curavit. Tertia quippe post regis necem die
to-avenge took-care on-the-third indeed after of-the-king the-murder day
Flambertum sibique tam in nefario scelere coniventes
Flambert and-to-himself so in the-wicked crime conniving
vi captos suspendio vitam finire praecepit. Fuerunt
by-force taken by-hanging life to-end he-ordered there-were
sane in hoc viro nonnullae perfectaeque virtutes, quae
indeed in this man not-a-few and-perfect virtues which
Deo propitio suis in locis, vita comite, silentio non
God favoring their-own in places life accompanying by-silence not
tegentur.
shall-be-covered

BOOK III

I · THE TITLE AND THE BURNING OF PAVIA

Liutprand explains his title: the book is an Antapodosis, a retribution, laying bare the impiety of Berengar, Italy's present tyrant, and Willa, who have wronged him, and repaying those who were kind to him; he began it at Frankfurt and writes it on Paxos. With Berengar dead and Rudolf absent, the Hungarians besiege Pavia and burn it in 924, as a lament in verse tells. The remnant resists, and Liutprand credits the prayers of Saint Syrus, who foretold Pavia's greatness and Aquileia's ruin.

Operis huius titulum, pater sanctissime, satis te mirari non 1
of-work this the-title father most-holy quite you to-wonder-at not
ambigo. Ais forte: Cum virorum illustrium actus exhibeat,
I-doubt you-say perhaps since of-men illustrious the-deeds it-shows
cur Ανταπόδοσης, antapódosis, ei inseritur titulus? Ad quod
why Antapodosis antapodosis to-it is-put-on as-title to which
respondeo: Intentio huius operis ad hoc respicit, ut Berengarii
I-answer the-intention of-this work to this looks that of-Berengar
huius, qui nunc in Italia non regnat sed tyranízat, atque
this who now in Italy not reigns but tyrannizes and
uxoris eius Willae, quae ob inmensitatem tyrannidis secunda
of-wife his Willa who for the-immensity of-tyranny a-second
Iezabel et ob rapinarum insacietatem Lámia proprio apellatur
Jezebel and for of-plunders the-insatiability Lamia by-her-own is-called
vocabulo, actus designet, ostendat et clamitet. Tanta
name the-deeds it-may-designate may-show and may-cry-aloud so-many
enim mendatiorum iacula, tanta rapinarum dispendia, tanta
for of-lies darts so-many of-plunders losses so-many
impietatis molimina in me et domum meam, cognationem et
of-impiety efforts against me and house my kindred and
familiam, gratis exercuere, quanta nec lingua proferre nec
household for-nothing they-exercised as-many-as neither the-tongue to-utter nor

calamus praevalet scribere. Sit igitur eis praesens pagina
the-pen is-strong-enough to-write let-be therefore for-them the-present page
antapódosis, hoc est retributio, dum pro calamitatibus meis
an-antapodosis that is a-retribution while for calamities my
τὴν ἀσεβεῖαν, asevían, id est inpietatem eorum, praesentibus
the impiety impiety that is the-impiety their to-present
futurisque mortalibus denudavero. Nec minus etiam sanctissimis
and-to-future mortals I-shall-lay-bare no less also for-most-holy
et fortunatis viris pro collatis in me beneficiis antapódosis
and fortunate men for conferred upon me kindnesses an-antapodosis
erit. Ex memoratis sane aut memorandis nullus invenitur aut
it-shall-be from those-mentioned indeed or to-be-mentioned none is-found or
rarus, hoc uno, Berengario scilicet impio, exepto, quorum non
rare this one Berengar namely the-impious excepted whose not
beneficiis genitores aut genitus vehementer gratularemur.
for-the-kindnesses the-parents or the-son vehemently we-would-give-thanks
Denique quod εν τη εχμαλοσία, en ti echmalosia, hoc est in
finally that in the captivity in the captivity that is in
captivitate seu peregrinatione, libellulus hic conscriptus dicatur,
captivity or in-sojourning booklet this written may-be-said
praesens indicat exulatus. Coeptus quippe in Frankenenvurd,
the-present shows exile begun indeed at Frankfurt
qui est XX miliariis locus Magontia distans, in Paxú insula,
which is twenty miles a-place from-Mainz distant on Paxos the-island
nongentis et eo amplius Constantinopólim miliariis
nine-hundred and than-that more to-Constantinople miles
distans, usque hodie exaratur. Sed redeamus ad rem.
distant up-to today it-is-written but let-us-return to the-matter

2 Rege Berengario defuncto atque absente Rodulfo Hungariorum
king Berengar dead and absent Rudolf of-the-Hungarians
rabies Salardo praeduce totam per Italiam dilatatur, adeo
the-fury Salard as-leader over-all through Italy is-spread so-much

ut muros Papiensis civitatis vallo circumdarent ac
that the-walls of-Pavia city with-a-rampart they-surrounded and
defixis per girum tentoriis exeundi aditum civibus
fixed around the-circle tents of-going-out the-access to-the-citizens
prohiberent. Qui cum his viribus non resistere possent,
they-barred who since these forces not to-resist could
peccatis promerentibus, nec munere mulcent.
the-sins deserving-it nor with-a-gift they-soothe

Clarus ab infuso discedens sidere Phoebus 3
bright from the-poured-in departing star Phoebus
Zodiaci primum solito conscendere sidus
of-the-Zodiac first as-wont to-climb the-sign
Incipit et gelidas dissolvere colle pruinas
begins and the-icy to-dissolve on-the-hill frosts
Aeolus atque suos binos bis mittere flatus,
Aeolus and his paired twice to-send blasts
Ungrorum furibunda manus cum gaudet in urbem
of-the-Hungarians the-furious band when rejoices into the-city
Flatibus Aeoliis adiuta infundere flammas.
by-blasts Aeolian aided to-pour flames
Spiritibus validis parvus diffunditur ignis.
by-breaths strong the-small spreads fire
Nec iuvat Hungarios solis hos urere flammis,
nor does-it-please the-Hungarians alone these to-burn with-flames
Undique conveniunt mortemque inferre minantur,
from-all-sides they-come-together and-death to-bring threaten
Confodiunt telis, calidus quos terruit ignis.
they-pierce with-darts the-hot whom terrified fire
Uritur infelix olim formonsa Papia,
burns unhappy once lovely Pavia

Vulcanusque suos attollens flatibus artus
and-Vulcan his raising with-blasts limbs
Ecclesias patriamque simul conscendit in omnem.
the-churches and-the-fatherland together climbs into all
Extinguntur matres, pueri innuptaeque puellae.
are-extinguished mothers boys and-unmarried girls
Sancta catervatim moritur catecumina ples tunc,
the-holy in-throngs dies catechumen people then
Praesul in urbe sua hac moritur sanctusque sacerdos,
the-bishop in city his this dies and-holy priest
Nomine qui proprio bonus est dictusque Iohannes.
by-name who his-own good is and-called John
Quod fuerat longo thecis in tempore clausum,
what had-been long in-chests in time shut-up
En iacet, hoc aliena manus ne tangeret aurum,
lo lies-there this a-stranger's hand lest should-touch gold
Atque per inmensas dissolvitur igne cloacas.
and through immense is-melted by-fire sewers
Uritur infelix olim formonsa Papia!
burns unhappy once lovely Pavia
Cerneret argenti rivos paterasque micantes,
one-might-see of-silver streams and-bowls flashing
Corpora maiorum passim conbusta virorum.
the-bodies of-older here-and-there burned men
Iaspidis hic precium viridis rutilique topazii
of-jasper here the-price green and-of-red topaz
Spernitur et saphyrus carus pulcherque berillus.
is-spurned and sapphire dear and-beautiful beryl
Institor heu faciem nullus tunc flectit ad aurum.
the-peddler alas the-face none then turns to gold
Uritur infelix olim formonsa Papia!
burns unhappy once lovely Pavia

Lucidus inmensas eripit nec fonte carinas
the-bright the-immense snatches-away nor from-its-spring the-ships
Ticinus, sentina simul diffunditur igne.
Ticino with-the-bilge-water together is-spread by-fire
Usta est infelix olim formonsa Papia
burned is unhappy once lovely Pavia

anno dominicae incarnationis DCCCCXXIIII, IIII. Idus
in-the-year of-the-Lord's incarnation 924 the-fourth the-Ides
Mart., indictione XII, sexta feria, hora tertia. Quorum
of-March in-the-indiction twelfth on-the-sixth day at-the-hour third of-whom
memoriam piae recordationis affectu, qui eodem combusti
the-memory of-pious remembrance with-affection who in-the-same burned
sunt, vos et quicumque legeritis faciatis, vehementer exoro.
were you and whoever shall-have-read may-make vehemently I-implore
Verum piissimi omnipotentisque Domini, cui propheta 4
but of-the-most-pious and-almighty Lord to-whom the-prophet
misericordiam et iuditium concinit cuiusque misericordia
mercy and judgment sings and-of-whose mercy
plena est terra, usque ad consummationem gladius non
full is the-earth up to the-consummation the-sword not
desaevit. Nam etsi peccatis promerentibus est exusta,
raged-to-the-end for even-if the-sins deserving-it it-was burned-down
non tamen inimicorum manibus tradita. Impleturque, quod
not yet of-the-enemies into-the-hands handed-over and-is-fulfilled what
rex et propheta cantat: 'Numquid in aeternum proiciet
the-king and prophet sings will in eternity cast-off
Deus? aut non apponet, ut complacicior sit adhuc? Aut
God or not add that more-favorable he-be still or
in finem misericordiam suam abscidet a generatione in
to the-end mercy his shall-be-cut-off from generation to

generationem? Aut obliviscetur misereri Deus? aut continebit
generation or shall-forget to-have-mercy God or shall-hold-back
in ira sua misericordias suas?' Itemque ei alius propheta
in wrath his mercies his and-likewise to-him another prophet
dicit: 'Cum iratus fueris, misericordiae recordaberis'.
says when angry you-shall-have-been of-mercy you-shall-remember
Reliquiae igitur, quae supererant, Hungariis non inviriliter
the-remnants therefore which were-left to-the-Hungarians not unmanfully
resistebant, adeo ut laetabundi canerent cum propheta:
were-resisting so-much that rejoicing they-sang with the-prophet
'Haec est inmutatio dexterae exelsi'.
this is the-change of-the-right-hand of-the-most-high
5 Accessit ad hoc magnumque iuvamen praebuit sanctissimi
there-was-added to this and-great help provided of-the-most-holy
patris nostri doctorisque egregii beati Siri, cuius in
father our and-teacher distinguished blessed Syrus whose in
praefata urbe requiescunt exuviae, intercessio gloriosa. Ac
the-aforesaid city rest the-remains the-intercession glorious and
ne eius vaticinium falleretur, praedicta urbs Papia, ut
lest his prophecy should-be-falsified the-aforesaid city Pavia that
caderet, est inpulsa, verum misericorditer a Domino liberata.
it-should-fall was pushed but mercifully by the-Lord freed
Missus equidem praedicationis gratia a beato Hermagora,
sent indeed of-preaching for-the-sake by blessed Hermagoras
euuangelistae Marci discipulo, Papiam beatissimus pater
of-the-evangelist Mark the-disciple to-Pavia the-most-blessed father
huiusmodi eam propheciae spiritu praesagio honoravit:
in-this-way it of-prophecy by-the-spirit with-a-presage honored
6 'Delectare gaudiis, urbs Papia, quia veniet tibi ab externis
be-delighted with-joys city Pavia because shall-come to-you from outer
montibus exultatio. Non vocaberis minima, sed copiosa
mountains exultation not you-shall-be-called least but plentiful

in finitimis civitatibus'. Et ut hoc eius vaticinium
among neighboring cities and that this his prophecy
firmius crederetur, Aquilegiae non ignotae civitatis casum
more-firmly be-believed of-Aquileia not unknown city the-fall
hac eadem hora sermone huiusmodi nuntiavit: 'Vae tibi,
in-this same hour with-a-word of-this-kind he-announced woe to-you
Aquilegia, quia, cum impiorum incesseris manus,
Aquileia because when of-the-impious you-shall-have-come-into the-hands
destrueris, nec ultra reaedificata consurges'. Quod ita
you-shall-be-destroyed nor further rebuilt shall-you-rise which so
esse completum visibus patens ratio manifestat. Aquilegia
to-be fulfilled to-the-sight lying-open reason makes-manifest Aquileia
namque, praedives atque inmensa olim civitas, ab impiissimo
for very-rich and immense once a-city by most-impious
Hunorum rege Attila capitur ac funditus dissipatur nec
of-the-Huns king Attila is-taken and utterly is-scattered nor
ulterius, ut in praesentiarum cernitur, elevatur; Papia vero, ut
further as in the-present is-seen is-raised Pavia but as
vir sanctissimus dixerat, copiosa et apellatur et cernitur;
the-man most-holy had-said plentiful both is-called and is-seen
non solum quippe praecellit vicinas, sed et longe positas
not only indeed it-excels the-neighboring but also far placed
opibus civitates. Quid alias memorem, cum insignis ipsa
in-wealth cities why otherwise should-I-recall when the-famous itself
totoque orbe notissima Roma huic inferior esset, si
and-in-the-whole world best-known Rome to-this inferior would-be if
preciosa beatissimorum apostolorum corpora non haberet?
the-precious of-the-most-blessed apostles bodies not it-had
Patet igitur, quod hanc intercessio beatissimi patroni
it-is-plain therefore that this-city the-intercession of-the-most-blessed patron
nostri Siri eripuit, qui eam tam veridico ac pretioso praesagio
our Syrus snatched who it so truthful and precious with-a-presage

honoravit. Exusta denique Papia factaque totam per Italiam
honored burned finally Pavia and-made over-all through Italy
non modica praeda, Hungarii ad propria revertuntur.
not small booty the-Hungarians to their-own return

II · ERMENGARD, RUDOLF, AND BURCHARD

Adalbert of Ivrea dies, and his widow Ermengard rules Italy through her lovers. Besieging Pavia, Rudolf slips away to her by boat on her warning, and his army flees. Lambert of Milan invites Hugh of Provence. Rudolf calls Burchard of Swabia, who boasts in German that he will make the Italians ride mares with one spur; Lambert flatters him while gathering men to kill him.

7 Hoc eodem tempore defuncto Adelberto, Eporegiae civitatis
at-this same time dead Adalbert of-Ivrea city
marchione, uxor eius Hermengarda, Adelberti praepotentis
marquis wife his Ermengard of-Adalbert the-very-powerful
Tusciae marchionis et Bertae filia, totius Italiae
of-Tuscany marquis and of-Bertha the-daughter of-all Italy
principatum obtinebat. Causa autem potentiae huius haec erat,
the-principate held the-cause moreover of-power this this was
quoniam, quod dictu etiam foedissimum est, carnale cum
since what to-say even most-foul is carnal with
omnibus, non solum principibus, verum etiam ignobilibus,
all not only princes but also low-born
commercium exercebat.
intercourse she-practiced

8 Per idem tempus rex Rodulfus Burgundia rediens in
through the-same time king Rudolf from-Burgundy returning into
Italiam venit defunctoque Berengario regnum potenter
Italy came and-dead Berengar the-kingdom powerfully

obtinuit. Post aliquot autem dies Italienses omnes coeperunt
held after some moreover days the-Italians all began
inter sese dissidere. Zelo quippe non modico
among themselves to-disagree with-jealousy indeed not moderate
propter Hermengardae pulcritudinem iuxta carnis huius
because-of of-Ermengard beauty according-to of-the-flesh this
putredinem trahebantur, eo quod ea stuprum aliis
rottenness they-were-drawn for-this that she lewdness to-some
praebebat, aliis denegabat. Unde factum est, ut praedives
offered to-others denied whence done it-was that the-very-rich
Mediolanensis archiepiscopus nonnullique alii regis Rodulfi
of-Milan archbishop and-not-a-few others of-king Rudolf
partibus faverent; cum Hermengarda vero tot simul
the-side favored with Ermengard but so-many together
rebelles aderant, quod ipsam etiam regni caput Papiam
rebels were-present that her even of-the-kingdom the-head Pavia
regi non inviriliter prohiberent.
to-the-king not unmanfully they-barred
Factum est autem, ut rex Rodulfus collectis copiis Papiam 9
done it-was moreover that king Rudolf gathered forces to-Pavia
tenderet. Castrametatus vero miliario ab urbe eo in loco,
made-for having-pitched-camp but a-mile from the-city that in place
quo Ticinus simul magnusque ille Padus conveniunt, —
where the-Ticino together and-great that Po meet
in cuius Maro sic laudibus canit:
in whose Maro thus praises sings

'Fluviorum rex Heridanus', itemque:
of-rivers the-king Eridanus and-likewise
'Corniger Hesperidum fluvius regnator aquarum' —
horned of-the-Hesperides river ruler of-waters

Hermengarda, ut non incallida, Rodulfo regi huiusmodi
Ermengard as not uncunning to-Rudolf king of-this-kind
noctu per memorati alveum fluvii mandata transmittit:
by-night through of-the-said the-channel river messages sends-across
10 'Si te perdere vellem, iam longo ex tempore extinctus
if you to-destroy I-wished already long from time dead
esses. Tui quippe omnes te deserere meque ardenter adire,
you-would-be your indeed all you to-desert and-me ardently to-approach
si meum modo adsit velle, contendunt. In his enim es
if my only be-present will strive in these for you-are
locis, in quibus captus vinctusque esses, si eorum iamdudum
places in which taken and-bound you-would-be if their long-since
consiliis paruissem'. Talibus rex legationibus non solum
counsels I-had-obeyed by-such the-king embassies not only
credulus, verum etiam territus nuntiis remissis se acturum,
credulous but also terrified messengers sent-back himself about-to-do
quicquid ea consuleret, remandavit. Nec mora, sequenti
whatever she might-counsel sent-back-word nor delay on-the-following
nocte rex Rodulfus clam custodibus, dimissis omnibus, dimisso
night king Rudolf secretly from-the-guards dismissed all left
tentorio, lecto etiam bene conposito, lintrem ingressus suos
the-tent the-bed even well arranged a-skiff having-entered his-men
deseruit atque ad Hermengardam quantocius properavit.
deserted and to Ermengard as-fast-as-possible hastened
11 Igitur mane facto magno cum silentio regis milites
therefore morning made great with silence of-the-king the-soldiers
tentorium circuibant. Venientibus vero principibus non parva
the-tent were-going-round coming but the-princes not small
inter eos admiratio erat, cur insolito rex hora
among them wonder was why at-an-unaccustomed the-king hour
huiusmodi dormitaret. Cumque strepitu, ut spadones quondam
of-this-kind was-sleeping and-when with-noise as the-eunuchs once

Holofernem, evigilare niterentur, nullum, quemadmodum ipse,
Holofernes to-awaken they-strove none as he
omnino dabat responsum. Introeuntibus autem tentorium
at-all gave answer entering moreover the-tent
nichilque repperientibus raptum hunc alii, interfectum alii
and-nothing finding seized him some killed others
clamitabant. Nemo tamen, quod transfuga fieret, ullo
cried-out no-one yet that a-deserter he-had-become in-any
modo animadvertere poterat. Verum hac dum admiratione
way to-notice could but in-this while wonder
fluctuarent, nuntius venit, qui diceret, Rodulfum regem
they-wavered a-messenger came who should-say Rudolf king
super eos cum adversariis eorum velle irruere. Qui mox
upon them with adversaries their to-wish to-rush who soon
animo consternati tam celeri coeperunt fuga discedere, ut
in-mind dismayed with-so swift began in-flight to-depart that
non hos currere, sed, si videres, diceres transvolare.
not these to-run but if you-saw you-would-say to-fly-across
Cumque Mediolanium, tutum scilicet ad locum, pervenissent, 12
and-when to-Milan safe namely to a-place they-had-come
consensu Lampertus archiepiscopus omnium Hugoni,
by-the-consent Lambert archbishop of-all to-Hugh
potentissimo et sapientissimo Provincialium comiti, mandat,
the-very-powerful and very-wise of-the-Provençals count sends-word
ut in Italiam veniat regnumque Rodulfo auferat sibique
that into Italy he-come and-the-kingdom from-Rudolf take-away and-for-himself
potenter obtineat. Erat enim longo ex tempore multis
powerfully hold he-was for long from time by-many
argumentis et ipse periclitans, si forte regnum posset
arguments and he-himself trying if perhaps the-kingdom he-could
obtinere Italicum. Hic enim et Berengarii iam nominati
to-obtain Italian this-one for both of-Berengar already named

regis tempore cum multis in Italiam venerat; sed quia
king in-the-time with many into Italy had-come but because
regnandi tempus ei nondum advenerat, a Berengario
of-reigning the-time to-him not-yet had-arrived by Berengar
territus est atque fugatus.
frightened was and put-to-flight
13 Rodulfus denique cum infidelitate suorum praenominatos
Rudolf finally since by-the-disloyalty of-his-men the-aforenamed
adversarios superare non posset, in Burgundiam profectus
adversaries to-overcome not he-could to Burgundy having-set-out
Bruchardo Suevorum duci, cuius sibi filiam coniugio
to-Burchard of-the-Swabians duke whose to-himself daughter in-marriage
copularat, denuntiat, ut sui in auxilium veniat. Qui collectis
he-had-joined sends-word that of-him to help he-come who gathered
copiis cum Rodulfo confestim in Italiam est profectus. Cumque
forces with Rudolf at-once into Italy has set-out and-when
Eporegiam pervenissent, Rodulfum Bruchardus ita convenit:
to-Ivrea they-had-come Rudolf Burchard thus addressed
14 'Ipse ego ut legationis obtentu Mediolanium proficiscar, non
myself I that of-an-embassy under-pretext to-Milan I-set-out not
absurdum videtur. Hac enim occasione urbem explorare atque
absurd it-seems by-this for occasion the-city to-explore and
eorum potero cognoscere voluntatem'. Profectus denique cum
their I-shall-be-able to-know will having-set-out finally when
iam Mediolanium pervenisset, priusquam urbem ingrederetur,
already to-Milan he-had-come before the-city he-entered
ad beati ac preciosi martyris Laurentii ecclesiam orationis
to of-the-blessed and precious martyr Laurence the-church of-prayer
gratia declinavit; sed, ut aiunt, non tantum peticionis causa,
for-the-sake he-turned-aside but as they-say not so-much of-petition for-the-sake
quantum alterius rei gratia. Dicunt enim, quia prope civitatem
as of-another thing for-the-sake they-say for that near the-city

est ecclesia miro atque precioso opere fabricata, eum ibidem
is a-church with-wondrous and costly work built him there
munitionem constituere velle, qua non solum Mediolanenses,
a-fortification to-establish to-wish by-which not only the-Milanese
sed et plures Italiae principes cohercere decrevisset. Inde vero
but also many of-Italy princes to-coerce he-had-decided thence but
exiens, cum iuxta murum civitatis equitaret, lingua propria, hoc
going-out when along the-wall of-the-city he-rode in-tongue his-own that
est Teutonica, suos ita convenit: 'Si Italienses omnes uno uti
is German his-men thus addressed if the-Italians all one to-use
tantummodo calcare informesque non fecero caballicare
only spur and-shapeless not I-shall-have-made to-ride
equas, non sum Bruchardus; fortitudinem siquidem muri
mares not I-am Burchard the-strength indeed of-the-wall
huius seu altitudinem, qua se muniri confidunt,
this or the-height by-which themselves to-be-fortified they-trust
nichili pendo; iactu quippe lanceae meae adversarios de
at-nothing I-reckon with-a-cast indeed of-lance my the-adversaries from
muro mortuos praecipitabo'. Haec autem eo dicebat,
the-wall dead I-shall-hurl these moreover for-this he-was-saying
quoniam neminem adversariorum suae ibi linguae gnarum esse
since no-one of-the-adversaries his there of-tongue knowing to-be
putabat. Verum suo omine non bono quidam istic aderat,
he-thought but by-his omen not good a-certain-man there was-present
quamquam pannosus despectus, eius tamen loquelae scius, qui
although ragged despised of-his yet speech knowing who
horum omnium Lamperto archipraesuli celer factus est nuntius.
of-these all-things to-Lambert archbishop swift made was messenger
Qui ut erat ingenio callens, Bruchardum non despexit, sed
who as he-was in-wit shrewd Burchard not despised but
malo animo eum suscipiens mirabiliter honoravit; sed et inter
with-evil intent him receiving wondrously honored but also among

cetera hoc quasi ei privilegio amoris concessit, cervum
other-things this as-if to-him as-a-privilege of-love granted a-stag
quatinus suo in brolio venaretur, quod nulli umquam
that his-own in park he-should-hunt which to-none ever
nisi karissimis magnisque cessit amicis. Lampertus interea
except to-dearest and-great he-yielded friends Lambert meanwhile
Papienses omnes nonnullosque Italiae principes ad Bruchardi
the-Pavians all and-not-a-few of-Italy princes to of-Burchard
necem invitat eumque tamdiu retinuit, donec omnes, qui
the-murder invites and-him so-long kept until all who
occidere illum deberent, congregatos esse posse speraret.
to-kill him were-to gathered to-be to-be-able he-hoped

III · HUGH BECOMES KING AND THE RISE OF ROMANUS

Burchard is killed at Novara and Rudolf leaves Italy. Hugh lands at Pisa, takes the crown at Pavia, and treats with Pope John. Liutprand describes Hugh, learned and bold but given to women. Hugh sends Liutprand's father to Romanus at Constantinople with two dogs that nearly maul the emperor. Romanus had risen from a poor sailor to command of the fleet after killing a lion in a reed bed.

15 Factum est igitur, ut Bruchardo Mediolanio discedente
done it-was therefore that Burchard from-Milan departing
Novariam die perveniret eadem. Cumque isthic nocte transacta
to-Novara on-day should-arrive the-same and-when there the-night passed
diluculo surgeret Eporegiam tendens, Italicae super eum
at-dawn he-rose to-Ivrea making-for Italian upon him
irruentes subito apparuere phalanges. Quas contra non ut vir
rushing suddenly appeared the-battalions which against not as a-man
bellicosus properat, verum mox fugam inceptat. Et quoniam
warlike he-hastens but at-once flight he-begins and since

secundum beati Iob sententiam terminus eius constitutus
according-to of-blessed Job the-sentence the-term his appointed
praeteriri non poterat, et quia fallax equus ad salutem,
to-be-passed not could and because deceitful a-horse-(is) for safety
in fossam, quae muros circuit civitatis, equus decidens eum
into the-ditch which the-walls surrounds of-the-city the-horse falling him
proiecit. Quo et ab irruentibus Ausoniis lanceis confossus vitam
threw where also by the-rushing-in Ausonians with-lances pierced life
morte commutavit. Sui denique hoc videntes, quoniam aliô
for-death exchanged his-men finally this seeing since elsewhere
non poterant, intra ecclesiam sanctissimi confessoris Christi
not they-could within the-church of-the-most-holy confessor of-Christ
Gaudentii fugiunt. Ausonii itaque, ut ex Bruchardi minis non
Gaudentius flee the-Ausonians and-so as by of-Burchard threats not
mediocriter inflammati atque indignati ecclesiae fores frangunt
moderately inflamed and indignant of-the-church the-doors break
omnesque in ea repertos sub ipso etiam altari confodiunt.
and-all in it found under the-very even altar pierce
Quod Rodulfus ut audivit, Italiam dereliquit et Burgundiam 16
which Rudolf when he-heard Italy abandoned and Burgundy
percitus petiit. Haec itaque dum aguntur, Hugo,
hurriedly sought these-things and-so while are-done Hugh
Arelatensium seu Provincialium comes, navim conscenderat et
of-the-Arlesians or of-the-Provençals count a-ship had-boarded and
per Tyrenum mare in Italiam festinabat. Deus itaque, qui
through the-Tyrrhenian sea into Italy was-hastening God and-so who
hunc in Italia regnare cupiebat, prosperis eum flatibus brevi
this-one in Italy to-reign desired with-favorable him winds shortly
Alpheam, hoc est Pisam, quae est Tusciae provinciae caput,
to-Alphea that is Pisa which is of-Tuscany province the-head
duxerat, de qua sic Maro: ‘Alpheae ab origine Pisae’.
had-brought about which thus Maro Alphean from origin of-Pisa

17 Cumque eodem pervenisset, adfuit Romani papae, Iohannis
and-when thither he-had-come was-present of-the-Roman pope John
scilicet Ravennatis, nuntius. Adfuerunt etiam poene omnium
namely of-Ravenna a-messenger were-present also almost of-all
Italiensium nuntii, qui hunc, ut super ipsos regnaret,
of-the-Italians messengers who him that over them he-should-reign
modis omnibus invitabant. Is autem, ut erat longo hoc
in-ways all were-inviting he moreover as he-was long this
ex tempore cupiens, Papiam percitus venit cunctisque
from time desiring to-Pavia hurriedly came and-all
coniventibus regnum suscepit. Post paululum Mantuam abiit,
conniving the-kingdom received after a-little to-Mantua he-went
ubi et Iohannes papa ei occurrens foedus cum eo percussit.
where also John pope him meeting a-treaty with him struck
18 Quo tempore Berta matre regis ipsius Hugonis mortua
at-which time Bertha the-mother of-king himself Hugh dead
Wido filius eius, quem ex Adelberto genuerat, sicut
Guy son her whom from Adalbert she-had-borne as
praediximus, Tusciae marcam tenebat, qui Maroziam scortum
we-said-before of-Tuscany the-march held who Marozia the-whore
Romanam sibi uxorem acceperat.
Roman for-himself as-wife had-taken
19 Fuit autem rex Hugo non minoris scientiae quam audatiae
was moreover king Hugh not of-less knowledge than boldness
nec infirmioris fortitudinis quam calliditatis, Dei etiam
nor of-weaker strength than cunning of-God also
cultor sanctaeque religionis amatorum amator, in pauperum
a-worshiper and-of-holy religion of-the-lovers a-lover in of-the-poor
necessitatibus curiosus, erga ecclesias valde sollicitus;
the-needs careful toward the-churches very solicitous
religiosos phylosophosque viros non solum amabat, verum
religious and-philosophical men not only loved but

etiam fortiter honorabat. Qui etsi tot virtutibus
also strongly honored who although with-so-many virtues
clarebat, mulierum tamen illecebris eas fedabat.
he-shone of-women yet by-the-allurements them defiled
Hic ex Francorum genere Teutonicorum uxorem acceperat 20
this-one from of-the-Franks the-race German a-wife had-taken
nomine Aldam, quae filium ei genuerat nomine Lotharium.
by-name Alda who a-son to-him had-borne by-name Lothar
Habuerat sane tunc temporis ex quadam muliere nobilissima
he-had indeed at-that of-time from a-certain woman most-noble
vocabulo Wandelmoda filium nomine Hubertum, qui nunc
by-name Wandelmoda a-son by-name Hubert who now
usque superest et Tusciae provintiae princeps potens habetur.
still survives and of-Tuscany province prince powerful is-held
Cuius acta, Deo propitio, suis in locis exponentur.
whose deeds God favoring their-own in places shall-be-set-forth
Hugone igitur rege constituto, sicut vir prudentissimus, 21
Hugh therefore king established as a-man most-prudent
ubiubi terrarum coepit nuntios suos dirigere multorumque
wherever in-the-world began messengers his to-direct and-of-many
regum seu principum amicitiam quaerere, Heinrici praesertim
of-kings or princes the-friendship to-seek of-Henry especially
famosissimi regis, qui, ut supra memoravimus, Bagoariis, Suevis,
the-most-famous king who as above we-mentioned the-Bavarians Swabians
Lotharingiis, Francis atque Saxonibus imperabat. Hic etiam
Lotharingians Franks and Saxons ruled this-one also
Sclavorum gentem innumeram subiugavit sibique tributariam
of-the-Slavs the-people countless subjugated and-to-himself tributary
fecit; primus etiam hic Danos subiugavit sibique servire
made the-first also this-one the-Danes subjugated and-to-himself to-serve
coegit; ac per hoc nomen suum multis nationibus celebre fecit.
compelled and through this name his to-many nations famous made

22 Rex igitur Hugo cum reges sibimet ac principes amicos
king therefore Hugh when kings to-himself and princes as-friends
circumcirca adquireret, studuit et Achivis nomen suum
round-about he-acquired was-eager also to-the-Achaeans name his
longe a nobis positis notum facere. Imperabat vero his
far from us placed known to-make was-ruling but these
tunc temporis memoria satis et laude dignus Romanós
at-that of-time of-memory quite and of-praise worthy Romanus
imperator, liberalis, humanus, prudens ac pius, cui cum
emperor generous humane prudent and pious to-whom as-well
propter morum probitatem, tum propter linguae urbanitatem
because-of of-manners the-probity as because-of of-tongue the-urbanity
genitorem meum dirigit nuntium.
father my he-directs as-messenger

23 Qui cum eodem pervenisset, inter cetera, quae imperatori
who when thither he-had-come among other-things which to-the-emperor
Romanô rex Hugo munera miserat, huiusmodi duos canes
Romanus king Hugh as-gifts had-sent of-this-kind two dogs
adduxit, quales in eadem non sunt aliquando patria visi.
he-brought such-as in the-same not are ever country seen
Qui dum ante imperatorem adducti fuissent, nisi multorum
which when before the-emperor brought they-had-been unless of-many
brachiis tenerentur, eum protinus morsibus laniarent. Puto
by-the-arms they-had-been-held him at-once with-bites would-have-torn I-think
enim, quia, dum hunc Grecorum more teristro opertum
for that when him of-the-Greeks in-the-manner with-a-veil covered
habituque insolito viderunt indutum, non hominem sed
and-in-garb unaccustomed they-saw dressed not a-man but
monstrum aliquod putaverunt.
a-monster some they-thought

Denique magno cum honore ab eodem susceptus est 24
finally great with honor by the-same received he-was
imperatore. Nec tam pro rei novitate aut munerum
emperor nor so-much for of-the-thing the-novelty or of-the-gifts
magnitudine, quantum quoniam, dum praefatus genitor
the-greatness as because when the-aforesaid father
Tessalonicam venisset, Sclavorum quidam, qui rebelles Romanô
to-Thessalonica had-come of-the-Slavs certain who rebels to-Romanus
imperatori extiterant terramque eius depopulabant, super
emperor had-stood-forth and-the-land his were-ravaging upon
eum irruerunt. Verum Dei actum est pietate, ut duo
him rushed but of-God done it-was by-the-mercy that two
eorum principes vivi, nonnullis mortuis, caperentur. Quos
their princes alive some dead were-taken whom
dum praesentaret imperatori, inmensa est affectus laeticia,
when he-presented to-the-emperor immense was affected with-joy
magnoque ab eo genitor munere datus ad Hugonem regem,
and-with-great by him father with-a-gift presented to Hugh king
qui se istuc transmiserat, rediit laetus. Post reditum vero
who him thither had-sent returned glad after the-return but
eius paucis interpositis solibus langore correptus monasterium
his a-few intervening suns by-sickness seized a-monastery
petiit sanctaeque conversationis habitum sumpsit, in quo
sought and-of-holy conversion the-habit took in which
post dies XV mortuus me parvulo derelicto migravit ad
after days fifteen dead me a-little-one left-behind he-passed to
Dominum. Nunc autem quoniam imperatoris Ρωμανοῦ, id est
the-Lord now moreover since of-the-emperor Romanus that is
Romani, mentio facta est, quis fuerit qualiterve ad imperii
of-Romanus mention made has-been who he-was or-how to of-empire
culmen pervenerit, hic non absurdum mihi videtur inserere.
the-summit he-came here not absurd to-me it-seems to-insert

25 Imperante Leone, Constantini huius genitore, Ρομανος
ruling Leo of-Constantine this the-father Romanus
imperator iste, quamquam πτοχός, ptochos, id est pauper, ab
emperor this although poor poor that is poor by
omnibus tamen χρήσιμος, chrísimos, id est utilis, habebatur.
all yet useful useful that is useful was-held
Erat autem ex mediocribus ipsis, qui navali pugna stipendia
he-was moreover from the-middling-sort those who in-naval battle pay
ab imperatore acceperant. Qui cum saepius et iterum
from the-emperor had-received who when more-often and again
εις την μαχην, is tin machin, id est in pugna, nonnulla
in the battle in the battle that is in battle some
χρησιμότατα, chrisimotata, id est utilia, faceret, a sibi
most-useful-things most-useful-things that is useful-things he-did by his-own
praeposito adeo ετιμηθη, ὁπως προτοκαραβος, etimithi
commander so-much he-was-honored that first-of-the-ships he-was-honored
opos protocaravos, id est honoratus est, ut primus navium
that first-of-the-ships that is honored he-was that first of-the-ships
fieri mereretur. Quadam autem nocte dum exploratum
to-be-made he-deserved one moreover night while to-reconnoiter
Saracenos abiret, essetque eodem in loco palus atque
the-Saracens he-went-off and-there-was the-same in place a-marsh and
arundinetum non modicum, contigit leonem ferocissimum ex
a-reed-bed not small it-happened a-lion most-fierce from
arundineto prosilire cervorumque multitudinem in paludem
the-reed-bed to-leap-out and-of-stags a-multitude into the-marsh
dimergere unumque eorum capere sicque ventris rabiem
to-plunge and-one of-them to-catch and-thus of-the-belly the-rage
mitigare. Ρομανος δὲ τὸν αὐτῶν ψόφον ακουων εδειλιασεν
to-assuage Romanus but the their sound hearing feared
σφόδρα, Romanos de ton auton psofon acuon ediliasen sfodra,
greatly Romanus but the of-them sound hearing feared greatly

Romanos autem eorum sonitum audiens timuit valde. Putavit
Romanus moreover their sound hearing feared greatly he-thought
enim Saracenorum multitudinem esse, qui se conspectum
for of-the-Saracens a-multitude to-be who him spied
fraude aliqua vellent perhimere. Ορθρου δὲ βαθεως, orthru
by-trickery some might-wish to-destroy at-dawn but deep at-dawn
de vatheos, id est mane autem primo exurgens, cum
but deep that is in-the-morning moreover first rising when
diligentissime cuncta consideraret, conspectis vestigiis εὐθέως,
most-carefully all-things he-examined seen the-tracks immediately
euthéos, id est statim, quid hoc esset, agnovit. Leone itaque
immediately that is at-once what this was he-recognized the-lion and-so
in arundineto commorante Ρομανος, Romanus, Grecum ignem,
in the-reed-bed lingering Romanus Romanus Greek fire
qui nullo praeter aceti liquore extinguitur, undique per
which by-no except of-vinegar liquid is-extinguished on-all-sides through
arundinetum iactare praecepit. Erat autem in arundineto
the-reed-bed to-throw ordered there-was moreover in the-reed-bed
acervus arundinibus plenus, in quem leo confugiens illo
a-heap with-reeds full into which the-lion fleeing that
est ab igne salvatus; ventus quippe contraria ex parte flans
was from fire saved the-wind indeed opposite from side blowing
ignem, ne ad acervum usque perveniret, amovit. Romanós
the-fire lest to the-heap all-the-way it-should-reach removed Romanus
praeterea post ignis extinctionem uno tantum cum assecula,
moreover after of-the-fire the-extinguishing one only with attendant
ensem solum dextra, sinistra autem pallium gestans, locum
a-sword only in-the-right in-the-left moreover a-cloak carrying the-place
omnem peragrans lustrat, si forte os ex eo vel signum
all traversing surveys if perhaps a-bone of it or a-sign
aliquod repperiret. Iam vero cum in eo esset, ut nichil
some he-might-find already but when at this-point he-was that nothing

inveniens repedaret, quid hoc monstri esset, quod acervus ille
finding he-should-go-back what this of-a-marvel was that heap that
sit ab igne salvatus, studuit visere. Cumque duo propter
should-be from fire saved he-was-eager to-see and-when the-two near
assisterent secumque rebus ex nonnullis confabularent,
were-standing and-with-each-other things about some were-chatting
leo eos tantum audivit, quoniam quidem ob caligantes
the-lion them only heard since indeed because-of darkened
oculos παρα τῶ καπνω, pára to capnô, quod est ob
eyes because-of the smoke because-of the smoke which is because-of
fumum, videre non potuit. Volens igitur leo animi sui
smoke to-see not he-could wishing therefore the-lion of-mind his
furorem, quem ab igne conceperat, in hos evomere, saltu
the-fury which from the-fire he-had-conceived on these to-vomit-forth with-a-leap
rapidissimo, qua illorum voces audierat, eos inter prosiliit.
most-rapid where their voices he-had-heard them among leaped
Romanós vero, non ut suus assecula pavitans, sed ea potius
Romanus but not as his attendant trembling but in-that rather
mente consistens, ut, etsi fractus caderet orbis, inpavidum
mind standing-firm that even-if broken should-fall the-world unafraid-him
ruinae ferirent, pallium, quod manu gestabat, leonis inter
the-ruins would-strike the-cloak which in-hand he-was-carrying of-the-lion between
brachia misit. Quod dum pro homine leo discerperet,
the-paws threw which while for the-man the-lion was-tearing
Romanós totis hunc a tergo viribus inter clunium
Romanus with-all him from behind strength between of-the-haunches
iuncturas ense percussit. Qui dissotiatis divisisque
the-joints with-the-sword struck who disjoined and-severed
cruribus quia stare non potuit, poenitus cecidit. Leone igitur
legs because to-stand not he-could wholly fell the-lion therefore
interfecto Romanos seminecem asseculam suum solo
slain Romanus half-dead attendant his on-the-ground

stratum eminus vidit, quem et vocare voce praecipua coepit.
stretched from-afar saw whom also to-call with-voice loud he-began
Sed cum nullum daret omnino responsum, isdem Romanos
but when none he-gave at-all answer the-same Romanus
propter eum adstitit pedeque pulsans: ‘ἐγειρε, ειπεν, ἀθλιε
beside him stood and-with-his-foot nudging rise he-said wretch
καὶ ταλεπορε, μη φοβοῦ, égire ípen áthlie ke talepore mi
and miserable-one not be-afraid rise he-said wretch and miserable-one not
fobu’, id est ‘Surge’, dixit ‘miser et miser, noli timere’!
be-afraid that is rise he-said wretch and wretch do-not fear
Qui consurgens prae admiratione, dum leonis immanitatem
who rising-up for wonder when of-the-lion the-hugeness
conspiceret, non habuit ultra spiritum. Εξεπλισσοντο δὲ πάντες
he-saw not had further breath were-astounded but all
πέρι τοῦ Ρομανοῦ τάυτα ακουσαντες, exeplissonto de pantes
about the Romanus these-things hearing were-astounded but all
peri tu Romanu tauta acusantes, id est stupebant autem
about the Romanus these-things hearing that is were-astounded moreover
omnes de Romano haec audientes. Unde factum est, ut
all about Romanus these-things hearing whence done it-was that
tam pro ceteris quamque pro praeclaro praesenti hoc facinore
as-much for the-rest as for splendid present this deed
non multo post a Leone imperatore tanto donaretur honore,
not long after by Leo emperor with-such he-was-presented honor
οπως παντα τα πλοια, opos panta plia, id est ut omnes
that all the ships that all ships that is that all
naves suis essent in manibus eiusque iussionibus oboedirent.
the-ships his should-be in hands and-his commands should-obey

Leo dies, leaving Alexander and the boy Constantine. When Alexander dies, Romanus lures the princes to his ship, binds them, takes the palace, marries his daughter Helena to Constantine, and is proclaimed the emperor's father. Phocas abandons a victory over Symeon, who routs the Greeks, and is blinded when he tries to force the palace. Liutprand notes Symeon's Greek learning.

26 Leo denique, Grecorum piissimus imperator, cuius supra
Leo finally of-the-Greeks the-most-pious emperor of-whom above
fecimus mentionem, corporis humani debitum solvens viamque
we-made mention of-the-body human the-debt paying and-the-way
carnis universae ingrediens regni sui heredem Alexandrum,
of-flesh all entering of-kingdom his as-heir Alexander
fratrem germanum, unicumque suum Constantinum, qui
brother full and-only his Constantine who
nunc superest et feliciter regnat, parvulum et, ut Greci
now survives and happily reigns a-little-one and as the-Greeks
aiunt, alalon, id est non loquentem, αλαλον dereliquit.
say alalos that is not speaking speechless left
Quibus ad tuendum palatium tutandamque rem privatam,
to-whom for guarding the-palace and-for-protecting the-affairs private
ut istic moris est, eunuchum officio parakinumenon dedit,
as there of-custom is a-eunuch by-office parakoimomenos he-gave
Focán vero δομεστικον μεγαν, domesticum maiorem, hoc
Phocas but domestic great domestic greater that
est terrestris ducem exercitus, fecit. Romanón autem non
is of-the-land leader of-the-army he-made Romanus moreover not
claro natalium hortu, sed cordis magnanimitate delongárin
by-illustrious of-birth origin but of-heart by-greatness-of-spirit drungarius
tis ploôs, δελονγαρην της πλοῶς, hoc est navalis exercitus
of-the fleet drungarius of-the fleet that is of-the-naval army

principem, ordinavit. Alexander post modicum defunctus soli
prince he-appointed Alexander after a-little dead to-alone
Constantino parvulo imperium dereliquit. Denique tempore,
Constantine little the-empire left finally at-the-time
quo magnus imperator Leo migravit ad Christum, praefatus
in-which great emperor Leo passed to Christ the-aforesaid
Focás domesticus, terrestris dux exercitus, contra Simeonem
Phocas domestic of-the-land leader of-the-army against Symeon
Bulgariorum regem copias duxerat eique Constantinopolim
of-the-Bulgarians king forces had-led and-to-him to-Constantinople
venire cupienti non inviriliter repugnarat. Romanos vero, ut non
to-come desiring not unmanfully had-resisted Romanus but as not
incallidus, audito imperatorum, Leonis scilicet atque Alexandri,
uncunning heard of-the-emperors of-Leo namely and of-Alexander
interitu, haud longe ab urbe collecto classium exercitu
the-death not far from the-city gathered of-fleets the-force
fugit atque in insulam parvam iuxta Constantinopolim, ita
fled and to an-island small near Constantinople so
ut e palatio videri poene posset, ratibus collectis advenit.
that from the-palace to-be-seen almost it-could with-ships gathered arrived
Ad palatium autem minime transfretavit, laudes iuxta
to the-palace moreover by-no-means crossed praises according-to
consuetudinem Porphyrogenito minime decantavit. Quae
the-custom to-the-Porphyrogenitus by-no-means he-sang which
res eunucho parakinúmeno cunctisque Constantinupoleos
thing to-the-eunuch parakoimomenos and-to-all of-Constantinople
principibus stuporem timoremve parvum non adtulit.
princes amazement or-fear small not brought
Internuntiis itaque, quid hoc monstri sit, quod regem
by-intermediaries and-so what this of-a-monstrosity might-be that the-king
non adierit laudesque debitas non persolverit, sciscitatur.
not he-has-approached and-the-praises due not has-paid-in-full he-inquires

Hisque a Romano respondetur, quod propriae vitae timens
and-to-these by Romanus it-is-answered that for-his-own life fearing
palatium declinarit; et adiecit, quia, si parakinúmenos ceteris
the-palace he-had-avoided and he-added that if the-parakoimomenos the-other
cum principibus se non adiret vitamque illi et
with princes him not should-approach and-life to-him and
honorem iureiurando promitteret, mox se ad Cretensium
honor by-oath should-promise soon himself to of-the-Cretan
Saracenorum regem conferret regnumque Argivorum sui
Saracens the-king he-would-betake and-the-kingdom of-the-Argives of-his
auxilii fortitudine debellaret. Quod quam callide dixerit,
help by-the-strength would-subdue which how cunningly he-said
exitus declarabit. Igitur quod praefati sumus, principes terrore
the-outcome shall-declare therefore as said-before we-have the-princes by-terror
compulsi ignorantesque, quod lateret anguis in herba, omnes
compelled and-not-knowing that lay-hidden a-snake in the-grass all
hunc fiducialiter adeunt, quod mandaverat gratanter cupientes
him trustingly approach what he-had-ordered gladly desiring
implere. Quos omnes non malo consilio accepto proiectos in
to-fulfill whom all not by-bad counsel taken thrown into
sentinam ligat; sicque securus ad urbem magno cum comitatu
the-bilge he-binds and-thus secure to the-city great with retinue
festinat, iis, quos suspectos habuerat, palatium purgat, suae
hastens of-those whom suspected he-had-held the-palace he-purges to-his
parti parentes ibi collocat: rectorem, magistros, patricios,
party the-obedient there he-places rector magistri patricians
logothétin, éparchon, kitonítas, cubiculários, protospathários,
logothete eparch chamberlains chamber-servants protospatharii
spathários, spatharocandidátos, parathalassítin suos facit;
spatharii spatharocandidati parathalassites his he-makes
ceteros, ut diximus, abdicat. Qui etiam ut coeptum opus
the-others as we-said he-dismisses who also that the-begun work

firmius patraret, cum Porphýrogeniti matre Zoη, Zoi,
more-firmly he-might-accomplish with of-the-Porphyrogenitus the-mother Zoe Zoe
nomine Veneria est dulcedine iunctus. Tota mox civitas
by-name by-Venus's is sweetness joined the-whole soon city
coronatur, et Romanós pater vasilleos ab omnibus apellatur.
is-crowned and Romanus father of-the-emperor by all is-called
Pugnanti praeterea cum Bulgariis Foca domestico, qui 27
fighting moreover with the-Bulgarians to-Phocas domestic who
et ipse pater vasilleos ardenter fieri cupiebat, ipso
also himself father of-the-emperor ardently to-become desired the-very
in bello de hostibus iam triumphum tenenti, quid a
in war over the-enemies already a-triumph holding what by
Romano actum sit, nuntiatur. Qui mox animo consternatus
Romanus done has-been is-reported who soon in-mind dismayed
nimioque dolore compulsus victoriae signum, quo hostes
and-by-excessive grief driven of-victory the-standard with-which the-enemy
insequebatur, proiecit, terga vertit, fugam suos inire fecit.
he-was-pursuing threw-down his-back turned flight his-men to-enter made
Reparant itaque Bulgarii Simeonis hortatu animos, et
restore and-so the-Bulgarians of-Symeon at-the-urging their-spirits and
quos prius adverso Marte fugerant, prospero postmodum
whom before with-adverse Mars they-had-fled with-prosperous afterward
insecuntur, tantaque tunc Achivorum strages efficitur, ut
they-pursue and-such then of-the-Achaeans a-slaughter is-made that
longo post tempore campus plenus ossibus videretur.
long after time the-plain full of-bones was-seen
Omni denique cum festinatione iam nominatus Focás 28
with-all finally with haste the-already named Phocas
domesticus Constantinopolim redit, palatium ingredi cupit,
domestic to-Constantinople returns the-palace to-enter desires
vi et non arte pater vasilleos fieri satagit. Sed
by-force and not by-art father of-the-emperor to-become he-strives but

quia ‘vis consilii expers mole ruit sua’, et, ut Flaccus
because force of-counsel devoid by-the-mass falls its-own and as Flaccus
dicit, ‘Dii temperatam provehunt in maius’, a Romano
says the-gods the-tempered advance into greater by Romanus
domesticus iste capitur atque utroque lumine privatur.
domestic this is-taken and of-both eyes is-deprived
Bulgariis non minima vis augetur hisque Grecos
to-the-Bulgarians not least strength is-increased and-to-these the-Greeks
depopulandi vicissitudo dupla rependitur.
of-plundering the-turn double is-repaid
29 Hunc etenim Simeonem emiargon, id est semigrecum,
this for Symeon a-half-Greek that is half-Greek
esse aiebant, eo quod a puericia Bizantii Demostenis
to-be they-said for-this that from boyhood at-Byzantium of-Demosthenes
rhetoricam Aristotelisque sillogismos didicerit. Post haec
the-rhetoric and-of-Aristotle the-syllogisms he-had-learned after these-things
autem relictis artium studiis, ut aiunt, conversationis sanctae
moreover abandoned of-the-arts the-studies as they-say of-conversion holy
habitum sumpsit. Verum paulo post regnandi cupiditate
the-habit he-took but a-little after of-reigning by-desire
deceptus ex placida monasterii quiete in seculi procellam
deceived from the-placid of-the-monastery quiet into of-the-world the-storm
transivit elegitque potius apostatam Iulianum, quam beatissimum
he-passed and-chose rather the-apostate Julian than the-most-blessed
Petrum caelestis regni sequi clavigerum. Qui duos filios
Peter of-the-heavenly kingdom to-follow the-key-bearer who two sons
habuit, unum nomine Baianum, alterum, qui nunc usque
had one by-name Baian the-other who now still
superest potenterque Bulgariis principatur, nomine Petrum.
survives and-powerfully over-the-Bulgarians rules by-name Peter

Baianum autem adeo ferunt magicam didicisse, ut ex
Baian moreover so-much they-report magic to-have-learned that from
homine subito fieri lupum quamvecumque cerneres feram.
a-man suddenly to-become a-wolf or-whatever you-might-see beast
Romanos praeterea eodem, quo pater vasilleos constitutus 30
Romanus moreover in-the-same in-which father of-the-emperor established
est, anno filiam suam Helenam imperatori parvulo, domino suo,
he-was year daughter his Helena to-the-emperor little lord his
Constantino Porphyrogenito coniugem dedit. Porphyrogenitum
Constantine Porphyrogenitus as-wife gave Porphyrogenitus
autem non in purpura, sed in domo, quae Porphyra, ut
moreover not in purple but in the-house which Porphyra as
superius scripsimus, natum apello. Et quoniam res processit
above we-wrote born I-call and since the-matter has-come
in medium, quid de huius Porphyrogeniti genesi audivimus,
into the-midst what about of-this Porphyrogenitus the-birth we-heard
proferre iterum non pigeat, quemadmodum et in priori libro
to-set-forth again not let-it-irk as also in the-earlier book
eisdem verbis titulo VI. VII. VIII. VIIII. X. scriptum repperies.
in-the-same words in-title six seven eight nine ten written you-shall-find
Constantinus imperator augustus, ex cuius nomine 31
Constantine emperor august from whose name
Constantinopolis est sortita vocabulum civitas, τὸν οικον τουτον,
Constantinople has obtained its-name the-city the house this
ton icon tuton, domum istam, aedificare iussit, cui Porphýra
the house this house this to-build ordered to-which Porphyra
nomen imposuit; voluitque successuram nobilitatis suae subolem
a-name he-gave and-wished the-succeeding of-nobility his offspring
isthic in lucem prodire, quatinus, qui suo ex stemate
there into the-light to-come-forth so-that those-who his from stock
nascerentur, luculenta hac apellatione Porphyrogeniti dicerentur.
were-born by-splendid this name Porphyrogeniti should-be-called

Unde et hunc Constantinum, Leonis imperatoris filium, ex
whence also this Constantine of-Leo emperor the-son from
eius sanguine nonnulli dicunt originem ducere. Της γενεσεως
his blood some say the-origin to-draw of-the birth
δὲ αυτοῦ η αληθεῖα αυτὴ εστην, tis geneseos de autu alitia
but his the truth this is of-the birth but his truth
auti estin, id est generationis autem huius veritas haec est.
this is that is of-the-generation moreover of-this the-truth this is

V · BASIL REPEATED AND ROMANUS' CROWN

Liutprand tells again how Basil killed the emperor Michael, was rebuked by Christ in a vision, and atoned with alms and the New Church of the archangel Michael. In his second year Romanus has the nobles grant him the red boots of an emperor, then a year later tells them that boots without a crown make him look like a mime, and is crowned. Liutprand praises God, who raises the poor from the dust, since Romanus was of humble Armenian stock.

32 Basilius imperator augustus, avus huius, Macedonia
Basil emperor august the-grandfather of-this-one from-Macedonia
humili fuerat prosapia oriundus, descenditque Constantinopolim
of-humble had-been stock sprung and-came-down to-Constantinople
paupertatis iugo, ut cuidam serviret igúmeno, id est
of-poverty by-the-yoke that a-certain he-might-serve hegumen that is
abbati. Igitur imperator, qui tunc temporis erat, Michahel
abbot therefore the-emperor who at-that of-time was Michael
nomine, cum orationis gratia ad monasterium illud, in
by-name when of-prayer for-the-sake to monastery that in
quo hic ministrabat, descenderet, vidit hunc forma praeter
which this-one was-serving came-down saw him in-form beyond
ceteros egregia, accitumque ton igumenon rogavit, ut se
the-rest outstanding and-summoned the hegumen asked that himself

donaret hoc puero; quem suscipiens in palatio cubicularii
he-should-present with-this boy whom receiving in the-palace of-chamberlain
donavit offitio. Tantae denique post paululum potestatis
presented with-the-office of-such finally after a-little power
est factus, ut alter ab omnibus imperator sit apellatus.
was made that a-second by all emperor he-was called
Verum quia omnipotens Deus servos suos iusta visitat
but because almighty God servants his with-just visits
vult quacumque censura, hunc imperatorem sanae mentis
he-wishes whatever censure this emperor of-sound mind
ad tempus non esse permiserat, ut, quo hunc gravius
for a-time not to-be had-permitted that by-as-much him more-heavily
premeret in infimis, eo misericordius remuneraret in
he-pressed in the-lowest by-so-much more-mercifully he-might-reward in
summis. Nam, ut fertur, huius tempore passionis familiares
the-highest for as is-reported of-this in-the-time of-affliction his-intimates
etiam capitis iusserat subire sententiam. Quos tamen
even of-the-head he-had-ordered to-undergo the-sentence whom yet
ad sese rediens hoc pacto requirebat, ut, nisi quos
to himself returning on-this condition he-would-ask-for that unless those-whom
iugulare iusserat redderentur, pari ipsi qui hoc
to-cut-the-throats-of he-had-ordered were-returned by-equal they-themselves who this
effecerant sententia damnarentur. Hoc igitur terrore quos
had-done sentence should-be-condemned by-this therefore terror those-whom
damnare iusserat, servabantur. Sed cum hoc saepius et
to-condemn he-had-ordered were-preserved but when this more-often and
iterum Basilio faceret, huiusmodi a sibi obsequentibus,
again to-Basil he-did of-this-kind from to-himself the-obedient
pro nefas, accepit consilium: ‘Ne forte insana regis
for shame he-received counsel lest perhaps the-insane of-the-king
iussio aliquando ex industria a te non diligentibus, immo
command sometime by design by you not loving nay

hodio habentibus, impleatur, eum tu potius occidito atque
in-hatred holding be-fulfilled him you rather kill and
imperialia sceptra suscipito'. Quod sine dilatione, cum terrore
the-imperial scepters take-up which without delay as-well by-terror
compulsus, tum regnandi cupiditate deceptus complevit. Hoc
compelled as of-reigning by-desire deceived he-fulfilled this-one
itaque interfecto factus est imperator Basilius.
and-so slain made was emperor Basil

33 Denique parvo transacto tempore huic dominus noster Iesus
finally a-small passed time to-this-one the-Lord our Jesus
Christus per visionem apparuit, domini huius imperatoris
Christ through a-vision appeared of-lord this emperor
dexteram, cuius hic necis auctor extiterat, tenens
the-right-hand of-whose this-one of-the-murder the-author had-stood-forth holding
eumque ita conveniens: 'Basili, ut quid interfecisti dominum
and-him thus addressing Basil to what did-you-kill lord
tuum hunc Michahelem imperatorem?' Expergefactus itaque
your this Michael emperor awakened and-so
tanti se reum novit esse reatus; moxque ad sese
of-so-great himself guilty he-knew to-be guilt and-soon to himself
rediens, quid super hoc faceret, cogitabat.
returning what about this he-should-do was-pondering

34 Confortatus itaque hac Domini per prophetam salubri
strengthened and-so by-this of-the-Lord through the-prophet wholesome
et vere acceptabili promissione, quoniam, in quacumque die
and truly acceptable promise that in whatever day
peccator ingemuerit, salvus erit, cum lacrimis et gemitibus
the-sinner shall-have-groaned saved he-shall-be with tears and groans
se peccatorem, se sanguinis innocentis effusorem esse
himself a-sinner himself of-blood innocent the-shedder to-be
confitebatur. Bono autem consilio accepto amicos sibi de
was-confessing good moreover counsel taken friends to-himself of

mammona iniquitatis effecerat, ut, quos hic temporalibus
the-mammon of-iniquity he-had-made that those-whom here with-temporal
subsidiis consolaretur, eorum precibus ab aeterno gehennae
aids he-might-console their by-prayers from the-eternal of-Gehenna
incendio liberaretur. Fabricavit autem precioso et mirabili
fire he-might-be-freed he-built moreover with-costly and wondrous
opere iuxta palatium orientem versus ecclesiam in honore
work beside the-palace the-east toward a-church in honor
summi et caelestis militiae principis, archangeli Michahelis,
of-the-highest and heavenly of-the-army of-the-prince archangel Michael
qui Grece archistrátigos, hoc est miliciae princeps, apellatur.
who in-Greek archistrategos that is of-the-army prince is-called
Ecclesiam autem ipsam Nean, hoc est novam, alii vocant,
the-church moreover itself Nea that is the-New some call
alii vero Ennean, quod nostra lingua novennalem sonat,
others but Ennea which in-our tongue the-ninefold sounds
apellant, eo quod ibidem ecclesiasticarum horarum machina
call for-this that there of-the-ecclesiastical hours the-machine
novem pulsata ictibus sonet.
nine struck with-blows sounds
Secundo itaque, quo Romanos pater vasilleos constitutus 35
in-the-second and-so in-which Romanus father of-the-emperor established
est, anno convocatos ad sese principes ita convenit: ‘Romanae
was year summoned to himself the-princes thus he-addressed of-the-Roman
dignitatis árchontes, id est principes, quoniam vobis consultis
dignity archons that is princes since you consulted
non solum, inquam, pater vasilleos sum constitutus, verum
not only I-say father of-the-emperor I-am established but
etiam sanctissimi imperatoris fidelitati glaucópis Helenae, id
also of-the-most-holy emperor to-the-fidelity of-gray-eyed Helena that
est virides oculos habentis, coniunctione sotiatus, hoc aliquo
is green eyes having by-the-union allied this by-some

imperialis ornatus inditio monstrari dignum reor in corpore,
imperial adornment by-a-mark to-be-shown worthy I-deem in the-body
quod celebratur a populis ex dignitatis nomine'. Iudicatum
which is-celebrated by the-peoples from of-the-dignity the-name it-was-judged
denique a populo communique decretum est consilio, ut,
finally by the-people and-by-common decreed it-was counsel that
quia tantae dignitatis erat et leucolenon, id est alba
because of-such dignity he-was and white-armed that is white
brachia, Helenan filiam suam imperiali dignitate copularat,
arms Helena daughter his to-imperial dignity had-joined
rubricatarum pellium caligis, ut isthic imperatorum moris est,
of-reddened skins boots as there of-the-emperors of-custom is
uteretur. Sed nec hoc quidem satis ei visum fuit. Equidem
he-should-use but not this even enough to-him seemed was indeed
post unius anni sinaxín, cum amplioris iam potentiae esset,
after of-one year the-assembly when of-ampler already power he-was
talibus adgreditur eosdem sermonibus principes: 'Quoniam
with-such he-approaches the-same with-words princes since
communi vestro iuditio est definitum, imperialibus me uti
by-common your judgment it-is defined imperial me to-use
caligis, περιφανέστατοι ηρωαις, perifanestati, id est nobilissimi,
boots most-illustrious heroes most-illustrious that is most-noble
heroes, vestrae auctoritatis benivolentia quae contulistis,
heroes of-your authority by-the-benevolence the-things-which you-conferred
videntur mihimet αγλαα απινα, aglaa apina, id est preciosa
seem to-myself splendid gifts splendid gifts that is precious
dona, diligentius vero consideranti visum est mihi histrionum
gifts more-carefully but to-me-considering seemed it-was to-me of-actors
mimorumve more incedere, qui, ut ad risum facile turbas
or-of-mimes in-the-manner to-walk who that to laughter easily the-crowds
illiciant, variis sese depingunt coloribus. Risum denique
they-may-entice with-various themselves paint colors laughter finally

aliis non solum, sed mihi etiam ipsi moveo, dum pedibus
for-others not only but for-me also myself I-stir while in-the-feet
imperatorem, capite communem imitari videar plebem. Nam
an-emperor in-the-head the-common to-imitate I-seem people for
quae comoedia, mimus quis melior? Igitur aut coronam
what comedy mime what better therefore either a-crown
praebete aut caligas imperiales, quis ridiculus populo videor,
provide or the-boots imperial by-which ridiculous to-the-people I-seem
auferte'. Hoc plane dicto, magis autem qua cunctis praeerat
take-away this plainly said more moreover by-which over-all he-was-set
potestatis auctoritate, omnium iudicio coronam recepit
of-power by-the-authority of-all by-the-judgment the-crown he-received
et caligarum decorem minime perdidit. Huius miretur
and of-the-boots the-ornament by-no-means lost of-this-man let-wonder-at
prudentiam nemo, sed laudes referat Deo cordis ex
the-prudence no-one but praises let-him-render to-God of-heart from
intimo, qui erigit elisos, solvit compeditos, cuius in manu
the-inmost who raises the-crushed frees the-fettered whose in hand
calix vini meri plenus mixto inclinans ex hoc in hoc.
a-cup of-wine unmixed full of-mixture inclining from this into this
Is autem humili fuerat prosapia, ex Armenorum scilicet 36
he moreover of-humble had-been stock from of-the-Armenians namely
gente, oriundus neque solum mente conceperat futurum,
the-people sprung nor even in-mind had-conceived about-to-be
se regis in aula esse, nedum imperialia sceptra tenere.
himself of-the-king in the-hall to-be let-alone imperial scepters to-hold
Sed quid prophetes Anna dicit? 'Dominus pauperem facit et
but what the-prophetess Anna says the-Lord poor makes and
ditat, humiliat et sublimat, suscitans a terra inopem et
enriches humbles and exalts raising from the-earth the-needy and
de stercore erigens pauperem, ut sedeat cum principibus
from the-dung lifting the-poor that he-may-sit with princes

et solium gloriae teneat. Domini enim sunt cardines terrae'.
and the-throne of-glory may-hold of-the-Lord for are the-hinges of-the-earth
Ei itaque immortali, invisibili, soli Deo honor et gloria
to-him and-so immortal invisible only God honor and glory
per cuncta seculorum secula, amen.
through all of-ages ages amen

VI · ROMANUS' SONS AND THE FALL OF GEZO

Romanus makes his sons emperors and sets himself and Christopher before Constantine Porphyrogenitus, and marries Christopher's daughter to Symeon's son Peter. At Pavia the judges Walpert and Gezo grow powerful, and Gezo plots against Hugh; Hugh calms a riot with honeyed words, then has the gates locked while the citizens meet him outside. Gezo is blinded and his tongue cut out, and Walpert is beheaded.

37 Denique Romanô imperatore constituto Christofóron, quem
finally Romanus emperor established Christopher whom
ante imperii dignitatem habuerat, imperatorem constituit; post
before of-empire the-dignity he-had-had emperor he-established after
imperii vero sui ordinationem uxor eius ei filium peperit
of-empire but his the-ordination wife his to-him a-son bore
nomine Stefanum. Rursum concepto foetu alium ei peperit
by-name Stephen again conceived offspring another to-him she-bore
vocabulo Constantinum. Quos omnes imperatores constituens
by-name Constantine whom all emperors establishing
contra ius fasque se et Christophoron primogenitum
against right and-divine-law himself and Christopher the-first-born
domino suo imperatori Constantino Porphyrogenito praeposuit;
to-lord his emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus he-set-before
adeo plane, ut procedentes is tin proeleusin, hoc est
so-much plainly that proceeding into the procession that is

ad publicum processum, ad Sanctam Sophyam scilicet
to the-public procession to Saint Sophia namely
vel ad Vlachernas seu ad Sanctos Apostolos, Romanos
or to the-Blachernae or to the-Holy Apostles Romanus
cum Christophoro primogenito praecederent, Constantinus
with Christopher the-first-born went-before Constantine
Porphyrogenitus et duo ceteri sequerentur. Quod quam
Porphyrogenitus and the-two others followed which how
indigne iustus iudex pertulerit, ultio subsequens
unworthily the-just judge bore the-vengeance following
declaravit. Nam post modicum Christophoros defunctus
declared for after a-little Christopher dead
est. Constantinus itaque Porphyrogenitus cum oracioni tum
is Constantine and-so Porphyrogenitus as-well to-prayer as
lectionibus vacans totum se Domino commendabat,
to-readings giving-himself wholly himself to-the-Lord commended
opere manuum victum quaeritans. Sane τὴν ζογραφίαν,
by-the-work of-hands a-living seeking indeed the painting
zografian, id est picturam, perpulchre exercebat.
painting that is painting most-beautifully he-practiced
Eodem tempore Simeon Bulgarius Argos coepit vehementer 38
at-the-same time Symeon the-Bulgarian the-Argives began vehemently
afligere. Quem Romanos, filii sui Christofori filia filio
to-afflict whom Romanus of-son his Christopher the-daughter to-the-son
illius Petro, qui nunc superest, uxore data, ab incepto furore
of-that-one Peter who now survives as-wife given from the-begun fury
conpescuit sibique foedere placito sociavit. Unde et puella
checked and-to-himself by-a-treaty agreed allied whence also the-girl
mutato nomine est Iríni, id est pax, vocata, eo quod per
changed her-name is Irene that is peace called for-this that through
eam inter Bulgarios et Grecos pax sit firmissima constituta.
her between the-Bulgarians and the-Greeks peace may-be most-firmly established

39 His temporibus Walpertus et Gezo praenomine Heverardus
in-these times Walpert and Gezo by-forename Everard
Papiae praepotentes iudices erant. Causa autem potentiae
at-Pavia very-powerful judges were the-cause moreover of-the-power
Walperti haec erat, quoniam Cumis, ditissimo in loco, filium
of-Walpert this was since at-Como a-very-rich in place son
suum Petrum episcopum fecerat, Rozam vero, gnatam
his Peter bishop he-had-made Roza but daughter
suam, Gilleberto comiti palatii coniugio sotiaverat. Ea
his to-Gislebert count of-the-palace in-marriage he-had-allied in-that
tamen tempestate uterque defunctus erat. Ticinensis itaque,
yet season each dead was the-Ticinese and-so
quod est Papiensis, populus omnis ad hunc convenerat
which is the-Pavian people all to him had-come
causasque omnes et controversias ante eum deliberabat.
and-the-cases all and disputes before him was-deliberating
Participatione denique potentiae huius memoratus Gezo
by-sharing finally of-power this the-mentioned Gezo
praenomine Heverardus, quoniam quadam affinitate ei
by-forename Everard since by-a-certain kinship to-him
iungebatur, praepotens habebatur. Qui nobilitatem suam
he-was-joined very-powerful was-held who nobility his
pravis moribus deturpabat. Fuit enim ambitiosus nimis,
with-depraved manners defiled he-was for ambitious exceedingly
cupidus, invidus, seditiosus, iuris corruptor, praeceptorum
greedy envious seditious of-right a-corrupter of-the-commands
Dei immemor, quod Deus non passus est abire inultum;
of-God unmindful which God not suffered has to-go-away unavenged
et ne diutius protraham sermonem, Catilinae omnino similis,
and lest longer I-draw-out the-discourse to-Catiline wholly like
qui sicut consulem et rei publicae defensorem Marcum
who as the-consul and of-the-affairs public the-defender Marcus

Tullium Ciceronem conabatur occidere, ita et hic regem
Tullius Cicero tried to-kill so also this-one king
Hugonem morti molitus est tradere. Quadam enim die, dum
Hugh to-death striven has to-hand-over one for day while
nichil mali suspicans rex Hugo Papiae cum paucis degeret,
nothing of-evil suspecting the-king Hugh at-Pavia with a-few was-staying
hic seditione facta voluit super eum irruere; sed Walperto,
this-one a-sedition made wished upon him to-rush but Walpert
qui non tam ferocis animi erat, remorante tardatus est.
who not so of-fierce mind was delaying held-back is
Nec minus etiam eos rex Hugo suis rhetoricis et melle 40
nor less also them king Hugh with-his rhetorical and than-honey
dulcioribus elogiis ab incepto furore conpescuit. Dum enim
sweeter speeches from the-begun fury checked when for
seditionem super se exhortam atque in domo Walperti
the-sedition against himself stirred-up and in the-house of-Walpert
congregatam esse cognosceret, huiusmodi omnes per
gathered to-be he-learned of-this-kind all through
internuntios sermone convenit: 'Quid est, quod tantopere,
intermediaries with-discourse he-addressed what is-it that so-greatly
viri fortes, tamque insperate contra dominum, immo regem
men brave and-so unexpectedly against lord nay king
vestrum commoti estis? Si quippiam quod displiceat actum
your stirred you-are if anything which may-displease done
est, consolidetur. Neque enim sera emendatio reprehendi
has-been let-it-be-made-firm nor for late amendment to-be-blamed
solet, praesertim si nulla neglegentia praetermissa est'. His
is-wont especially if no negligence passed-over has-been these
auditis furorem cuncti animi mitigarunt. Solus Gezo in qua
heard the-fury all of-mind assuaged alone Gezo in which
prius fuerat protervia manens operam dabat, quo omnes
before he-had-been insolence remaining effort was-giving that all

super regem irruerent eumque morte turpissima cruciarent.
upon the-king should-rush and-him by-death most-foul should-torture
Verum disponente Deo affectus eius pravus effectum habere
but disposing God desire his depraved effect to-have
non potuit. Reversi igitur ad regem nuntii, prout viderant
not could returned therefore to the-king the-messengers as they-had-seen
et audierant, enarrarunt.
and heard related

41 Igitur rex Hugo haec omnia quasi pro nichilo mente subdola
therefore king Hugh these all as-if for nothing in-mind crafty
ducens, Papia egressus, longe alió properare festinat
reckoning from-Pavia having-gone-out far elsewhere to-hasten hurries
missisque circumcirca nuntiis et libris milites suos ad
and-sent round-about messengers and letters soldiers his to
se venire praecepit. Quos inter Samsón praepotens comes
himself to-come ordered whom among Samson a-very-powerful count
advenerat, qui iam dicto Gezoni inimicissimus erat. Is
had-come who to-the-already named Gezo most-hostile was he
denique regem ut vidit, eum ita convenit: 'Sollicitum te
finally the-king when he-saw him thus addressed anxious you
equidem de urbanis rebus contra te tumultuose et moleste
indeed about of-the-city affairs against you tumultuously and vexatiously
his diebus actis intueor; verum si me audis mihique
in-these days done I-see but if me you-hear and-me
obtemperas, suis ipsi laqueis capientur. Alter enim,
obey by-their-own they-themselves snares shall-be-caught another for
qui melius consilium dare possit quam ego, non facile
who better counsel to-give could than I not easily
inveniri potest; tibi vero ipsi certe nemo melius dabit.
to-be-found can to-you but yourself surely no-one better shall-give
Unum tamen peto, ut, dum capti mea opera fuerint,
one-thing yet I-ask that when taken by-my effort they-shall-have-been

Gezo cum omni sua ypostasi meis tradatur in manibus'.
Gezo with all his substance my be-handed-over into hands
Quem dum dari sibi a rege audivit, adiecit: 'Leo
whom when to-be-given to-himself by the-king he-heard he-added Leo
Ticinensis episcopus civitatis Walperto et Gezoni non
of-Ticinum bishop of-the-city to-Walpert and to-Gezo not
habetur amicus; ii sane quocumque possunt ei omnimodis
is-held a-friend they indeed in-whatever-way they-can him in-every-way
adversantur. Scitis denique moris esse, regi ab aliis
oppose you-know finally of-custom to-be for-the-king from other
locis Papiam tendenti cives fortiores extra urbem occurrere.
places to-Pavia making-for the-citizens stronger outside the-city to-meet
Mandate itaque clam episcopo, ut, dum tempore statuto
send-word and-so secretly to-the-bishop that when at-the-time appointed
Papiam veneritis et ipsi vobis extra urbem obviam
to-Pavia you-shall-have-come and they to-you outside the-city to-meet
venerint, portas civitatis omnes serare faciat clavesque
shall-have-come the-gates of-the-city all to-lock he-should-have and-the-keys
ipse retineat, quo, dum capere eos coeperimus, nec in
himself keep so-that when to-seize them we-shall-have-begun neither into
urbem confugere nec ab urbe possint auxilium expectare'.
the-city to-flee nor from the-city may-they-be-able help to-expect
Quod et factum est. Nam dum statuto tempore rex
which also done was for when at-the-appointed time the-king
Papiam tenderet et memorati obviam ei exirent, episcopus
to-Pavia was-making-for and the-mentioned to-meet him went-out the-bishop
libenter, ut ei imperatum fuerat, fecit. Rex itaque omnes
gladly as to-him commanded it-had-been did the-king and-so all
capere, ut Samsón consilium dederat, iussit. Confestim igitur
to-seize as Samson counsel had-given ordered at-once therefore
Gezo Samsón traditus utroque lumine privatur et lingua,
Gezo to-Samson handed-over of-both eyes is-deprived and the-tongue

quae in regem blasphemiam dixerat, ei absciditur.
which against the-king blasphemy had-spoken from-him is-cut-off
O factum bene, si sicut caecus, ita et mutus cunctis
O done well if as blind so also mute for-all
extitisset temporibus! Sed ó scelus, quoniam lingua
he-had-stood-forth times but O crime since with-the-tongue
abscisa loquelam non perdidit, secundum Grecorum fabulas,
cut-off speech not he-lost according-to of-the-Greeks the-fables
oculorum privatione vitam sibi protelavit, quae multis
of-eyes by-the-loss life for-himself he-prolonged which for-many
ad perniciem usque in praesentem diem esse non desiit.
to ruin all-the-way into the-present day to-be not has-ceased
Fabulae vero ludum, cur caeci plurimum vivant, secundum
of-the-fable but the-play why the-blind longest live according-to
Grecorum ineptiam hic inseramus, quae talis est: Ζευς καὶ
of-the-Greeks the-silliness here let-us-insert which such is Zeus and
Ηρα ηρισαν περι αφροδισιῶν, της πλειονα ἐχει ηδομας εν
Hera quarreled about love's-pleasures which more has pleasures in
τη συννουσῖα· και τότε Τιρεσίαν Εβρου υιον εζήτησαν. Οὗτος
the intercourse and then Tiresias of-Everes the-son they-sought this-one
γὰρ εν ταις αμφοτέραις φύσεσοι μεταμορφώθη, επιδι δράκοντα
for in the both natures was-transformed since a-serpent
επατησεν. Οὗτος θῦν κατα της Ηρας απεφκυνατο, καὶ
he-trod-on this-one therefore against the Hera declared and
Ηρα οργισθεῖσα ἐπήρωσεν ἀυτὸν, Ζευς δὲ εχαρίσατο ἀυτῶ
Hera angered blinded him Zeus but granted to-him
πολοῖς ζησαι ετεσι, και ὅσα ελεγεν μαντικα λεγειν, Zeus
many to-live years and whatever he-said prophetically to-speak Zeus
ke Ira írisan peri afrodision, tis pliona echi idomas en
and Hera quarreled about love's-pleasures which more has pleasures in
ti synnusía; ke tóte Tiresían Evru yon ezitisan, utos
the intercourse and then Tiresias of-Everes the-son they-sought this-one

gar en tes amfoteres fysesi methamorfothi epidi draconta
for in the both natures was-transformed since a-serpent
epatisen; utos un cata tis Iras apefkýnato, ke Ira
he-trod-on this-one therefore against the Hera declared and Hera
orgisthísa epírosen auton, Zeus de echarisato auto polis zise
angered blinded him Zeus but granted to-him many to-live
etesi, ke osa elegen mantica legin. Haec est interpretatio:
years and whatever he-said prophetically to-speak this is the-interpretation
'Iuppiter et Iuno contenderunt de amoribus, quis plures
Jupiter and Juno contended about loves which more
haberet libidines in coitu. Et tunc Tiresiam Evri filium
should-have desires in coition and then Tiresias of-Everes the-son
quaesiverunt. Iste enim in utrisque naturis transmutatus
they-sought he for in both natures transformed
est, quia draconem calcavit. Hic ergo contra Iunonem
was because a-serpent he-trod-on he therefore against Juno
pronuntiavit, et Iuno irata excaecavit eum. Iuppiter autem
declared and Juno angered blinded him Jupiter moreover
donavit ei multis vivere annis et, quanta diceret, divinando
granted to-him many to-live years and whatever he-said by-divining
dicere'. Sed redeamus ad rem. Gezo, ut praediximus,
to-speak but let-us-return to the-matter Gezo as we-said-before
membris defoedato, substantia illius diripitur. Ceteri complures
in-limbs disfigured the-substance his is-plundered the-others very-many
custodiae mancipantur. Walpertus in crastinum capite
to-custody are-consigned Walpert on the-morrow in-the-head
truncatur, thesaurus eius infinitus diripitur; Cristina uxor
is-cut-off treasure his boundless is-plundered Christina wife
illius capitur, et ut thesauros occultos tradat, diversis
his is-taken and that the-treasures hidden she-hand-over with-various
crucibus laniatur. Crevit extunc non solum Papiae, sed et
tortures is-torn grew from-then not only at-Pavia but also

in omnes Italiae fines regis timor; neque hunc ut
into all of-Italy the-borders of-the-king the-fear nor him as
reges ceteros floccipendere, verum modis omnibus honorare.
kings the-other to-value-at-a-straw but in-ways all to-honor

VII · MAROZIA, AND ALBERIC TAKES ROME

Hilduin of Liège becomes archbishop of Milan, and the monk Rather bishop of Verona. Guy of Tuscany and Marozia kill Pope John's brother Peter, imprison the pope and smother him, and make Marozia's son John pope. After Guy's death Marozia offers Hugh Rome if he will marry her, though she was his brother's widow, and a poem rebukes them. Hugh, received in the fortress at the Tiber bridge, strikes his stepson Alberic for pouring water clumsily, and Alberic rouses the Romans against the Burgundians.

42 Eodem tempore Ildoinus, Laudociensis ecclesiae episcopus,
at-the-same time Hilduin of-Liège of-the-church bishop
propria sede expulsus ad Hugonem regem, cui affinitatis
from-his-own see expelled to Hugh king to-whom of-kinship
linea iungebatur, in Italiam venit. Qui honorifice ab
by-the-line he-was-joined into Italy came who honorably by
eo susceptus, Veronensem ei episcopatum ad stipendii
him received of-Verona to-him the-bishopric for of-stipend
concessit usum. Factum est autem, ut post paulum
he-granted the-use done it-was moreover that after a-little
Lampertus archiepiscopus moreretur et hic loco eius
Lambert archbishop died and this-one in-place his
Mediolanii episcopus ordinaretur. Venerat autem cum praefato
at-Milan bishop was-ordained had-come moreover with the-aforesaid
Ilduino monachus quidam Raterius nomine, qui ob religionem
Hilduin a-monk a-certain Rather by-name who for his-religion

septemque liberalium artium peritiam Veronae episcopus
and-of-the-seven liberal arts the-skill of-Verona bishop
constituitur, ubi et Milo, quem supra memoravimus, comes
is-established where also Milo whom above we-mentioned count
habebatur.
was-held
Wido interea, Tusciae provinciae marchio, cum Marocia 43
Guy meanwhile of-Tuscany province marquis with Marozia
uxore sua de Iohannis papae deiectione coepit vehementer
wife his about of-John pope the-overthrow began vehemently
tractare, atque hoc propter invidiam, quam Petro fratri
to-treat and this because-of the-envy which toward-Peter the-brother
papae habebant, quoniam quidem illum papa sicut
of-the-pope they-had since indeed him the-pope as
fratrem proprium honorabat. Contigit itaque Petro Romae
brother his-own honored it-happened and-so Peter at-Rome
degente Widonem multos habuisse clam milites congregatos.
staying Guy many to-have-had secretly soldiers gathered
Cumque die quadam papa cum fratre paucisque aliis
and-when on-day a-certain the-pope with his-brother and-a-few others
in Lateranensi palatio esset, Widonis et Marociae super
in the-Lateran palace was of-Guy and of-Marozia upon
eos milites irruentes Petrum fratris ipsius ante oculos
them the-soldiers rushing Peter of-the-brother his before the-eyes
interfecerunt, eundem vero papam comprehendentes custodiae
killed the-same but pope seizing to-custody
manciparunt, in qua non multo post est defunctus. Aiunt
consigned in which not long after he-is dead they-say
enim, quod cervical super os eius inponerent sicque eum
for that a-pillow upon the-mouth his they-put and-thus him
pessime suffocarent. Quo mortuo ipsius Marotiae filium
most-wickedly smothered whom dead of-this-very Marozia the-son

Iohannem nomine, quem ex Sergio papa meretrix ipsa
John by-name whom from Sergius pope the-harlot herself
genuerat, papam constituunt. Wido vero non multo post
had-borne pope they-establish Guy but not long after
moritur, fraterque eius Lambertus ipsi vicarius ordinatur.
dies and-brother his Lambert to-him as-successor is-ordained
44 Marozia, scortum impudens satis, nuntios suos post Widonis
Marozia whore shameless quite messengers her after of-Guy
mariti sui mortem Hugoni regi dirigit eumque invitat,
husband her the-death to-Hugh king directs and-him invites
ut se adeat Romamque nobilissimam civitatem sibi
that her he-come-to and-Rome most-noble city for-himself
adsumat. Hoc autem non aliter posse fieri testabatur,
take this moreover not otherwise to-be-able to-be-done she-testified
nisi eam rex Hugo sibi maritam faceret.
unless her king Hugh to-himself wife should-make

Quid Veneris facibus compulsa Marozia saevis?
what of-Venus by-the-torches driven Marozia do-you-rage
Coniugis ecce tui spectas tu suavia fratris,
of-husband lo your you-look-on you the-kisses of-the-brother
Nubere germanis satagens Herodia duobus,
to-marry brothers striving a-Herodias two
Immemor en videris praecepti caeca Iohannis,
unmindful lo you-seem of-the-precept blind of-John
Qui fratri vetuit fratris violare maritam.
who for-a-brother forbade of-the-brother to-violate the-wife
Haec tibi Moseos non praestant carmina vatis,
these-things to-you of-Moses not grant the-songs of-the-prophet
Qui fratri subolem fratris de nomine iussit
who to-the-brother offspring of-the-brother in name ordered

Edere, si primus nequeat sibi gignere natum.
to-raise if the-first be-unable for-himself to-beget a-son
Nostra tuo peperisse viro te secula norunt.
our to-your to-have-borne husband you the-ages know
Respondes, scio, tu: 'Nichil hoc Venus ebria curat'.
you-answer I-know you nothing this Venus drunk cares
Advenit optatus ceu bos tibi ductus ad aram
arrives the-longed-for like an-ox to-you led to the-altar
Rex Hugo, Romanam potius commotus ob urbem.
king Hugh Roman rather moved for the-city
Quid iuvat, o scelerata, virum sic perdere sanctum?
what does-it-help O wicked-woman a-man thus to-ruin holy
Crimine dum tanto satagis regina videri,
by-crime while so-great you-strive queen to-seem
Amittis magnam Domino tu iudice Romam.
you-lose great the-Lord you judge Rome

Quod recte esse actum non solum sensata, verum etiam
which rightly to-have-been done not only the-sensible but also
insensata animadvertunt.
the-senseless perceive
In ingressu Romanae urbis quaedam est miri operis 45
in the-entrance of-the-Roman city a-certain is of-wondrous work
miraeque fortitudinis constituta munitio, ante cuius ianuam
and-of-wondrous strength established fortress before whose door
pons est preciosissimus super Tiberim fabricatus, qui pervius
a-bridge is most-costly over the-Tiber built which passable
ingredientibus Romam atque egredientibus est; nec est alia
for-those-entering Rome and going-out is nor is-there other
nisi per eum transeundi via. Hoc tamen, nisi consensu
except through it of-crossing way this yet except by-the-consent

munitionem custodientium, fieri non potest. Munitio vero
the-fortress of-those-guarding to-be-done not can the-fortress but
ipsa, ut cetera desinam, tantae altitudinis est, ut ecclesia, quae
itself that the-rest I-may-omit of-such height is that the-church which
in eius vertice videtur, in honore summi et caelestis miliciae
on its summit is-seen in honor of-the-highest and heavenly of-the-army
principis archangeli Michahelis fabricata, dicatur 'sancti Angeli
of-the-prince archangel Michael built is-said of-the-holy Angel
ecclesia usque ad caelos'. Rex denique ob munitionis
the-church up to the-heavens the-king finally because-of of-the-fortress
confidentiam relicto longe exercitu cum paucis Romam advenit.
confidence left far-off the-army with a-few to-Rome came
Quo decenter a Romanis susceptus in praedictam munitionem
where fittingly by the-Romans received into the-aforesaid fortress
ad Maroziae meretricis thalamum declinavit. Cuius incesto dum
to of-Marozia the-harlot the-bedchamber he-turned-aside of-whose incestuous when
potitus esset concubitu, Romanos quasi iam securus despicere
possessed-of he-had lying-together the-Romans as-if already secure to-despise
coepit. Habuerat sane Marozia filium nomine Albericum, quem
he-began had-had indeed Marozia a-son by-name Alberic whom
ex Alberico marchione ipsa genuerat. Qui dum matris
from Alberic the-marquis she-herself had-borne who when of-his-mother
hortatu Hugoni regi, vitrico scilicet, aquam funderet, ut
at-the-urging for-Hugh king step-father namely water was-pouring that
manus ablueret, ab eo pro correctione in faciem caesus est,
his-hands he-might-wash by him for correction in the-face struck was
eo quod non moderate et pudenter aquam effunderet. Is
for-this that not moderately and modestly the-water he-poured he
vero, ut inlatam sibi posset ulcisci iniuriam, congregatis
but that the-inflicted on-himself he-might to-avenge the-injury gathered
in unum Romanis huiusmodi eos sermone convenit:
into one the-Romans of-this-kind them with-discourse addressed

‘Romanae urbis dignitas ad tantam est stultitiam ducta,
of-the-Roman city the-dignity to such has-been folly led
ut meretricum etiam imperio pareat. Quid enim fedius
that of-harlots even the-command it-should-obey what for more-foul
quidve turpius, quam ut unius mulieris incestu Romana
or-what more-shameful than that of-one woman by-the-incest the-Roman
civitas pereat, Romanorum aliquando servi, Burgundiones
city should-perish of-the-Romans once the-slaves the-Burgundians
scilicet, Romanis imperent? Si meam, privigni scilicet sui,
namely over-the-Romans should-rule if my of-the-stepson namely his
faciem cecîdit, cum praesertim novus habeatur hospes, quid
the-face he-struck when especially new he-is-held a-guest what
vobis iam inveteratum facere creditis? An Burgundionum
to-you already grown-old to-do do-you-believe or of-the-Burgundians
voracitatem et superbiam ignoratis? Ipsam enim saltem
the-greed and pride are-you-ignorant-of the-very for at-least
nominis etimologiam dispicite. Burgundiones ideo dictos,
of-the-name the-etymology consider the-Burgundians therefore called
quoniam, dum Romani orbe devicto ex gente hac captivos
because when the-Romans the-world conquered from race this captives
ducerent multos, constituerunt eis, ut extra urbem domos
were-leading many they-settled for-them that outside the-city houses
sibi sustollerent, a quibus et paulo post a Romanis
for-themselves they-should-raise by whom also a-little after by the-Romans
ob superbiam sunt expulsi; et quoniam ipsi domorum
because-of pride they-were expelled and since they of-houses
congregationem, quae muro non clauditur, burgum vocant,
a-gathering which by-a-wall not is-enclosed a-burg call
Burgundiones a Romanis, quod est a burgo expulsi, apellati
Burgundians by the-Romans as is from the-burg expelled called
sunt. Ceterum secundum naturale nomen Galli Allóbrogi
they-were moreover according-to the-natural name Gauls Allobroges

nuncupantur. Ego tamen secundum mihi traditam fronesin,
are-named I yet according-to to-me handed-down the-wisdom
id est sapientiam, Burgundiones eos quasi gurguliones
that is the-wisdom Burgundians them as-if gurgulions
apello, vel quod ob superbiam toto gutture loquantur,
call either because for pride with-the-whole gullet they-speak
vel, quod verius est, edacitati, quae per gulam exercetur,
or because truer is to-gluttony which through the-gullet is-practiced
nimis indulgeant'. Nec mora, his auditis Hugonem regem
too-much they-indulge nor delay these heard Hugh king
cuncti deserunt atque eundem Albericum sibi dominum
all desert and the-same Alberic for-themselves as-lord
eligunt et, ne spacium quidem milites introducendi suos rex
choose and lest space even soldiers for-bringing-in his king
Hugo haberet, munitionem confestim obpugnare inceptant.
Hugh should-have the-fortress at-once to-attack they-begin

Hugh escapes down a rope, and Alberic rules Rome with his brother John as pope. Lambert of Tuscany proves his descent from Bertha by a duel; Hugh imprisons him and later blinds him. Hugh buys off Rudolf and wins Henry's friendship. Arnulf of Bavaria comes to Verona at Milo's and Rather's invitation, loses a detachment at Gossolengo and withdraws, and Rather is exiled at Pavia.

Liquet divinae dispensationis hoc consilium esse, ut 46
it-is-clear of-divine dispensation this the-counsel to-be that
quod rex Hugo tam turpiter coeperat scelere, eum
what king Hugh so shamefully had-begun by-crime him
omnimodis optinere non posse. Tanto quippe est
in-every-way to-hold not to-be-able with-such indeed was
terrore coactus, ut per restim se ipsum ea
terror forced that by a-rope him himself on-that
ex parte, qua civitatis muro munitio inhaerebat,
from side where of-the-city to-the-wall the-fortress adhered
deponens eam desereret atque ad suos confugeret.
letting-down it he-deserted and to his-men fled
Expulsus igitur rex Hugo cum praefata Marozia,
expelled therefore king Hugh with the-aforesaid Marozia
Romanae urbis Albericus monarchiam tenuit, fratre suo
of-the-Roman city Alberic the-monarchy held brother his
Iohanne summi atque universalis praesulatus sedi
John of-the-highest and universal episcopate over-the-see
praesidente.
presiding
Aiunt quidam Bertam, Hugonis regis matrem, Adelberto 47
say some Bertha of-Hugh king the-mother to-Adalbert
marchioni viro suo nullum filium peperisse, sed ab
marquis husband her no son to-have-borne but from

aliis mulieribus clam acceptos simulato partu Widonem
other women secretly received with-feigned childbirth Guy
et Lambertum sibi supposuisse, quatinus post mortem
and Lambert for-herself to-have-substituted so-that after the-death
Adelberti Bertae filii non deessent, quorum adiutorio
of-Adalbert to-Bertha sons should-not be-lacking whose by-help
omnem mariti sui potenciam possideret. Hoc autem
all of-husband her the-power she-might-possess this moreover
mendatium mihi ideo videtur esse inventum, quatinus
lie to-me therefore seems to-be invented so-that
incestum suum hac occasione rex Hugo tegeret, infamiae
incest his by-this occasion king Hugh might-cover of-infamy
ὕβριν, id est turpitudinem, evaderet. Ea tamen, quae
the-outrage that is the-shame he-might-escape that yet which
nunc narranda est, cur hoc dictum sit, verisimilior mihi
now to-be-told is why this said was more-probable to-me
videtur assertio. Lambertus, qui post Widonis fratris sui
seems the-assertion Lambert who after of-Guy brother his
mortem Tusciae marcam tenebat, vir erat bellicosus et
the-death of-Tuscany the-march held a-man was warlike and
ad quodlibet facinus audax. Quem ob regnum Italicum
to any-whatever crime bold whom because-of the-kingdom Italian
rex Hugo suspectum nimis habebat. Timebat enim, ne
king Hugh suspected too-much held he-feared for lest
Italienses se desererent et Lambertum regem constituerent.
the-Italians him should-desert and Lambert king should-establish
Boso denique, ex eodem patre regis Hugonis frater,
Boso finally from the-same father of-the-king Hugh brother
insidiarum laqueos huic paraverat, eo quod ipse
of-plots snares for-him had-prepared for-this that he-himself
marchio Tusciae fieri vehementer anhelabat. Consilio
marquis of-Tuscany to-become vehemently panted by-the-counsel

igitur huius rex Hugo Lamberto comminando denuntiat,
therefore of-this-one king Hugh to-Lambert threatening announces
ne se fratrem suum amplius dicere audeat. Is vero,
that-not himself brother his further to-call he-dare he but
ut erat animi ferocis atque indisciplinati, non moderate,
as he-was of-mind fierce and undisciplined not moderately
ut debuit, sed effrenate ita respondit: 'Ne inficiari rex
as he-ought but unbridledly thus answered that-not to-deny the-king
possit me fratrem suum esse, nos uno ex corpore
may-be-able me brother his to-be us one from body
eundemque per aditum in lucem prodiisse, duello
and-the-same through entrance into the-light to-have-come-forth by-duel
cupio cunctis cernentibus comprobare'. Quod rex ut
I-desire all looking-on to-prove which the-king when
audivit, iuvenem quendam Teudinum nomine elegit, qui
he-heard young-man a-certain Teudin by-name chose who
cum eo hanc ob rem singularem pugnam commisit. Deus
with him this for thing a-single combat joined God
autem, qui iustus est et rectum est iudicium eius, in
moreover who just is and right is judgment his in
quo non est iniquitas, ut amphibologiam dirumperet
whom not is iniquity that the-ambiguity he-might-break-apart
ac veritatem cunctis ostenderet, fecit, ut Teudínus citissime
and the-truth to-all might-show made that Teudin most-quickly
caderet et Lampertus victoriam obtineret. Quamobrem
fell and Lambert the-victory obtained for-which-reason
rex Hugo non mediocriter est confusus. Consilio autem
king Hugh not moderately was confounded counsel moreover
accepto eundem Lambertum tenuit et custodiae tradidit.
taken the-same Lambert he-held and to-custody handed-over
Timuerat enim, ne, si se dimitteret, regnum illi
he-had-feared for lest if him he-let-go the-kingdom from-him

auferret. Hoc igitur capto Bosoni fratri suo Tusciae
he-should-take-away this-one therefore taken to-Boso brother his of-Tuscany
marcam contradidit et non multo post Lambertum lumine
the-march he-handed-over and not long after Lambert of-light
privavit.
deprived

48 His temporibus Italienses in Burgundiam ob Rodulfum,
in-these times the-Italians to Burgundy for Rudolf
ut adveniat, mittunt. Quod Hugo rex ut agnovit,
that he-come send which Hugh king when he-learned
nuntiis ad eundem directis omnem terram, quam in
messengers to the-same directed all the-land which in
Gallia ante regni susceptionem tenuit, Rodulfo dedit
Gaul before of-the-kingdom the-taking-up he-held to-Rudolf gave
atque ab eo iusiurandum, ne aliquando in Italiam
and from him an-oath that-not ever into Italy
veniret, accepit. Nec minus etiam Heinricum, quem
he-should-come received nor less also Henry whom
supra memoravimus, regem fortissimum, multis collatis
above we-mentioned king most-brave with-many conferred
muneribus amicum sibi effecerat, cuius ex hoc apud
gifts a-friend to-himself had-made whose for this among
Italos nomen maxime tunc clarebat, quod Dános, nulli
the-Italians name greatly then shone that the-Danes to-none
ante subiectos, solus ipse debellaret ac tributarios faceret.
before subject alone he-himself subdued and tributaries made
Est enim gens indomita, sub septentrione in oceano degens,
is for a-race untamed under the-north in the-ocean living
cuius saevitia multarum saepe gentium nobilitas luxit.
whose by-savagery of-many often peoples the-nobility has-mourned
Hi aliquando classibus per Rheni fluminis alveum
these once with-fleets through of-the-Rhine river the-channel

conscendentes ferro et igni cuncta misere laniarunt;
going-up with-iron and fire all-things wretchedly tore
ipsas insuper nobilissimas civitates Agrippinam, quae nunc
the-very moreover most-noble cities Agrippina which now
Colonia vocatur, atque Treverim longe a Rheno positam
Cologne is-called and Trier far from the-Rhine placed
nonnullasque alias in regno Lotharii debellantes vi
and-some others in the-kingdom of-Lothar subduing by-force
ceperunt cunctisque ablatis ea, quae secum deferre non
took and-all carried-off the-things which with-them to-carry not
poterant, combusserunt. Thermas etiam Grani palatii atque
they-could burned the-baths also of-Aachen palace and
palatia combusserunt. Verum his omissis ad narrandi seriem
palaces they-burned but these omitted to of-narrating the-thread
redeamus.
let-us-return
Arnaldus Bagoariorum et Carentanorum dux, cuius 49
Arnulf of-the-Bavarians and of-the-Carinthians duke of-whom
superius fecimus mentionem, cum non multum ab
above we-made mention since not much from
Italia longe distaret, collectis copiis, quatinus Hugoni
Italy far he-was-distant gathered forces so-that from-Hugh
regnum auferret, advenit. Qui Tridentinam ea ex
the-kingdom he-might-take came who the-Trentine on-that from
parte primam Italiae marcam pertransiens Veronam usque
side the-first of-Italy march crossing to-Verona all-the-way
pervenit. In qua a Milone comite atque Raterio episcopo
arrived in which by Milo count and Rather bishop
libenter, ut qui eum invitarant, suscipitur. Quod
gladly as those-who him had-invited he-is-received which

rex Hugo ut audivit, collecto exercitu ei obviam
king Hugh when he-heard gathered an-army him to-meet
tendit.
heads
50 Cumque eodem pervenisset et caballicatas, ut vulgo
and-when thither he-had-come and raids as commonly
aiunt, circumcirca dirigeret, Bagoariorum quaedam pars non
they-say round-about he-sent of-the-Bavarians a-certain part not
minima de castro vocabulo Gauseningo egrediens cum
least from the-fort by-name Gossolengo going-out with
Italiensibus pugnare coepit. A quibus graviter confossa,
the-Italians to-fight began by whom heavily pierced
vix ex ea, vel qui hoc ceteris nuntiaret, evasit.
hardly of it even one-who this to-the-rest might-report escaped
Qua ex re Arnaldus dux non parva est confusione
which from thing Arnulf duke not with-small was confusion
repletus. Unde factum est, ut consilio accepto Milonem
filled whence done it-was that counsel taken Milo
comitem vellet capere atque Italia derelicta secum
count he-wished to-seize and Italy abandoned with-himself
illum in Bagoariam ducere, quatinus reparato exercitu
him into Bavaria to-lead so-that restored the-army
cum eo iterum posset redire, quod Milonem non
with him again he-might to-return which Milo not
latuit.
escaped-the-notice-of
51 Qui diversis cogitationibus aestuans, quid ageret, poenitus
who with-various thoughts seething what he-should-do wholly
ignorabat. Hugonem regem, plane ut meruerat, adire
knew-not Hugh king plainly as he-had-deserved to-approach
timebat; cum Arnaldo vero in Bagoariam duci non
he-feared with Arnulf but into Bavaria to-be-led not

solum mortem, sed infernum putabat. Hac itaque in
only death but hell he-thought this and-so in
ambiguitate, quoniam regem Hugonem cito misericordia
ambiguity since king Hugh quickly to-mercy
noverat inclinari, Arnaldum fugere et ad eum deliberat
he-knew to-be-inclined Arnulf to-flee and to him he-decides
tendere. Arnaldus vero, prout citius potuit, in Bagoariam
to-head Arnulf but as quickly-as he-could into Bavaria
est regressus.
is returned

Munitionem autem, quae in eadem civitate erat, prius 52
the-fortress moreover which in the-same city was first
oppugnans fratrem Milonis militesque suos, qui eam
attacking the-brother of-Milo and-soldiers his who it
defendere conabantur, secum in Bagoariam duxit. Quo
to-defend were-trying with-himself into Bavaria he-led whom
discedente Hugoni regi mox civitas redditur, et Raterius,
departing to-Hugh king soon the-city is-returned and Rather
eiusdem civitatis episcopus, ab eo captus Papiae exilio
of-the-same city bishop by him taken at-Pavia in-exile
religatur. In quo faceta satis urbanitate de exilii sui
is-confined in which with-witty quite urbanity about of-exile his
erumna librum componere coepit. Quem si quis legerit,
the-hardship a-book to-compose he-began which if anyone shall-read
nonnullas ibi hac sub occasione res expolítas inveniet,
some there on-this under occasion things polished he-shall-find
quae legentium intellectibus non minus placére poterunt
which of-readers to-the-understandings not less to-please shall-be-able
quam prodesse.
than to-profit

BOOK IV

I · LIUTPRAND AT COURT; MANASSES

From here Liutprand writes as a witness, a boy at Hugh's court for his sweet voice. Hugh makes Lothar king after him, fails to take Rome, and marries his daughter to Alberic without winning the city. The Saracens of Fraxinetum are beaten near Acqui, and Genoa, warned by a spring of blood, is sacked from Africa. Manasses of Arles, Hugh's kinsman, is given the sees of Verona, Trent, and Mantua and takes the march of Trent, and Liutprand refutes his claim that Peter's change of see excuses him.

Hactenus quae digesta sunt, sacerdos sanctissime, sicut 1
thus-far the-things-which set-out have-been priest most-holy as
a gravissimis, qui ea creverant, viris audivi, exposui;
from most-weighty who them had-witnessed men I-heard I-have-expounded
ceterum quae narranda sunt, ita ut qui interfuerim,
but the-things-which to-be-told are so as one-who I-was-present
explicabo. Ea siquidem tempestate tantus eram, quod
I-shall-unfold at-that indeed season so-great I-was that
regis Hugonis gratiam michi vocis dulcedine adquirebam.
of-king Hugh the-favor for-me of-voice by-sweetness I-acquired
Is enim euphoniam adeo diligebat, in qua me coaequalium
he for euphony so-much loved in which me of-my-age-mates
puerorum nemo vincere poterat.
of-boys none to-surpass could
Igitur rex Hugo dum prosperari sibi cuncta prospiceret, 2
therefore king Hugh when to-prosper for-himself all-things he-saw
filium suum Lotharium, quem ex Alda uxore sua genuerat,
son his Lothar whom from Alda wife his he-had-begotten
cunctis coniventibus post se regem constituit. Quo constituto,
all conniving after himself king established whom established

qualiter Romam, ex qua turpiter eiectus fuerat, posset
how Rome from which shamefully thrown-out he-had-been he-might
adquirere cogitabat. Collecta itaque multitudine proficiscitur
to-acquire he-pondered gathered and-so a-multitude he-sets-out
Romam. Cuius quamquam loca et provincias circumcirca
to-Rome whose although places and provinces round-about
misere devastaret eamque ipsam cottidiano impetu inpugnaret,
wretchedly he-devastated and-it itself with-daily assault attacked
ingrediendi tamen eam effectum non potuit obtinere.
of-entering yet it the-effect not could to-obtain
3 Sperans denique calliditate sua Albericum posse decipere
hoping finally by-cunning his Alberic to-be-able to-deceive
ei denuntiat, ut filiam suam Aldam, Lotharii regis
to-him he-announces that daughter his Alda of-Lothar king
nati sui germanam, sibi coniugio tollat sicque pace
of-the-son his the-sister for-himself in-marriage he-should-take and-thus peace
habita ut suus ipsius filius securus permaneat. Albericus
had that his own son secure might-remain Alberic
igitur, ut vir infatuus, filiam eius sibi coniugio iunxit,
therefore as a-man infatuated daughter his to-himself in-marriage joined
Romam autem, quam nimis ardebat, non tradidit
Rome moreover which too-much he-burned-for not he-handed-over
seque ei minime credidit. Vere tamen Albericum rex
and-himself to-him by-no-means trusted truly yet Alberic king
Hugo inescaret et caperet, τουτω τῶ αγκηστρω, tuto
Hugh would-have-baited and caught with-this the hook with-this
to agkistro, id est isto hamo, nisi suorum hoc falleret
the hook that is with-this hook unless of-his-own this had-foiled
fallatia militum, qui eum aliquando pacem cum ipso habere
the-deceit of-soldiers who him ever peace with him to-have
non cuperant. Si quem enim rex suorum vellet corripere,
not had-desired if whom for the-king of-his-own wished to-reprove

ad Albericum mox studuit fugere, a quo regis ob
to Alberic at-once he-was-eager to-flee by whom of-the-king for
metum gratanter susceptus Romae deguerat honoratus.
fear gladly received at-Rome he-had-lived honored
Dum haec aguntur, Saraceni Fraxenetum inhabitantes 4
while these-things are-done the-Saracens Fraxinetum inhabiting
collecta multitudine Aquas, L miliariis Papia distans,
gathered a-multitude to-Acqui fifty miles from-Pavia distant
usque pervenerant. Horum πρωβωλος, provolos, id est
all-the-way had-come of-these the-leader leader that is
praedux, Sagittus Saracenus pessimus impiusque extiterat.
the-leader Sagittus a-Saracen most-wicked and-impious had-stood-forth
Deo tamen propitio pugna commissa ταλέπορος, taléporos,
God yet favoring battle joined wretched wretched
id est miser, ipse cum omnibus suis interiit.
that is wretched he-himself with all his-men perished
Per idem tempus in Ianuensi urbe, quae est in Alpibus 5
through the-same time in the-Genoese city which is in the-Alps
Cotziae octingentis stadiis Papia distans supra Africanum mare
Cottian eight-hundred stadia from-Pavia distant upon the-African sea
constituta, fons sanguinis largissime fluxit, subsecuturam
established a-spring of-blood most-abundantly flowed the-about-to-follow
cunctis patenter ruinam insinuans. Eodem quippe anno
to-all openly ruin intimating in-the-same indeed year
Poeni cum multitudine classium illô perveniunt civibusque
the-Phoenicians with a-multitude of-fleets thither arrive and-the-citizens
ignorantibus civitatem ingrediuntur cunctos, pueris exeptis
unaware the-city enter all boys excepted
et mulieribus, trucidantes cunctosque civitatis et ecclesiarum
and women slaughtering and-all of-the-city and of-the-churches
Dei thesauros navibus imponentes in Africam sunt reversi.
of-God the-treasures on-ships putting into Africa are returned

6 Hoc in tempore Mannasses, Arelatensis civitatis episcopus,
this in time Manasses of-Arles city bishop
agnita regis Hugonis potentia, a cuius ipse affinitatis lineam
recognized of-king Hugh the-power from whom he of-kinship the-line
sanguine traxerat, deserta sibi commissa ecclesia ambitionis
by-blood had-drawn deserted to-himself entrusted church of-ambition
spiritu multas violaturus immo laceraturus ecclesias Italiam
by-spirit many about-to-violate nay about-to-tear churches Italy
petiit. Hugo autem rex regnum securius obtinere sperans, si
sought Hugh moreover king the-kingdom more-securely to-hold hoping if
affinitate sibi coniunctis regni officia largiretur, contra
by-kinship to-himself to-the-joined of-the-kingdom the-offices he-bestowed against
ius fasque Veronensem, Tridentinam atque Mantuanam
right and-divine-law of-Verona of-Trent and of-Mantua
commendavit, sed, quod verius est, in escam dedit ecclesiam.
entrusted but what truer is as fodder he-gave the-church
Ac nec his quidem contentus Tridentinam adeptus est
and not with-these even content of-Trent obtained has
marcam, quo impellente diabolo, dum miles esse inciperet,
the-march whereby driving the-devil while a-soldier to-be he-began
episcopus esse desineret. Libet autem, pater agie, id est
bishop to-be he-ceased it-pleases moreover father holy that is
sancte, aliquantulum immorarier suamque ipsius sententiam,
holy a-little to-linger and-his own opinion
cur hoc ageret, Deo largiente propria iugulare.
why this he-did God granting with-its-own to-cut-the-throat-of

7 'Beatus', inquit, 'Petrus Antiocena instituta ecclesia ad
blessed he-says Peter of-Antioch founded the-church to
Romanam urbem, quae potentiae magnitudine cunctis tunc
the-Roman city which of-power in-greatness over-all then
nationibus imperabat, postmodum transvolavit. Ubi cum
nations ruled afterward flew-across where when

Deo disponente sanctam totoque orbe venerandam
God disposing the-holy and-in-the-whole world to-be-venerated
fundaret ecclesiam, discipulo suo beato euuangelistae Marco
he-founded church to-disciple his blessed evangelist Mark
pristinam, Antiocenam scilicet, commendavit; ita tamen, ut
the-former of-Antioch namely he-entrusted so yet that
Aquilegensem et ipse primo institueret atque Alexandrinam
of-Aquileia also he first should-found and of-Alexandria
cóncite peteret. Quod ita actum esse neminem, qui
hastily should-seek which so done to-have-been no-one who
eorum actus legerit, non nescire cognoscimus'. Sed ut
their acts shall-have-read not not-to-know we-recognize but that
nobis respondentibus, ó Manasses, vera te super his non
to-us answering O Manasses true-things you about these not
sentire cognoscas, nominis tui etimologian parentes tuos
to-think you-may-know of-name your the-etymology parents your
videntes fuisse intelleges. Manasses quippe obliviosus
seeing to-have-been you-shall-understand Manasses indeed forgetful
seu oblivio Domini interpretatur. Quid enim verius aut
or forgetfulness of-the-Lord is-interpreted what for truer or
apertius parentes tui hoc nomine vaticinare potuerunt?
more-openly parents your by-this name to-prophesy could
Ita, inquam, es oblitus tui, ut nec hominem quidem
so I-say you-have forgotten yourself that not a-man even
te esse reminiscare. Diabolus quippe scripturas novit et
you to-be you-remember the-devil indeed the-scriptures knows and
tamen, ut perversus, perverse eas interpretatur et, cum
yet as perverse perversely them interprets and when
his utitur, ad pernitiem, non ad salutem. Scisne
these he-uses for ruin not for salvation do-you-know-that
hunc, cum temptationum iaculis Dominum et redemptorem
this-one when of-temptations with-darts Lord and redeemer

nostrum Iesum Christum ausu nefario sautiare conaretur,
our Jesus Christ with-daring wicked to-wound he-tried
his propheticis male usum verbis: 'Quoniam angelis suis
these prophetic wickedly used words since to-angels his
mandavit de te, et in manibus tollent te, ne umquam
he-has-commanded about you and in hands they-shall-bear you lest ever
offendas ad lapidem pedem tuum'? Hoc sane ita esse
you-strike against a-stone foot your this indeed so to-be
scriptum ac de eo dictum nullus fidelium ambigit. Sed
written and about him said none of-the-faithful doubts but
quam fraudulenter vera haec Leviathan ille proferret, ipsius,
how fraudulently true these-things Leviathan that brought-forth of-him
qui non solum mortalium, sed et angelorum sensus exuperat,
who not only of-mortals but also of-angels the-senses surpasses
responsione animadvertere poteris: 'Non temptabis, inquit,
from-the-answer to-notice you-shall-be-able not you-shall-tempt he-says
dominum Deum tuum'. Vides igitur: et tu veris quidem, sed
the-Lord God your you-see therefore also you true indeed but
fraudulentibus assertionibus uteris, quemadmodum et apostata
fraudulent assertions use as also the-apostate
Iulianus respondisse dicitur Christianis, quos aviditate rapinae
Julian to-have-answered is-said to-the-Christians whom by-greed of-plunder
censu proprio defraudavit: 'Nolite, infit magister vester,
of-property their-own he-defrauded do-not he-says master your
possidere aurum neque argentum'. Et illud: 'ευκοπώτερον
possess gold nor silver and that easier
γαρ εστην καμηλον δια τρυμαλίας ραφίδος ειςελθεὶν η
for it-is a-camel through the-eye of-a-needle to-enter than
πλουσιον εις την βασιλεῖαν τοῦ θεοῦ, eucopoteron gar estin
a-rich-man into the kingdom of-the God easier for it-is
camilon dia trimalias rafidos iselthin i plúsion is tin
a-camel through the-eye of-a-needle to-enter than a-rich-man into the

basilian tu theu', quod est: 'Facilius est camelum per
kingdom of-the God which is easier it-is a-camel through
foramen acus transire, quam divitem intrare in regnum
the-hole of-a-needle to-pass than a-rich-man to-enter into the-kingdom
caelorum'. Et item: 'Qui non renuntiat omnibus, quae
of-the-heavens and likewise who not renounces all-things which
possidet, non potest meus esse discipulus'. Cedo igitur, quid
he-possesses not can my to-be disciple tell-me therefore what
perversius ille quidve foedius te dixisse credendus
more-perverse that-one or-what more-foul than-you to-have-said to-be-believed
est? Quod enim Petrus ad iustitiam, tu transfers ad culpam.
is what for Peter to righteousness you transfer to guilt
Credo equidem te actus apostolorum non intellexisse
I-believe indeed you the-acts of-the-apostles not to-have-understood
aut, quod credibilius est, minime legisse. Ibi plane sic
or what more-believable is by-no-means to-have-read there plainly thus
scriptum repperies, quoniam fideles vendebant praedia sua
written you-shall-find that the-faithful were-selling estates their
et ponebant precium ante pedes apostolorum, quibus erant
and were-placing the-price before the-feet of-the-apostles to-whom were
omnia communia, nec quisquam aliquid suum esse dicebat;
all-things common nor anyone anything his-own to-be said
dividebatur autem singulis, prout cuique opus erat. Si
was-divided moreover to-each as to-each need there-was if
igitur, quod in humano censu preciosius tibique anima tua
therefore what in human property more-precious and-to-you than-soul your
carius, Petrus aurum quasi quiddam pestiferum tangere noluit,
dearer Peter gold as something pestilent to-touch refused
qua ratione eum Antiocena deserta ad Romanam asseris
by-what reason him of-Antioch deserted to the-Roman do-you-assert
ecclesiam transvolasse? Si latras illum, quod omnino falsum
church to-have-flown-across if you-bark-at him that wholly false

est, quaesivisse censum, ego animarum lucrum et comprobo
is to-have-sought property I the-gain of-souls and approve
gloriosum martyrium. Praedictum quippe sibi a magistro,
the-glorious martyrdom foretold indeed to-him by his-master
immo creatore et redemptore suo fuerat, quoniam: 'Cum
nay creator and redeemer his it-had-been that when
esses iunior, cingebas te et ambulabas, ubi volebas; cum
you-were younger you-girded yourself and walked where you-wished when
autem senueris, extendes manus tuas, et alius te
moreover you-shall-grow-old you-shall-stretch-out hands your and another you
cinget et ducet, quo tu non vis. Hoc autem dixit significans,
shall-gird and shall-lead where you not wish this moreover he-said signifying
qua morte clarificaturus esset Deum'. Denique et alio in
by-what death about-to-glorify he-was God finally also another in
loco post resurrectionem Petro se, quo iret, interroganti
place after the-resurrection to-Peter him where he-was-going asking
respondisse Dominus legitur: 'Romam, iterum crucifigi'.
to-have-answered the-Lord is-read to-Rome again to-be-crucified
Venit igitur Petrus non ambitione inflatus, sed martirio
came therefore Peter not by-ambition puffed-up but by-martyrdom
animatus, non quaerens aurum, sed animarum lucrum. O
inspired not seeking gold but of-souls the-gain O
felicem, immo beatum, si talem te tua conscientia testaretur.
happy nay blessed if such you your conscience should-testify
Nec inficiari, inquam, potes Veronensem te episcopium
nor to-deny I-say can-you of-Verona you the-bishopric
minime vendidisse, quod Petro, non cuilibet, sed apostolo
by-no-means to-have-sold which to-Peter not to-anyone but apostle
illo, numquam didicimus contigisse. Qua ex re non solum
that never we-have-learned to-have-befallen which from thing not only
spiritali, verum etiam corporali honore census animatione te
spiritual but also bodily honor of-property by-the-urge you

privatum esse cognovimus. Haec autem interim ad propositum
deprived to-be we-have-known these moreover meanwhile to the-purpose
redeundo dicta suffitiant, quoad largiente Deo suis in locis,
returning said let-suffice until granting God their-own in places
qualiter Mediolanensem usurpaveris cathedram, ponamus.
how of-Milan you-usurped the-see we-shall-set-down

II · THEOBALD'S EUNUCHS AND WILLA'S BELT

Berengar of Ivrea marries Hugh's niece Willa. Theobald, campaigning against the Greeks in the south, gelds his prisoners and sends them to the emperor, and a captive's wife pleads that he is cutting off what belongs to the women and wins her husband back. Boso of Tuscany, egged on by his greedy wife Willa, plots and is imprisoned. When Willa is expelled, a gold belt is found hidden in her body, and a slave mocks her in verse.

Eo tempore Berengarius iste, cuius tyrannide tota nunc 8
at-that time Berengar this whose by-tyranny the-whole now
luget Italia, Eporegiae civitatis marchio habebatur. Cui
mourns Italy of-Ivrea city marquis was-held to-whom
rex Hugo neptim suam nomine Willam, quam ex Willa
king Hugh niece his by-name Willa whom from Willa
uxore sua Boso Tusciae provinciae marchio, regis frater,
wife his Boso of-Tuscany province marquis of-the-king the-brother
genuerat, coniugem dedit. Anscarius vero, Berengarii frater,
had-begotten as-wife gave Anscar but of-Berengar the-brother
quem ex Adelberto Hermengarda regis Hugonis genuerat
whom from Adalbert Ermengard of-king Hugh had-borne
soror, virium audatia potentiaque clarebat.
the-sister of-strength by-boldness and-power shone

9 Tedbaldus etiam heros quidam, proxima Hugoni regi affinitate
Theobald also a-hero a-certain by-nearest to-Hugh king kinship
coniunctus, Camerinorum et Spoletinorum marchio erat.
joined of-the-Camerini and of-the-Spoletans marquis was
Hic in auxilium Beneventani principis contra Grecos, qui
this-one into help of-the-Beneventan prince against the-Greeks who
eum graviter obpresserant, abiit. Quibus cum bellum inferret,
him heavily had-oppressed went on-whom when war he-made
victoria est potitus. Contigit denique multos Grecorum
victory he-has gained it-happened finally many of-the-Greeks
iamiam non arva, sed castra obtinentium hunc cepisse.
already-now not fields but camps holding him to-have-taken
Quibus dum virilia amputaret, talia stratigo, qui
from-whom while the-virile-parts he-cut-off such-things to-the-strategos who
eis praeerat, nuntiavit: 'Quoniam quidem vestro sancto
them commanded he-sent-word since indeed to-your holy
imperatori spadonibus nil pretiosius esse cognovi, hos
emperor than-eunuchs nothing more-precious to-be I-have-learned these
studui pauculos sibi verecunde transmittere, plures
I-have-been-eager a-very-few to-him modestly to-send more
quantocius Deo propitio transmissurus'.
as-quickly-as-possible God favoring about-to-send

10 Ludibrium autem, immo sapientiam, quam quaedam tunc
the-jest moreover nay wisdom which a-certain then
mulier gessit, hic inseramus. Dum enim die quadam Greci
woman performed here let-us-insert when for on-day a-certain the-Greeks
cum ipsius terrae hominibus extra castrum quoddam ad
with of-that-very land the-men outside a-fort a-certain to
pugnam adversus Tedbaldum memoratum exirent, nonnulli
fight against Theobald the-mentioned went-out some
ab eodem sunt capti. Quos dum eunuchizaret eosque in
by the-same were taken whom while he-was-making-eunuchs and-them into

castellum dirigeret, mulier quaedam mariti amore succensa,
the-castle was-sending a-woman a-certain of-her-husband by-love inflamed
eius pro membris non parum sollicita, passis crinibus
his for members not a-little anxious with-loosened hair
de castello exiit furibunda. Quae cum cruentis unguibus
from the-castle went-out raging who when with-bloody nails
ora discerperet atque ante Tedbaldi tentorium clamosis
her-face she-tore and before of-Theobald the-tent with-loud
vocibus fleret: 'Quid causae est', inquit, 'mulier, quod tam
voices wept what of-cause is-there he-said woman that with-such
sonoris vocibus quereris?' Quae — quia stultitiam simulare
resounding voices you-complain she because folly to-feign
loco prudentia summa est, — ita respondit: 'Novum
in-place prudence highest is thus answered new
hoc inauditumque facinus est, heroes, ut bellum non
this and-unheard-of a-crime is heroes that war on-not
repugnantibus mulieribus inferatis. Nostrarum nulla ex
resisting women you-should-make of-our-women none from
Amazonarum sanguine prosapiam ducit; Minervae quippe solum
of-the-Amazons blood descent draws of-Minerva indeed alone
operibus deditae armorum poenitus sumus ignarae'. Cui
to-works devoted of-arms wholly we-are ignorant to-whom
cum Tedbaldus diceret: 'Quis umquam sani capitis heros
when Theobald said who ever of-sound head a-hero
praeter Amazonarum temporibus bellum mulieribus intulit?'
except of-the-Amazons in-the-times war on-women made
ea respondit: 'Quod, cedo, crudelius mulieribus bellum inferre
she answered what tell-me crueler on-women war to-make
quidve incommodius his potestis auferre, quam ut earum
or-what more-harmful from-these can-you take-away than that of-them
viris certetis orchidia amputare, in quibus nostri refocilatio
the-husbands you-strive the-testicles to-cut-off in which of-our the-refreshment

corporis et, quod omnium potissimum est, nasciturae
body and what of-all chiefest is of-about-to-be-born
spes extat prolis? Dum enim eos eunuchizatis, non quod
the-hope stands of-offspring while for them you-make-eunuchs not what
illorum, sed quod nostrum est, tollitis. Num, inquam,
theirs but what ours is you-take-away surely-not I-say
armentorum seu ovium copia, quam mihi dies ante hos
of-herds or of-sheep the-abundance which from-me days before these
abstulistis, vestra me castra adire coegit? Animalium
you-took to-your me camp to-approach has-compelled of-the-animals
quippe quae mihi fecistis dispendia laudo, iacturam hanc
indeed which for-me you-have-made the-losses I-praise the-loss this
tantam, tam crudelem tamque inrecuperabilem modis omnibus
so-great so cruel and-so irrecoverable in-ways all
horreo, fugio, nolo. Sancti Dei omnes talem a me avertite
I-dread I-flee I-refuse saints of-God all such from me turn-away
pestem'! His auditis nimio sunt omnes cachinno commoti
a-plague these heard with-excessive were all laughter moved
tantusque in eam populi favor excrevit, ut non solum
and-so-great toward her of-the-people the-favor grew that not only
virum suum integrum, sed et cuncta quae sibi ablata
husband her whole but also all which from-her taken-away
fuerant animalia recipere mereretur. Quae cum his receptis
had-been the-animals to-receive she-deserved who when these received
abiret, directo Tedbaldus post eam puero interrogavit, quid
she-went-off sent Theobald after her a-boy asked what
viro suo auferret, si ad pugnam amplius contra
from-husband her he-should-take-away if to battle further against
se de castello exiret? 'Oculi', inquit, 'sunt illi, nares,
him from the-castle he-went-out eyes she-says are to-him nostrils
manus et pedes. Si hoc egerit, sibi, quae sua
hands and feet if this he-shall-have-done from-him the-things-which his

sunt, auferat; quae mea, suae scilicet ancillulae,
are let-him-take-away the-things-which mine to-his namely little-maidservant
derelinquat'. Verum quia favorem populi prima sibi
let-him-leave but because the-favor of-the-people by-the-first for-her
locutione per risum et mariti donum adesse intellexit,
speech through laughter and of-the-husband the-gift to-be-present she-understood
haec postmodum per directum nuntium remandavit.
these-things afterward through a-sent messenger she-sent-back-word
Per id tempus regis Hugonis frater Boso Willa, uxore 11
through that time of-king Hugh the-brother Boso by-Willa wife
sua cupidissima, stimulante adversus regem nova quaedam et
his most-greedy goading against the-king new certain-things and
perversa molitus est agere. Quod Hugonem non latuit.
perverse striven has to-do which Hugh not escaped-the-notice-of
Qua ex re captus custodiae est continuo traditus. Causa
which from thing taken to-custody he-was at-once handed-over the-cause
denique deiectionis eius haec fuit. Dum Lamberto, quem supra
finally of-overthrow his this was when Lambert whom above
memoravimus, lumine privato isdem Boso marcam Tusciae
we-mentioned of-light deprived the-same Boso the-march of-Tuscany
obtineret, coniux sua Willa phylargiriae coepit amore flagrare,
held wife his Willa of-avarice began with-love to-burn
adeo ut totius Tusciae provinciae nulla nobilium matronarum
so-much that of-all of-Tuscany province none of-the-noble matrons
quantivis se precii ornamentis excoleret. Haec cum prolem
of-whatever-great herself of-price with-ornaments adorned she since offspring
non haberet virilem, quattuor habuit natas, Bertam, Willam,
not she-had male four had daughters Bertha Willa
Richildam et Gislam. Harum Willa, Berengarii huius, qui nunc
Richilda and Gisela of-these Willa of-Berengar this who now
superest, vere marita, hoc effecit, ne genitrix sua omnium
survives truly the-wife this brought-about that-not mother her of-all

esset mulierum nequissima. Ut autem non per longas
should-be women the-most-worthless that moreover not through long
ambages eius acta ponamus, uno turpissimo descripto,
circumlocutions her deeds we-may-set-down one most-foul described
quae et quanta in ceteris fuerit, animadvertere poteris.
what and how-great in the-rest she-was to-perceive you-shall-be-able
12 Vir ipsius Boso mirae longitudinis et latitudinis aureum
husband her Boso of-wondrous length and breadth a-golden
habuerat balteum, qui multarum et pretiosarum splendebat
had-had belt which of-many and precious shone
nitore gemmarum. Hunc, cum Boso caperetur, super
with-the-gleam of-gems this when Boso was-taken above
omnes gazas eius diligenter rex iussit inquiri; sumptisque
all treasures his carefully the-king ordered to-be-sought and-taken
divitiis uxorem eius quasi profanam et sceleris totius
the-riches wife his as-if profane and of-the-crime whole
auctricem turpiter de regno Italico praecepit expelli atque
the-authoress shamefully from the-kingdom Italian ordered to-be-expelled and
in Burgundiam, de qua oriunda fuerat, duci. Verum cum
into Burgundy from which sprung she-had-been to-be-led but when
diligenter omnia perscrutati balteum non reppererint, cetera
carefully all-things examined the-belt not they-found the-rest
nuntii reportantes sunt ad Hugonem reversi. Tum rex:
the-messengers bringing-back were to Hugh returned then the-king
'Revertentes', inquit, 'falerarum eius omnem apparatum, pulvinar
returning he-says of-trappings her all the-apparatus the-cushion
etiam, quod equitando premit, evertite. Et si nec ibi quidem
also which in-riding she-presses turn-over and if not there even
balteum poteritis repperire, vestimentis omnibus eam exuite,
the-belt you-shall-be-able to-find of-clothes all her strip
ne alícubi super se possit latere; novi enim, quantum
lest somewhere on herself it-may to-lie-hidden I-know for how

callida quantumque sit cupida'. Igitur illis redeuntibus
cunning and-how she-is greedy therefore they returning
regisque iussioni parentibus cum requisitis omnibus nil
and-of-the-king to-the-command obeying when searched all-things nothing
invenissent, vestimentis eam omnibus nudaverunt. Hoc denique
they-had-found of-clothes her all they-stripped this finally
tam turpe facinus atque inauditum cum avertentibus oculis
so shameful deed and unheard-of when with-turning-away eyes
proborum nemo conspiceret, servorum quidam directo obtutu
of-the-upright none looked-on of-the-slaves a-certain-one with-direct gaze
purpuream secus natium speroiden vidit dependere corrigiam,
a-purple beside the-buttocks round he-saw hanging strap
quam inpudenter arripiens foediterque trahens, e secretiori
which shamelessly seizing and-foully drawing from the-more-secret
corporis parte eam secutus balteus est egressus. Servus
of-the-body part it following the-belt has come-out the-slave
itaque isdem non solum inverecundus, sed eo ipso turpi
and-so the-same not only shameless but by-this very foul
facinore hilarior redditus: 'Há! há! hé!' ait, 'quam peritus
deed merrier rendered ha ha he he-said how skilled
obstetricandi miles! Ruffus puer est natus herae; quaeso,
in-midwifery the-soldier red-haired a-boy is born to-the-mistress I-pray
ut sit superstes. O me fortunatum, immo omnibus
that he-may-be surviving O me fortunate nay than-all
feliciorem, si tales saltem duos uxor mea mihi pareret natos,
happier if such at-least two wife my to-me should-bear sons
hos quippe Constantinopolim dirigerem nuntios, quoniam
them indeed to-Constantinople I-would-send as-messengers since
quidem, ut institoribus narrantibus agnovi, huiusmodi
indeed as from-traders telling I-have-learned of-this-kind
libenter imperator nuntios suscipit'. Talibus praeterea Willa
gladly the-emperor messengers receives by-such moreover Willa

confusa sermonibus lacrimis effusis latentem sub corde
confounded words with-tears poured-out the-lying-hidden beneath her-heart
aperit cunctis dolorem. Servus autem, ut eorum suum
reveals to-all grief the-slave moreover as their the-custom
est, eius deiectione non solum non inclinatus, verum etiam
is her at-overthrow not only not bent but also
animatus haec ad exaggerandum doloris vulnus adiecit:
emboldened these-things for heaping-up of-the-grief the-wound added

'Willa quid insanis? aurum quod condere caecis
Willa why are-you-mad the-gold which to-hide in-blind
Incipis in membris? prô non audita cupido!
you-begin in members O not heard greed
Allectó furiis gemmas in corpore condis.
Allecto with-furies gems in the-body you-hide
Matribus insolitum tales producere partus,
for-mothers unaccustomed such to-produce births
Hinc tibi nulla decem tulerant fastidia menses.
hence to-you no ten had-brought loathings months
Alma parens, tales nobis haud desine foetus
nourishing mother such to-us by-no-means cease offspring
Edere, qui nati superent te aetate parentem!'
to-bear which born may-surpass you in-age the-parent
Talia cunctanti collum percusserat unus
such-things to-him-lingering the-neck had-struck one
Impiger ac verbis ipsum culparat amaris.
unwearied and with-words him had-blamed bitter

His ita peractis balteus regi adducitur eaque in
these thus done the-belt to-the-king is-brought and-she into
Burgundiam destinatur. Utrum tamen, quae abscondit, an
Burgundy is-dispatched whether yet she-who hid or

qui eô inquirere iussit, foedius egerit, michi quidem
he-who thither to-search ordered more-foully acted to-me indeed
videtur amphibolum. Liquet tamen, quod uterque nimia
seems ambiguous it-is-clear yet that each by-excessive
sit auri gemmarumque cupidine animatus.
was of-gold and-of-gems greed animated

III · HUGH'S WOMEN AND THE SAXON KINGS

Hugh marries Rudolf's widow Bertha and weds Lothar to her daughter Adelaide, but spurns his wife for three concubines, nicknamed Venus, Juno, and Semele. Henry dies at Memleben and is buried at Quedlinburg; Liutprand describes his sons Otto, Henry, and Bruno and praises Henry and Otto in verse. Henry, Otto's brother, is persuaded by flatterers that the crown should have been his.

Burgundionum praeterea rex Rodulfus mortem obiit, cuius 13
of-the-Burgundians moreover king Rudolf death met whose
viduam nomine Bertam rex Hugo Alda, Lotharii regis filii
widow by-name Bertha king Hugh Alda of-Lothar king of-son
sui matre, defuncta maritali sibi coniugio sotiarat. Sed
his the-mother dead in-marital to-himself marriage had-allied but
et filio suo, regi Lothario, Rodulfi et ipsius Bertae
also for-son his king Lothar of-Rudolf and of-the-same Bertha
natam nomine Adelegidam cum forma honestissimam tum
the-daughter by-name Adelaide as-well in-form most-comely as
morum probitate gratiosam coniugem tulit. Quod Grecis
of-manners by-uprightness gracious as-wife took which to-the-Greeks
omnibus non videtur idoneum, scilicet ut, si pater matrem,
all not seems fitting namely that if the-father the-mother

cum sint duo unum, uxorem accipiat, filius filiam non
since they-are two one as-wife takes the-son the-daughter not
sine reatu valeat sibi coniugio copulare.
without guilt can to-himself in-marriage to-join
14 Hugo denique multarum concubinarum deceptus inlecebris
Hugh finally of-many concubines deceived by-the-allurements
praefatam coniugem suam Bertam maritali non solum non
the-aforesaid wife his Bertha with-marital not only not
coepit amore diligere, verum modis omnibus execrare; quod
began love to-love but in-ways all to-curse which
quam Deus iuste punierit, suis in locis ponere non
how God justly punished their-own in places to-set-down not
pigebit. Verum cum nonnullae essent concubinae, tres supra
it-shall-irk but since several were concubines three above
ceteras turpissimo amore ardebat: Pezolam, vilissimorum
the-rest with-most-foul love he-burned-for Pezola of-the-vilest
servorum sanguine cretam, ex qua et natum genuit nomine
slaves from-the-blood sprung from whom also a-son he-begot by-name
Boso, quem in Placentina post Widonis obitum episcopum
Boso whom in the-Piacenzan after of-Guy the-death bishop
ordinavit ecclesia; Rozam deinde, Walperti superius memorati
he-ordained church Roza then of-Walpert above mentioned
filiam decollati, quae ei mirae pulcritudinis peperit
the-daughter beheaded who to-him of-wondrous beauty bore
natam; tertiam Stephaniam genere Romanam, quae et filium
a-daughter the-third Stephania by-race Roman who also a-son
peperit nomine Tedbaldum, quem postmodum in Mediolanensi
bore by-name Theobald whom afterward in the-Milanese
ecclesia archidiaconem ea ratione constituit, ut defuncto
church archdeacon on-this reasoning he-established that dead
archiepiscopo eius ipse vicarius poneretur. Quid autem fuerit,
the-archbishop his he as-successor should-be-placed what moreover it-was

quod effectum Deus haec habere non siverit, vita comite
that effect God these-things to-have not allowed life accompanying
scribendi ordo nudabit. Sed et populus has ob turpis
of-writing the-order shall-lay-bare but also the-people these for of-shameful
inpudicitiae facinus dearum nominibus, Pezolam videlicet
lewdness the-crime of-goddesses by-names Pezola namely
Venerem, Rozam Iunonem ob simultatem et perpetuum
Venus Roza Juno for the-rivalry and perpetual
odium, quoniam quidem ea secundum carnis putredinem
hatred since indeed she according-to of-the-flesh the-rottenness
hac spetiosior videbatur, Stephaniam vero Sémelen
than-this-one more-beautiful seemed Stephania but Semele
apellabat. Et quoniam non rex solus his abutebatur,
called and since not the-king alone them abused
earum nati ex incertis patribus originem ducunt.
their children from uncertain fathers origin draw
Eo in tempore rex Heinricus in castello, quod est in 15
that in time king Henry in the-castle which is in
Turingiorum et Saxonum confinio et dicitur Himénleve,
of-the-Thuringians and of-the-Saxons the-border and is-called Memleben
gravissima valetudine correptus migravit ad Dominum. Cuius
by-a-most-grave illness seized passed to the-Lord whose
corpus in Saxoniam deportatum in nobilissimarum ac
body into Saxony carried in of-most-noble and
religiosarum monasterio puellarum, quod in ipsius regis
religious the-monastery maidens which in of-the-very of-the-king
praedio vocabulo Quitelingburg situm liquet, intra ecclesiam
the-estate by-name Quedlinburg situated it-is-clear within the-church
cum inmensa est veneratione repositum. Ubi et venerabilis eius
with immense was veneration laid-to-rest where also venerable his
coniux regnique consors ex eadem gente nomine Machtild,
wife and-of-the-kingdom the-partner from the-same people by-name Matilda

ultra omnes quas viderim et audierim matronas, pro delictorum
beyond all whom I-have-seen and I-have-heard matrons for of-offenses
expiatione celebre exequiarum offitium vivamque Deo hostiam
the-expiation the-solemn of-funeral-rites office and-a-living to-God victim
offerre non desinit. Haec ante regni susceptionem
to-offer not ceases she before of-the-kingdom the-taking-up
viro suo filium peperit, quem vocavit Ottonem, istum,
for-husband her a-son bore whom she-called Otto this-one
inquam, cuius mundi partes aquilonaris et occidua potentia
I-say whose of-the-world the-parts northern and western by-power
reguntur, sapientia pacificantur, religione laetantur iustique
are-ruled by-wisdom are-pacified in-religion rejoice and-of-just
iudicii severitate terrentur. Post regiam autem dignitatem duos
judgment by-the-severity are-terrified after the-royal moreover dignity two
peperit, unum, quem patris nomine vocavit Heinricum,
she-bore one whom of-the-father by-name she-called Henry
facetia satis ornatum, consiliis providum, vultus nitore
with-wit quite adorned in-counsels foresighted of-face in-brightness
gratiosum, oculorum vigilantia placidum, cuius recenti pro
gracious of-eyes in-watchfulness calm whose recent for
funere non mediocres adhuc lacrimas fundimus. Tertium deinde
funeral not moderate still tears we-shed the-third then
Bruno nomine, quem pater sanctus, quoniam Nordmanni
Bruno by-name whom the-father holy since the-Northmen
Traiectensem destruxerant omnino ecclesiam, ob eiusdem
of-Utrecht had-destroyed wholly the-church for of-the-same
recuperationem eidem voluit militare. Verum ut istorum actus
the-recovery to-the-same wished to-serve but that of-these the-deeds
suis in locis latius explicemus, ad propositum redeamus.
their-own in places more-broadly we-may-unfold to the-purpose let-us-return

Quantae fuerit prudentiae quantaeque rex Heinricus scientiae, 16
of-how-great was prudence and-how-great king Henry knowledge
hinc probari potest, quod potissimum ac religiosissimum
from-this to-be-proved can that the-ablest and most-religious
natorum suorum regem constituit. Imminebat enim, rex
of-sons his king he-established was-impending for king
prudentissime, obitu tuo totius populi casus, si tantus
most-prudent at-death your of-the-whole people the-fall if so-great
regiae dignitati non subiret vicarius. Qua ex re in
to-the-royal dignity not came-in successor which from thing in
amborum laude hos pangimus versus:
of-both the-praise these we-compose verses

Ipse qui condam superare gentes
he-himself who once to-overcome peoples
Impias bello solitus cruento,
impious in-war accustomed bloody
Novimus nunc, rex, dederis popello
we-know now king you-have-given to-the-little-people
Morte tu quantas propria ruinas.
by-death you how-great your-own ruins
Turba certatim viduata karo
the-throng eagerly bereaved of-dear
Rege iam cesset lacrimare, quando
king now let-it-cease to-weep since
Alter exurgit venerandus orbi,
another rises venerable to-the-world
Filius patri similis cluenti,
a-son to-the-father like renowned
Otto rex, gentes dicione magna
Otto king peoples with-sway great

Qui premet pacemque feret beatam.
who shall-press and-peace shall-bring blessed
Quicquid Heinrici periit recessu,
whatever of-Henry perished by-the-departure
Praestitit claro populis hic ortu,
has-supplied with-bright to-the-peoples this-one rising
Blandus et mitis patiensque sanctis,
gentle and mild and-patient to-the-holy
Pestifer durus rabidusque saevis.
deadly hard and-raging to-the-savage
Bella nonnullis tibi sunt gerenda,
wars with-some by-you are to-be-waged
Ex quibus nomen referens in astra
from which name bearing to the-stars
Cuncta calcabis pedibus per orbem,
all-things you-shall-trample with-feet through the-world
Quae premit tardus radians Bootes
which presses slow shining Boötes
Et quibus nomen dedit Hesper almus,
and to-which name gave Hesper nourishing
Lucifer rursus vocitatus idem,
Lucifer again called the-same
Surgit Eoo properans corusco.
rises from-the-Dawn hastening gleaming

17 Duxerat idem rex Otto ante regni susceptionem
had-taken the-same king Otto before of-the-kingdom the-taking-up
ex Anglorum gente nobilissima regis Hadelstani fratris
from of-the-English the-race most-noble of-king Æthelstan of-the-brother
filiam sibi uxorem nomine Otgith, ex qua et filium
the-daughter for-himself as-wife by-name Edith from whom also a-son

genuit nomine Liutolfum. Cuius ob recentem iacturam
he-begot by-name Liudolf of-whom for the-recent loss
quociens memoriam agimus, lacrimis sinum replemus. O
as-often-as the-memory we-make with-tears our-bosom we-fill O
si numquam natus aut non tam mature defunctus esset!
if never born or not so early dead he-had-been
Quo in tempore regis eiusdem frater Heinricus quorundam 18
which in time of-king the-same the-brother Henry of-certain
perversorum instinctu eidem est nimium adversatus. Is
perverse-men at-the-instigation to-the-same was too-much opposed he
enim, qui post creationis suae mox clarissimam dignitatem
for who after of-creation his soon the-most-glorious dignity
creatori suo se similem facere voluit, per auditores
to-the-creator his himself like to-make wished through hearers
suos talibus Heinricum contra fratris, immo regis et
his with-such Henry against of-the-brother nay of-the-king and
domini sermonibus instigavit: 'Rectumne patrem egisse
of-the-lord words incited rightly the-father to-have-acted
rere regia tibi in dignitate genito non in eadem
do-you-think royal for-you in dignity begotten not in the-same
genitum praeponendo? Plane non discretionis hoc censura
the-begotten by-setting-before plainly not of-discernment this by-the-judgment
ponderavit, verum passionis magnitudine aberravit. Ergo
he-weighed but of-passion by-the-greatness he-went-astray therefore
age, neque enim tibi deerunt copiae; fratrem deice,
come nor for to-you shall-be-lacking forces the-brother cast-down
regnum accipe; sitque tibi regnandi facultas, cui
the-kingdom take and-let-there-be to-you of-reigning the-power to-whom
accidit Deo largiente et in eadem dignitate nativitas'.
it-befell God granting also in the-same dignity birth

A poem warns Henry against fighting his brother. Count Everard, the instigator, captures Henry; Everard and Gislebert of Lotharingia then promise Henry the crown while each means to take it himself. Otto's men, caught at Birten with the Rhine between them and the king, resolve to fight rather than flee. Otto prays before the Holy Lance, and the enemy flees though few pursue it; Henry's arm is bruised so badly that the pain returns every year.

19 Regnandi tibi quid iuvenum tam dira cupido
of-reigning to-you why of-young-men so dire a-desire
Optime Saxigenum? Prohibet Deus,
best of-the-Saxon-born forbids God
Haud pater Heinricus; dedit is quia sceptra, monebat
by-no-means father Henry gave he because the-scepters he-advised
Astripotens bonus ipse Deus pius,
star-powerful good himself God pious
Quo sine nec regnum capitur, nec tempora sistunt.
whom without neither a-kingdom is-taken nor times stand
Quicquid in orbe Deus geritur iubet,
whatever in the-world God is-done orders
Per quem iura duces cernunt regesque triumphant.
through whom laws dukes discern and-kings triumph
Fraternas acies nunc nunc male
brotherly battle-lines now now wickedly
Conflictare cupis, fallax, crudelis, inique?
to-clash you-desire deceitful cruel unjust
Impie Leviathan Behemoth, paras
impious Leviathan Behemoth you-prepare
Antiquum renovare tua iam fraude duellum?
the-ancient to-renew by-your now fraud war

Crimine pro cuncto poenas lues,
crime for every penalties you-shall-pay
Hoc reprobum numerus culpans quod peccat in aevo,
this of-the-reprobate the-number blaming which sins in the-age
Improbe supplicium referes simul,
wicked-one punishment you-shall-bear-off together
Et quaecumque malis debentur flammea cunctis
and whatever to-the-wicked are-owed flaming to-all
Vincula, parta tibi misero. Neque
chains gotten for-you wretch nor
Ignivomas herebi iuste dimersus ad umbras
fire-vomiting of-Erebus justly plunged to the-shades
Perpetuo tecum arsuros trahes
forever with-you about-to-burn you-shall-drag
Christicolas, quia, si qua sacro baptismate loti
the-worshipers-of-Christ because if any in-sacred baptism washed
Debita post traxere, Dei manet
debts afterward have-drawn of-God remains
Gratia, quae lapsos erexit sanguine gratis.
the-grace which the-fallen raised by-blood freely

Tanti huius ac perniciosi facinoris illex Heverardus extitit 20
of-so-great this and pernicious crime the-enticer Everard stood-forth
comes. Huius enim primae rebellionis tempore Heinricus
count of-this for first rebellion in-the-time Henry
fratri suo regi et domino, prout debuerat, amminicula dederat
to-brother his king and lord as he-ought supports had-given
nisuque omni adversarios fatigabat. Verum quia incuria
and-with-effort all the-adversaries wearied but because carelessness
non solum temporalibus rebus, sed aeternis etiam deditis
not only to-temporal things but to-eternal also to-the-devoted

atque in ipsa internae contemplationis visione constitutis
and in the-very of-inner contemplation vision established
lapsum nonnunquam parat, et, ut Vegetius Renatus in libro
a-fall sometimes prepares and as Vegetius Renatus in the-book
rei militaris ait, quod 'necessario amplior securitas
of-the-affair military says that necessarily greater security
gravius solet habere discrimen', Heinricum quodam in opido
more-gravely is-wont to-have danger Henry a-certain in town
manentem incautiusque se tuentem praedictus Heverardus
staying and-more-incautiously himself guarding the-aforesaid Everard
collecta multitudine obsedit ac, priusquam frater ei rex
gathered a-multitude besieged and before brother to-him the-king
amminiculari posset, expugnavit secumque illum et gazam non
to-support could stormed and-with-himself him and treasure not
parvam in propria transportavit. Rex igitur tantum fratris,
small into his-own carried-over the-king therefore so-great of-his-brother
immo suum cupiens dedecus vindicare praefatum Heverardum
nay his-own desiring the-disgrace to-avenge the-aforesaid Everard
sibique coniventes toto coepit conamine persequi.
and-to-himself the-conniving with-all began effort to-pursue
21 Heverardus sane Gislebertum Lotharingorum ducem a
Everard indeed Gislebert of-the-Lotharingians duke from
regis fidelitate seiunxerat, cuius adiutorio regi non
of-the-king fidelity had-separated whose by-help to-the-king not
modice resistebat. Quamquam enim isdem Gislebertus
moderately he-was-resisting although for the-same Gislebert
regis sororem haberet uxorem, maluit tamen suscipiendi
of-the-king the-sister had as-wife he-preferred yet of-taking-up
regni spe animatus regi resistere quam eum, ut
the-kingdom by-hope animated the-king to-resist than him as
debuerat, contra suos aemulos adiuvare. Sed cum se
he-ought against his rivals to-help but when themselves

nec sic resistere regi posse conspicerent, non incallido
not-even so to-resist the-king to-be-able they-saw not cunning
secundum hominem, sed fatuo secundum Deum accepto
according-to man but foolish according-to God taken
consilio huiusmodi Heinricum verbis conveniunt:
counsel in-this-way Henry with-words they-address
'Si consiliis nostris te parere nobis iuramento promittis, 22
if to-counsels our you to-obey to-us by-oath you-promise
non solum, quia captus es, te dimittimus, sed, quod
not only because taken you-are you we-release but what
maius est, si tamen rex velis fieri, nostrum te dominum
greater is if yet king you-wish to-become our you lord
constituimus'. Haec autem non eo dicebant, ut facerent,
we-establish these-things moreover not for-this they-said that they-might-do
sed ut eius auxilio regem facilius debellarent.
but that his by-help the-king more-easily they-might-subdue
Habuerat plane rex nonnullas fortissimas copias, Herimannum 23
had plainly the-king some very-strong forces Hermann
scilicet Suevorum ducem fratremque eius Hutonem atque
namely of-the-Swabians duke and-brother his Uto and
Chuonradum cognomine Sapientem. Qui quamquam Heverardo
Conrad by-surname the-Wise who although to-Everard
affinitatis linea iungerentur, maluerunt tamen iuste, si
of-kinship by-the-line they-were-joined preferred yet justly if
necessitas incubuisset, iusto cum rege occumbere quam iniuste
necessity should-have-pressed the-just with king to-fall than unjustly
cum consanguineo triumphare. Heinricus igitur praemissa
with kinsman to-triumph Henry therefore by-the-sent-before
iam promissione deceptus propriis mox collectis copiis totis
already promise deceived his-own soon gathered forces with-all
viribus ipsos adiuvare regemque coeperat inpugnare. Verum
strength them to-help and-the-king had-begun to-attack but

quia scriptum est: 'Mentita est iniquitas sibi', libet paululum
because written it-is lied has iniquity to-itself it-pleases a-little
immorari et, quemadmodum tunc mentita sit sibi iniquitas,
to-linger and how then lied has to-itself iniquity
explicare. Heverardus haud secus Gislebertum a regis fide
to-unfold Everard not otherwise Gislebert from of-the-king fidelity
seiungere valuit, donec regem eum se facturum promisit.
to-separate was-able until king him himself about-to-make he-promised
Gislebertus autem Heinricum hac arte decipere voluit, ut,
Gislebert moreover Henry by-this art to-deceive wished that
dum suo adiutorio regem devinceret, ipsum deponeret
when by-his help the-king he-should-conquer him he-should-depose
sibique regni solium obtineret. Verum Heverardus
and-for-himself of-the-kingdom the-throne he-should-obtain but Everard
longe aliter disposuerat. Voluit enim, si regem posset
far otherwise had-arranged he-wished for if the-king he-could
devincere, utrosque regno privare sibique usurpare,
to-conquer both of-the-kingdom to-deprive and-for-himself to-usurp
quemadmodum ex verbis ipsius, quae paulo antequam
as from the-words his which a-little before
moreretur uxori suae dixit, conicere possumus. Quam dum
he-died to-wife his he-said to-conjecture we-can whom while
foveret in sinu: 'Iucundare', inquit, 'in gremio comitis, brevi
he-cherished in his-bosom be-merry he-says in the-lap of-a-count shortly
laetatura in amplexibus regis'. Quod non ita accidisse et
about-to-rejoice in the-embraces of-a-king which not so to-have-happened and
iniquitatem sibi mentitam esse tempestas indicat praesens.
iniquity to-itself to-have-lied to-be the-season shows present
24 Igitur, ut praefati sumus, huiusmodi promissione animatus,
therefore as said-before we-have by-such promise animated
immo deceptus collecto exercitu cum Gisleberto pariter atque
nay deceived gathered the-army with Gislebert together and

Heverardo regi praeparant bellum. Quos contra rex
Everard for-the-king they-prepare war whom against the-king
properat laetus, non eorum multitudine territus, sed de Dei
hastens glad not their by-multitude terrified but on of-God
pietate confisus. Sed ut scias, quam facile est Deo in
the-mercy relying but that you-may-know how easy it-is for-God in
paucis plures vincere, et quod quisquam 'in abundantia virtutis
few many to-conquer and that anyone in the-abundance of-strength
suae non salvabitur', audi antiquum a Domino renovatum
his not shall-be-saved hear an-ancient by the-Lord renewed
miraculum. Regis milites supra Rhenum ad locum vocabulo
miracle of-the-king soldiers upon the-Rhine to a-place by-name
Bierzuni pervenerant Rhenique alveum transire iam
Birten had-come and-of-the-Rhine the-channel to-cross already
coeperant ignorantes, quod Heinricus cum praefatis comitibus
had-begun not-knowing that Henry with the-aforesaid counts
tanta eis vicinitate esset iam proximus. Perpauci denique
in-such to-them nearness was already nearest very-few finally
e navibus egressi vix equos ascendere seseque armis
from the-ships gone-out hardly horses to-mount and-themselves with-arms
indui poterant, cum praenominatorum legiones non nuntiantur
to-clothe could when of-the-aforenamed the-legions not are-announced
properantes, sed intuitu ipso cernuntur praesentes. Tali
hastening but by-the-sight itself are-seen present with-such
igitur sese sunt mutuo sermone adgressi: 'Fluminis huius,
therefore themselves they-have mutual with-discourse addressed of-river this
ut cernitis, magnitudo socios nostros nobis succurrere nosque
as you-see the-greatness companions our us to-help and-us
etiam, quamvis volentes, illô redire non sinit; nec clam nobis
also although willing thither to-return not allows nor hidden from-us
est, quam ridiculum nostris praesertim sit nacionibus fortes
is-it how ridiculous to-our especially it-is nations brave

viros se ostibus tradere et non resistendo mortem
men themselves to-the-enemy to-hand-over and not by-resisting death
fugere vitamque sempiternis obprobriis comparare. Quamquam
to-flee and-life with-everlasting reproaches to-buy although
enim evadendi, quae nonnumquam hostibus obest, oblata
for of-escaping which sometimes the-enemy hinders the-offered
desperatio et supplicandi sempiternum obprobrium pugnandi
despair and of-supplicating the-everlasting reproach of-fighting
nobis fiduciam praestent, ea tamen est, quae nos praesertim,
to-us confidence may-provide that yet is which us especially
veritatis scilicet ac iustitiae causa, pugnare compellit. Si
of-truth namely and of-justice for-the-sake to-fight compels if
enim terrestris domus nostra resistendo iniustitiae dissolvatur,
for earthly house our by-resisting to-injustice be-dissolved
aeternam non manu factam recipiemus in caelis'. His
an-eternal not by-hand made we-shall-receive in the-heavens these
itaque dictis accensi hostes inter cursu praepeti transeunt.
and-so words inflamed the-enemy among in-a-course swift they-pass
Rex denique tantam suorum constantiam non sine divino
the-king finally such of-his-men constancy not without divine
instinctu esse considerans, quoniam fluvio intercedente
impulse to-be considering since the-river intervening
corporali praesentia subvenire suis non poterat, recordatus
by-bodily presence to-help his-men not he-could remembering
populi Domini, qui repugnantes sibi Amalechitas orationibus
of-the-people of-the-Lord who the-resisting it Amalekites by-the-prayers
Moysi servi Dei devicerat, protinus de equo descendit
of-Moses the-servant of-God had-conquered at-once from his-horse got-down
seseque cum omni populo lacrimas fundens ante victoriferos
and-himself with all the-people tears shedding before the-victory-bearing
clavos manibus domini et salvatoris nostri Iesu Christi adfixos
nails to-the-hands of-the-Lord and savior our Jesus Christ fixed

suaeque lanceae inpositos in orationem dedit; quantumque
and-on-his lance placed in prayer gave and-how-much
iusti viri, secundum beati sententiam Iacobi, tunc valeret
of-the-just man according-to of-blessed the-sentence James then availed
oratio, res manifesta probavit. Eo namque orante, cum ex
the-prayer the-thing manifest proved him for praying when of
suis nullus occumberet, hostes sunt omnes in fugam conversi,
his-men none fell the-enemy were all to flight turned
nonnullique eorum, cur fugerent, poenitus ignorabant, quoniam
and-some of-them why they-fled wholly knew-not since
quidem prae paucitate sese insequentes hostes videre non
indeed for fewness themselves pursuing the-enemy to-see not
poterant. Caesis igitur plurimis Heinricus vehementer in
they-could slain therefore very-many Henry vehemently on
brachio est percussus, et quamquam loricae triplicis
the-arm was struck and although of-the-mail-coat triple
fortitudo ad carnem usque ensis aciem non admitteret,
the-strength to the-flesh all-the-way of-the-sword the-edge not admitted
pondere tamen percussionis acerbae brachium est adeo in
by-the-weight yet of-the-blow bitter the-arm was so-much into
livorem conversum, ut nullis medicorum curis ita mederi
a-bruise turned that by-no of-physicians cares so to-be-healed
posset, ne recurrente anno dolorem permagnum sentiret.
it-could that-not returning the-year a-pain very-great he-should-feel
Unde et multo post huius facinoris occasione ipsum fassi
whence also long after of-this deed by-the-occasion him they-confessed
sunt hominem exivisse. Sed quia lanceae ipsius sanctae
have the-man to-have-departed but because of-the-lance itself holy
memoriam fecimus, hic, qualiter ad eum pervenerit, inseramus.
memory we-made here how to him it-came let-us-insert

The lance, wrought with crosses from Christ's nails, passed from Samson to Rudolf of Burgundy, and Henry won it by threatening war; by it he always put his enemies to flight, and he left it to his son. Liutprand explains Otto's victory by the doubting Thomas: as Thomas's doubt made the resurrection certain, so the victory of a few by prayer shows how dear Otto is to God.

25 Burgundionum rex Rodulfus, qui nonnullis annis Italicis
of-the-Burgundians king Rudolf who for-some years over-the-Italians
imperavit, lanceam illam a Samson comite dono accepit.
ruled lance that from Samson count as-a-gift received
Erat enim exepta ceterarum specie lancearum, novo
it-was for apart-from of-the-other the-appearance lances in-a-new
quodam modo novaque elaborata figura, habens iuxta
certain way and-new wrought shape having beside
lumbum medium utrobique fenestras. Haec pro pollicibus
the-loin middle on-each-side windows these for thumbs
perpulcrae duae acies usque ad declivum medium lanceae
very-beautiful two edges all-the-way to the-slope middle of-the-lance
extenduntur. Hanc igitur Constantini Magni, sanctae filii
extend this therefore of-Constantine the-Great of-holy the-son
Helenae, vivificae crucis inventricis, fuisse adfirmant.
Helena of-the-life-giving cross the-finder to-have-been they-affirm
Quae media in spina, quam lumbum superius nominavi,
which middle in the-spine which the-loin above I-named
ex clavis manibus pedibusque domini et redemptoris
from the-nails to-the-hands and-feet of-the-Lord and redeemer
nostri Iesu Christi adfixis cruces habet. Heinricus itaque
our Jesus Christ fixed crosses has Henry and-so
rex, ut erat Dei timens totiusque religionis amator, audito
king as he-was God fearing and-of-all religion a-lover heard

Rodulfum tam inaestimabile donum habere caeleste nuntiis
Rudolf so inestimable a-gift to-have heavenly messengers
directis temptavit, si praemiis aliquibus id posset adquirere
sent tried whether by-rewards some it he-could to-acquire
sibique adversus visibiles atque invisibiles hostes arma
and-for-himself against visible and invisible enemies arms
invictissima triumphumque perpetuum praeparare. Quod cum
most-invincible and-triumph perpetual to-prepare which when
rex Rodulfus modis omnibus se numquam hoc acturum
king Rudolf in-ways all himself never this about-to-do
ediceret, rex Heinricus, quia mollire hunc muneribus non
declared king Henry because to-soften him with-gifts not
potuit, minis terrere magnopere curavit. Omne quippe
he-could with-threats to-terrify greatly took-care all indeed
regnum eius caede atque incendiis se depopulaturum
kingdom his with-slaughter and with-burnings himself about-to-ravage
esse promisit. Quia vero, quod petebatur, munus erat, quo
to-be he-promised because but what was-being-sought the-gift was by-which
caelestibus terrea Deus coniunxerat, lapis scilicet angularis
to-the-heavenly the-earthly God had-joined the-stone namely corner
faciens utraque unum, Rodulfi regis cor emollivit iustoque
making both one of-Rudolf king the-heart softened and-to-the-just
regi iusta iuste petenti cominus tradidit. Neque enim
king just-things justly seeking in-person handed-over nor for
pace praesente simultati locus erat. Nam et eo, qui his
with-peace present for-rivalry room was for also he who by-these
crucifixus est, a Pilato ad Herodem properante, facti sunt
crucified was from Pilate to Herod hastening made were
amici in illa die, qui prius inimici erant ad invicem. Quanto
friends on that day who before enemies were to one-another with-how-great
autem amore rex Heinricus praefatum inaestimabile donum
moreover love king Henry the-aforesaid inestimable gift

acceperit, cum in nonnullis rebus tum in hoc praesertim
received as-well in some things as in this especially
claruit, quod non solum eo dantem se auri argentique
shone that not only with-it giving him of-gold and-of-silver
muneribus, verum etiam Suevorum provinciae parte non
with-gifts but also of-the-Swabians of-the-province with-a-part not
minima honoravit. Deus autem, qui, quo quisque quid
least he-honored God moreover who with-what each-one anything
animo peragat, intuetur, non muneris quantitatis, sed bonae
in-mind carries-out regards not of-the-gift of-the-quantity but of-good
voluntatis inspector ac retributor, quanta ob praelibatam
will the-inspector and rewarder how-great for the-aforementioned
rem mercede aeterno in saeculo pium donaverit regem,
thing reward the-eternal in age pious he-has-given the-king
indiciis quibusdam hoc etiam in tempore prodidit, dum
by-signs certain this also in time revealed while
contra se insurgentes hoc victorifero praeeunte signo semper
against him rising-up this victory-bearing going-before sign always
hostes terruit atque fugavit. Hac igitur occasione, immo
the-enemy he-terrified and put-to-flight by-this therefore occasion nay
Dei voluntate sanctam rex Heinricus rompheam adeptus
of-God by-the-will the-holy king Henry sword obtained
est, quam filio suo, de quo inpraesentiarum nobis sermo
has which to-son his about whom at-present to-us the-discourse
est, decedens cum regno simul hereditario dereliquit. Qui
is departing with the-kingdom together hereditary left who
quanta donum inaestimabile veneratione coluerit, victoria
with-how-great the-gift inestimable veneration honored the-victory
non solum indicat praesens, verum divinorum, ut prompturi
not only shows present but of-divine as about-to-set-forth
sumus, admiranda largitio munerum. His itaque perterritis
we-are the-wonderful bounty of-gifts these and-so terrified

atque fugatis rex rediit non tantum de victoria laetus,
and put-to-flight the-king returned not so-much of the-victory glad
quantum de divina miseratione magnificus.
as from divine mercy magnificent
Libet autem paululum immorari et, quod non fortuitu, 26
it-pleases moreover a-little to-linger and that not by-chance
sed Deo disponente haec ita acciderint, enarrare. Quod
but God disposing these-things thus happened to-relate which
luce nobis clarius constabit, si domini et salvatoris
than-light to-us clearer shall-be-plain if of-the-Lord and savior
nostri Iesu Christi apparitionem, quae post resurrectionem
our Jesus Christ the-appearance which after the-resurrection
mulieribus ac discipulis facta est, in medium proferamus.
to-the-women and disciples made was into the-midst we-bring-forward
Fidem Petri, dilectionem Iohannis supra pectus magistri
the-faith of-Peter the-love of-John upon the-breast of-his-master
in cena recumbentis Thomas firmiter noverat, eos ad
at supper reclining Thomas firmly knew them to
sepulcrum cucurrisse nichilque praeter linteamina invenisse
the-tomb to-have-run and-nothing except the-linen-cloths to-have-found
audierat, angelorum etiam visiones, qui eum vivere assererent,
he-had-heard of-angels also visions who him to-live asserted
mulieribus apparuisse cognoverat. Sed esto; forte enim
to-the-women to-have-appeared he-had-learned but be-it perhaps for
mulierum infirmitatem considerans mulieribus non credebat.
of-women the-weakness considering the-women not he-believed
Cedo, inquam, sancte Thoma, si duobus discipulis ad
tell-me I-say holy Thomas if the-two disciples to
castellum Emmaus properantibus, quibus non solum apparuit,
the-village Emmaus hastening to-whom not only he-appeared
sed et scripturas, quae de se erant, apperuit, immo
but also the-scriptures which about himself were opened nay

etiam secundum consuetum morem panem benedixit, fregit
even according-to the-accustomed manner bread blessed broke
ac dedit, non credis, omnibus tamen condiscipulis, quibus
and gave not you-believe all yet the-fellow-disciples to-whom
ianuis clausis apparuit, quid fidem non adhibere contendis?
with-the-doors shut he-appeared why faith not to-apply do-you-strive
Meministine, inquam, eundem dominum et praeceptorem
do-you-remember I-say the-same Lord and teacher
tuum, cui te commoriturum promittebas, ante passionem
your to-whom you about-to-die-with promised before the-passion
haec omnia praedixisse? Ait namque: 'Ecce ascendimus
these all to-have-foretold he-says for behold we-go-up
Iherosolimam, et consummabuntur omnia, quae scripta sunt
to-Jerusalem and shall-be-accomplished all-things which written are
per prophetas de filio hominis. Tradetur enim
by the-prophets about the-son of-man he-shall-be-handed-over for
gentibus et illudetur et flagellabitur et conspuetur, et
to-the-gentiles and shall-be-mocked and shall-be-scourged and shall-be-spat-on and
postquam flagellaverint, occident eum, et die tertia
after they-shall-have-scourged they-shall-kill him and on-day the-third
resurget'. Cur itaque eum resurrexisse dubitas, cum gentibus
he-shall-rise why and-so him to-have-risen do-you-doubt when to-the-gentiles
traditum, flagellatum, consputum, crucifixum, sicut praedixerat,
handed-over scourged spat-on crucified as he-had-foretold
videas? Haud ab re est, quod Deum tuum manibus
you-see not beside the-point it-is that God your with-hands
propriis tractare contendis. Ipse namque rex noster, qui
your-own to-handle you-strive he-himself for king our who
ante secula operatus est salutem in medio terrae, qui novit
before the-ages worked has salvation in the-midst of-the-earth who knows
omnia, antequam fiant, multos praeviderat hoc errore
all-things before they-happen many had-foreseen by-this error

perituros, ut est misericors et clemens: 'Infer', ait, 'digitum
about-to-perish as he-is merciful and clement put-in he-says finger
huc et mitte manum tuam in latus meum et noli esse
here and put hand your into side my and do-not be
incredulus, sed fidelis'. Ἐξαύδα δε Θομὰ ἁγιε, exauda de
faithless but faithful speak-out but Thomas holy speak-out but
thoma agie, quod est confitere autem Thoma sancte, et tua
Thomas holy which is confess moreover Thomas holy and by-your
dubietate omne nostrum exclude amphibolum. 'Dominus',
doubting all our shut-out ambiguity Lord
inquit, 'meus et Deus meus'. Ô ambiguum omni laude
he-says my and God my O ambiguity of-all praise
dignissimum! Ô dubium cunctis seculis praedicandum! Si tu
most-worthy O doubt to-all ages to-be-proclaimed if you
non dubitares, non ego tam firmiter crederem. Si mulierum
not had-doubted not I so firmly would-believe if of-the-women
credentium, si condiscipulorum fidem haereticis, qui non
believing if of-the-fellow-disciples the-faith to-the-heretics who not
vero corpore dominum nostrum Iesum Christum resurrexisse
in-true body the-Lord our Jesus Christ to-have-risen
latrabant, diceremus, multa nobis argumenta diabolica
barked we-told many to-us arguments with-diabolical
calliditate opponerent. Sed cum dubitantem Thomam corpus
cunning they-would-oppose but when doubting Thomas the-body
tractasse, vulnerum cicatrices tetigisse ac mox dubitacione
to-have-handled of-the-wounds the-scars to-have-touched and soon doubt
remota Deum et dominum exclamasse audiunt, qui prius
removed God and Lord to-have-cried-out they-hear who before
erant multisoni, mox ut pisces videntur insoni, cognoscentes,
were many-voiced soon as fish seem voiceless knowing
quia et vera caro est, quae tractari potuit, et Deus, qui
that both true flesh it-is which to-be-handled could and God who

clausis ianuis intravit. Et quod Thomas dubitavit, non fors,
with-shut doors entered and that Thomas doubted not chance
sed divina dispensacio fuit. Sic itaque, sic, rex piissime,
but divine dispensation was so and-so so king most-pious
insperata ob militum paucitatem victoria divinae consilium
the-unhoped-for for of-the-soldiers the-fewness victory of-divine the-counsel
providentiae fuit, volens mortalibus indicare, quam carus
providence was wishing to-mortals to-show how dear
Deo esset, qui orando tam inmensum cum paucissimis
to-God was he-who by-praying so immense with very-few
triumphum optinere promeruit. Forte enim, immo certe et
a-triumph to-obtain deserved perhaps for nay certainly also
tu prius ignorabas, quam carus Deo existeres, quod post
you before did-not-know how dear to-God you-stood which afterward
te cognoscere fecit, cum tanta victoria honoravit. Sancti
you to-know he-made when with-such victory he-honored holy
etenim viri, quid virtutis habeant et quanti in conspectu
for men what of-virtue they-have and how-much in the-sight
divini examinis consistant, nisi probaverint, ignorant, quod
of-divine judgment they-stand unless they-have-proved know-not which
ad Abraham filium immolare cupientem ex verbis angeli
to Abraham his-son to-sacrifice desiring from the-words of-the-angel
dicentis colligere possumus; ait enim: 'Ne extendas
saying to-gather we-can he-says for do-not stretch-out
manum tuam super puerum neque facias illi quicquam;
hand your upon the-boy nor do to-him anything
nunc cognovi, quod timeas Dominum', id est te ipsum
now I-have-known that you-fear the-Lord that is you yourself
et posteros cognoscere feci. Noverat enim Dominus,
and posterity to-know I-have-made had-known for the-Lord
et antequam filium immolare vellet, quanta Abraham
even before his-son to-sacrifice he-wished with-how-great Abraham

patriarcha sanctus eum caritate diligeret; sed is qui diligebat,
the-patriarch holy him charity loved but he who loved
quam perfecte diligeret, non novit, donec per dilecti
how perfectly he-loved not knew until through of-the-beloved
filii immolationem apertissime claruit. Possumus et hanc
son the-sacrifice most-openly it-shone we-can also this
ex beati Petri promissione sententiam approbare. 'Domine',
from of-blessed Peter the-promise opinion to-approve Lord
inquit, 'tecum paratus sum et in carcerem et in mortem
he-says with-you ready I-am also into prison and into death
ire'. Cui Dominus: 'Dico tibi', ait, 'Petre, non cantabit in
to-go to-whom the-Lord I-tell you he-says Peter not shall-crow in
hac nocte gallus, donec ter abneges nosse me'. O sancte
this night the-cock until three-times you-deny to-know me O holy
Petre, melius quam tu te novit, qui fecit te. Tu profiteris,
Peter better than you you knew he-who made you you profess
quemadmodum putas, veram fidem; sed qui, priusquam
as you-think the-true faith but he-who before
fiant, omnia novit, ter se negaturum te esse praedixit.
they-happen all-things knows thrice him about-to-deny you to-be foretold
Huius quippe sententiae non inmemor, cum te postmodum,
of-this indeed sentence not unmindful when you afterward
an se diligeres, interrogaret, magis ipsi credens quam tibi
whether him you-loved he-asked more him believing than yourself
amorem tuum hac temperata responsione declarasti dicens:
love your by-this tempered answer you-declared saying
'Domine, tu omnia nosti, tu scis, quia amo te. Conscientia
Lord you all-things know you know that I-love you in-conscience
quidem mea plus diligo te quam me, nisi quia te diligendo
indeed my more I-love you than me except that you by-loving
diligo me. Utrum autem, ut existimo, ita sese veritas habeat,
I-love me whether moreover as I-think so itself the-truth has

ipse quam ego melius nosti, qui me, ut essem, fecisti
you-yourself than I better you-know who me that I-should-be made
et, ut te diligerem, amore iustissimo inflammasti.' Bone
and that you I-should-love with-love most-just inflamed good
itaque rex, non ob tuam hoc, sed ob infirmorum actum
and-so king not for your this but for of-the-weak done
est fidem, qui victoriam non nisi in multitudine putant
it-was the-faith who victory not except in multitude think
consistere et humanas res non nisi fortuitu provenire.
to-consist and human affairs not except by-chance to-come-about
Scimus enim, quia, et si cum XII milibus legionibus
we-know for that even if with 12 thousand legions
transires ac victoriam optineres, non eam tibi, sed
you-crossed and victory obtained not it to-yourself but
Domino imputares. Et haec ratio est, quod te in paucis
to-the-Lord you-would-ascribe and this the-reason is that you in few
orando voluit vincere, ut et in se sperantes ad amorem
by-praying he-wished to-conquer that both in him those-hoping to love
sui magis accenderet et, te quantum diligeret, nescientibus
of-him more he-might-kindle and you how-much he-loved to-the-unknowing
indicaret. Sed his obmissis ad narrandi seriem redeamus.
he-might-show but these omitted to of-narrating the-thread let-us-return

Otto besieges Breisach, where Everard has placed a garrison, and Archbishop Frederick of Mainz persuades many bishops to desert him by night. His men urge retreat, but Otto answers like Judas Maccabeus that it is better to die for justice than live by flight. A rich count demands the abbey of Lorsch as the price of his loyalty, and Otto refuses before the whole army to give holy things to dogs, so the count falls at his feet. Liutprand praises a constancy that defeats invisible enemies too.

Est in Alsaciae partibus castellum Brisicau patrio 27
there-is in of-Alsace the-parts a-castle Breisach by-the-native
vocabulo nuncupatum, quod et Rhenus in modum insulae
name called which both the-Rhine in the-manner of-an-island
cingens et naturalis ipsa loci asperitas munit. In hoc
surrounding and natural itself of-the-place the-roughness fortifies in this
itaque suorum Heverardus posuerat multitudinem militum,
and-so of-his-men Everard had-placed a-multitude of-soldiers
quorum terrore non solum magnam sibi partem praefatae
whose by-terror not only a-great for-himself part of-the-aforesaid
provinciae vendicabat, verum etiam circumcirca regis fideles
province he-claimed but also round-about of-the-king the-faithful
misere laniabat. Rex denique bonus non quae sua,
wretchedly tore the-king finally good not the-things-which his
sed quae suorum erant, considerans collecto exercitu
but the-things-which of-his-men were considering gathered the-army
in Alsatiam, ut praefatum castrum obsideat, proficiscitur.
into Alsace that the-aforesaid fort he-might-besiege sets-out
Cumque eodem pervenisset, Frederici, qui cum eo tunc
and-when thither he-had-come of-Frederick who with him then
simul aderat, Magontinae sedis archiepiscopi, exhortatione
together was-present of-Mainz of-the-see archbishop at-the-exhortation
episcoporum quamplurimi defixis noctu per girum amissis
of-the-bishops very-many fixed by-night through the-circle lost

tentoriis coeperunt regem deserere clamque ad civitates
the-tents began the-king to-desert and-secretly to cities
proprias fugere, Frederico cum eodem subdole permanente.
their-own to-flee Frederick with the-same craftily remaining
Quod regis milites considerantes huiusmodi regem sunt
which of-the-king the-soldiers considering of-this-kind the-king they-have
sermone adgressi: 'Consule, rex, saluti tuae loca haec
with-discourse addressed consult king for-safety your places these
deserens et Saxoniam petens. Nec clam te est, quod
deserting and Saxony seeking nor hidden from-you is-it that
Heinricus frater tuus bellum tibi inferre conetur, qui, si tam
Henry brother your war on-you to-make tries who if so
parvas tecum esse copias senserit, ita irruet repentinus, ut
small with-you to-be the-forces he-shall-perceive so shall-rush sudden that
nec fugiendi quidem sit locus. Melius est igitur reparato
not of-fleeing even there-may-be room better it-is therefore restored
exercitu iterum redire quam aut mori misere aut turpiter
the-army again to-return than either to-die wretchedly or shamefully
fugere'. Quibus rex inperterritus, ut quondam suis
to-flee to-whom the-king undaunted as once to-his-men
Iudas cognomento Machabeus: 'Nolite', ait, 'nolite talia
Judas by-surname Maccabeus do-not he-says do-not such-things
loqui, et si adpropinquavit tempus nostrum, moriamur in
speak and if has-drawn-near time our let-us-die in
virtute et non inferamus crimen gloriae nostrae. Melius est
valor and not let-us-bring a-charge on-glory our better it-is
enim pro vera iustitia mortem subire quam eam fugiendo
for for true justice death to-undergo than it by-fleeing
turpiter vivere. Denique si illos Dei ordinationi resistentes,
shamefully to-live finally if them of-God to-the-ordinance resisting
auxilium a multitudine sola et non a Deo sperantes
help from multitude alone and not from God hoping

iniuste preliari, mori et ad inremissibiles herebi poenas
unjustly to-fight to-die and to the-unremitting of-Erebus penalties
descendere iuvat, nichilominus nos immo acrius pugnare
to-descend pleases nevertheless us nay more-keenly to-fight
delectet, qui et preliari pro iusticia securi et preliando,
let-it-delight who both to-fight for justice secure and in-fighting
si sors carnis universae acciderit, securius possumus mori.
if the-lot of-flesh all should-befall more-securely can die
Nam pro iusticia pugnaturos ob copiarum paucitatem
for for justice about-to-fight because-of of-forces fewness
ante pugnae experimentum terga dare Deo diffidere est'.
before of-battle the-trial the-back to-give God to-distrust is
His dictis non solum eos a fugae proposito revocavit,
these said not only them from of-flight the-purpose he-called-back
verum etiam, ut vehementer pugnarent, protinus animavit.
but also that vehemently they-should-fight at-once he-inspired
Unum autem, unum, pater egregie, velim diligenter 28
one moreover one father outstanding I-would-wish carefully
adtendas; quod cum audieris, plus eum animi passiones
you-heed which when you-shall-have-heard more him of-the-mind the-passions
quam hostes vicisse miraberis. Huiusmodi vincere
than the-enemy to-have-conquered you-shall-wonder of-this-kind to-conquer
adversarios permittente Deo nonnumquam et peccatores
adversaries permitting God sometimes also sinners
possunt; inconcussam autem animi tenere virtutem, prosperis
can unshaken moreover of-mind to-hold virtue in-prosperity
scilicet non elevari et adversis non frangi perfectorum
namely not to-be-lifted-up and in-adversity not to-be-broken of-the-perfect
solummodo est. Audi igitur in tanta hac fluctuante procella,
only is hear therefore in so-great this tossing storm
quo fidei supra petram, quae Christus est, sit ardore
with-what of-faith upon the-rock which Christ is he-is with-ardor

fundatus. Comes quidam tunc praedives secum erat, cuius
founded a-count a-certain then very-rich with-him was whose
multitudo militum regis aciem condecorabat. Hic
multitude of-soldiers of-the-king the-battle-line adorned this-one
itaque videns quam plurimos ex regis acie desertores ac
and-so seeing how very-many from of-the-king the-line deserters and
transfugas fieri, non interiorem, sed exteriorem considerans
turncoats becoming not the-inner but the-outer considering
hominem tacitus haec secum volvere coepit: 'Quicquid
man silent these-things with-himself to-turn-over began whatever
regem in hac turbatione constitutum petiero, sine dubio
the-king in this turmoil placed I-shall-have-asked without doubt
impetrabo, praesertim cum et acre bellum nobis immineat,
I-shall-obtain especially since both a-sharp war for-us impends
ac, ne se deseram, timeat'. Nuntiis itaque directis regi
and lest him I-desert he-fears messengers and-so sent to-the-king
supplicat, ut abbatiam quandam Laresheim dictam praediis
he-entreats that an-abbey a-certain Lorsch called in-estates
ditissimam ei concedat, cuius possessionibus, quod sibi
very-rich to-him he-grant whose by-possessions what to-himself
deerat ac militibus suis, ministrare praevaleat. Rex autem
was-lacking and to-soldiers his to-supply he-might-be-able the-king moreover
columbina non solum, sed ut erat vipperina calliditate
with-dovelike not only but as he-was with-viperine cunning
suffarcinatus, non hoc, quod portenderet, animadvertere
stuffed not this what it-portended to-notice
minime potuit, unde et huiusmodi nuntiis apologeticum
by-no-means could whence also such to-the-messengers an-answer
dedit: 'Illi, quid super hac re sentiam, verbis ipse potius
gave to-him what about this matter I-think in-words I-myself rather
explicabo quam nuntiis'. Quod, qui hos direxerat,
shall-unfold than through-messengers which he-who them had-sent

audiens inmensa est animi affectus laeticia sperans se,
hearing with-immense was of-mind affected joy hoping himself
quod poposcerat, impetrasse. Unde et morae inpaciens
what he-had-demanded to-have-obtained whence also of-delay impatient
regem adit eumque sententiam super hac re promere
the-king he-approaches and-him his-judgment about this matter to-bring-forth
postulavit. Cui rex populo circumstante: 'Oboedire',
demanded to-whom the-king the-people standing-around to-obey
inquit, 'magis oportet Deo quam hominibus. Quis enim
he-says more one-must God than men who for
sanum sapiens ignorat te haec non petitionis humilitate,
sound thinking not-knows you these-things not of-petition with-the-humility
sed comminationis auctoritate dixisse? Scriptum est: Nolite
but of-threat with-the-authority to-have-said written it-is do-not
sanctum dare canibus. Quod quamvis a doctoribus spiritaliter
the-holy give to-dogs which although by the-doctors spiritually
intellegendum esse praedicetur, ego tamen satis me dare
to-be-understood to-be it-is-preached I yet quite myself to-give
sanctum canibus censeo, si monasteriorum praedia, quae a
the-holy to-dogs judge if of-monasteries the-estates which by
religiosis viris Deo sunt militantibus tradita, tulero
religious men to-God are to-those-serving handed-over I-shall-have-taken
seculoque militantibus dedero. Tibi vero tam procaciter
and-to-the-world to-those-serving shall-have-given to-you but so insolently
iniusta petenti sub testimonio totius populi nec hoc
unjust-things asking under the-testimony of-the-whole people neither this
nec aliud te umquam a me accepturum esse testificor. Si
nor other you ever from me about-to-receive to-be I-testify if
cordi tibi est ceteris cum infidelibus avolare, quanto citius,
at-heart to-you it-is the-other with faithless-ones to-fly-off by-how-much quicker
tanto melius'. His auditis, quia facies mentis est speculum,
by-so-much better these heard because the-face of-the-mind is the-mirror

cordis verecundiam vultus rubore nudavit concitusque regis
of-heart the-shame of-face by-the-blush he-laid-bare and-hurriedly of-the-king
ad pedes corruens se peccasse, se graviter deliquisse
at the-feet falling himself to-have-sinned himself gravely to-have-transgressed
confessus est. Perpende itaque, qua constantia adhleta
confessed he-has consider and-so with-what constancy the-athlete
Dei non solum visibiles, verum etiam invisibiles conterat
of-God not only visible but also invisible crushes
hostes; antiquus etenim hostis non eum se nocuisse
enemies the-ancient for enemy not him himself to-have-harmed
putavit, dum tot fortissimos principes contra illum surgere
thought while so-many most-brave princes against him to-rise
persuasit, fratrem etiam, qui ei regnum auferret,
he-persuaded the-brother also who from-him the-kingdom should-take-away
instigavit, quoniam exteriora haec esse damna cognovit; unde
he-incited since outward these to-be losses he-knew whence
et praefatum comitem ad expetendam sanctorum hereditatem
also the-aforesaid count to seeking-out of-the-saints the-inheritance
incitavit, quatinus eo rex velocius offensam Dei
he-incited so-that by-as-much the-king more-swiftly the-offense of-God
incurreret, quo servorum Dei stipendia suis iniuste militibus
should-incur as of-the-servants of-God the-stipends to-his unjustly soldiers
traderet. Verum quia nequivit, nunc, quantum rex
he-should-hand-over but because he-could-not now how-much the-king
sanctus ob temptationis huius constantiam Deo pro se
holy for of-temptation this the-constancy God for him
pugnante creverit, in medium proferamus.
fighting grew into the-midst let-us-bring-forward

Uto and Conrad the Wise, though outnumbered, follow Everard and Gislebert across the Rhine at Andernach and catch them at their meal. Everard is killed and Gislebert drowns, and Otto dismounts to give thanks at the news. Frederick of Mainz is captured and later restored, and Henry comes barefoot to Otto, who spares him but keeps him under guard.

David sanctus ex persona Domini dicit: 'Si populus meus 29
David holy from the-person of-the-Lord says if the-people my
audisset me, Israhel si in viis meis ambulasset, pro nichilo
had-heard me Israel if in ways my had-walked for nothing
forsitan inimicos eorum humiliassem et super tribulantes
perhaps the-enemies their I-would-have-humbled and upon those-troubling
eos misissem manum meam'. Quod in hoc rege Dominum
them would-have-sent hand my which in this king the-Lord
audiente atque in viis eius ambulante esse completum,
hearing and in ways his walking to-be fulfilled
quam prompturus sum, ratio declarabit. Heverardus atque
which about-to-set-forth I-am the-reason shall-declare Everard and
Gislebertus audito regem in Alsatia esse, quoniam neminem, qui
Gislebert heard the-king in Alsace to-be since no-one who
eis resisteret, verebantur, permagno collecto exercitu Rheni
them might-resist they-feared a-very-great gathered army of-the-Rhine
alveum ad Andernacha pertranseunt regisque fideles
the-channel at Andernach cross and-of-the-king the-faithful
circumquaque demoliri procedunt. Huto sane, Herimanni
on-every-side to-demolish proceed Uto indeed of-Hermann
Suevorum ducis frater, necnon et Chuonradus cognomento
of-the-Swabians duke the-brother and also Conrad by-surname
Sapiens, quos superius regi diximus esse fideles, ipsis
the-Wise whom above to-the-king we-said to-be faithful those-very

in partibus erant. Sed quia eorum copiae istorum copiis
in parts were but because their forces of-these-men than-the-forces
multo inferiores extiterant, his occurrere trepidabant. Verum
much inferior had-stood-forth these to-meet they-trembled but
iubente Deo non locutionis, sed inspirationis modo hos
ordering God not of-speech but of-inspiration in-the-manner these
multis cum spoliis redeuntes ponê secuntur. Cumque paululum
many with spoils returning behind they-follow and-when a-little
processissent, quidam eis flens et eiulans obviavit sacerdos.
they-had-advanced a-certain to-them weeping and wailing met priest
Qui rogatus ab eis, unde iret, cur fleret, 'ab istis', inquit,
who asked by them whence he-came why he-wept from these he-says
'praedonibus ego venio, qui paupertatis meae erumnam uno,
robbers I come who of-poverty my the-hardship by-one
quod solum possederam, iumento ablato dilatarunt'. Quod
which alone I-had-possessed beast taken-away have-increased which
cum praefati Huto ac Chuonradus audirent, si Gislebertum
when the-aforesaid Uto and Conrad heard whether Gislebert
atque Heverardum viderit, examussim sunt sciscitati. Quo
and Everard he-had-seen exactly have inquired he
respondente, quoniam 'cum praeda cunctis poene trans Rhenum
answering that with the-booty all almost across the-Rhine
missis ipsi soli cum eorum electis militibus, quod nec
sent they-themselves alone with their picked soldiers which may-it-not
bene vertat, capiunt cibum', tanta celeritate super eos irruunt,
well turn-out are-taking food with-such speed upon them they-rush
ut, si videres, non eos currere, sed diceres transvolare.
that if you-saw not them to-run but you-would-say to-fly-across
Quid plura? Heverardus gladiis occiditur, Gislebertus Rheni
what more Everard by-swords is-slain Gislebert of-the-Rhine
undis submergitur, quas, quoniam prae multitudine sorbere
in-the-waves is-drowned which since for the-multitude to-swallow

non potuit, anima recedente defecit. Ceterorum vero nemo
not he-could the-soul withdrawing he-failed of-the-rest but no-one
aufugiit, qui non aut vivus ligaretur aut gladio truncaretur.
escaped who not either alive was-bound or by-the-sword was-cut-down
Vides igitur, quemadmodum super regem tribulantes Dominus
you-see therefore how upon the-king those-troubling the-Lord
manum miserit, quem in viis suis ambulasse cognovit.
(his)-hand has-sent whom in ways his to-have-walked he-knew
Dum haec aguntur, rex in Alsatia horum inscius mori 30
while these-things are-done the-king in Alsace of-these unaware to-die
potius quam adversarios fugere est paratus. Accidit itaque,
rather than the-adversaries to-flee is ready it-happened and-so
ut, quemadmodum ei moris erat, mane primo,
that as for-him of-custom was in-the-morning first
quoniam ecclesia longe aberat, super equum conscenderet
since the-church far was-distant upon a-horse he-mounted
eoque se munitum orationibus iret, cum directis
and-to-it himself fortified with-prayers was-going with directed
procul obtutibus obviare sibi nimia celeritate hominem
far gazes to-meet him with-excessive speed a-man
vidit, quem ilico nuntium esse intellexit. Et quia is,
he-saw whom at-once a-messenger to-be he-understood and because he
qui venerat, prospera nuntiabat, mox ut regem vidit,
who had-come prosperous-things was-announcing soon as the-king he-saw
subsecuturam laeticiam quodam proludio hilaritatis ostendit.
the-about-to-follow joy by-a-certain prelude of-cheerfulness he-showed
Hoc igitur inditio quia secunda eum, qui aderant,
by-this therefore sign because favorable-things him who were-present
nuntiare intellegunt, arrectis auribus, ut eum audiant,
to-announce they-understand with-pricked-up ears that him they-may-hear
currunt. Quibus moderata huius processio, capillorum ac
they-run to-whom measured of-this-one the-advance of-the-hair and

vestium compositio, honesta salutatio annus erat. Vidit
of-the-clothes the-arrangement honorable the-greeting a-year was saw
rex populum anhelare et, quod dicendi moram nuntius
the-king the-people to-pant and that of-speaking the-delay the-messenger
faceret, graviter ferre. 'Age', ait, 'ad quod missus es fare,
made heavily to-bear come he-says to what sent you-are speak
praeposterato ordine rem prius inice, circumstantium metus
with-reversed order the-thing first bring-in of-the-bystanders the-fear
adime eorumque animos gaudio exple; dehinc per longa
take-away and-their minds with-joy fill thence through long
exorsa et rhetorum prohoemia salutationibus nos demulce.
openings and of-rhetoricians proems with-greetings us soothe
Non qualiter, sed quid dicas, praesens tempus expectat.
not how but what you-say the-present time awaits
Malumus enim rusticana simplicitate laetari quam Tulliana
we-prefer for with-rustic simplicity to-rejoice than with-Tullian
facetia periclitari'. His auditis Heverardum atque Gislebertum
wit to-be-endangered these heard Everard and Gislebert
hominem exutos esse primo impetu nuntiavit, volentemque,
the-man put-off to-be at-the-first onset he-announced and-wishing
qualiter hoc acciderit, prosequi rex manu compescuit ac
how this had-happened to-go-on the-king with-his-hand checked and
mox de equo descendit seseque cum lacrimis Deo gratias
soon from his-horse got-down and-himself with tears to-God thanks
agens in orationem dedit. Qua expleta surrexit atque itinere,
giving to prayer gave which completed he-rose and by-the-route
quo coeperat, Deo se commendaturum ad ecclesiam tendit.
which he-had-begun God himself about-to-commend to the-church heads
31 Hoc in tempore Bertaldus Bagoariorum dux, Arnulfi ducis
this in time Berthold of-the-Bavarians duke of-Arnulf duke
frater, vir strenuus, regis partibus toto favebat
the-brother a-man vigorous of-the-king the-side with-all favored

conamine. Volens itaque rex, ut quemadmodum tribulationis
effort wishing and-so the-king that as of-the-tribulation
praeteritae, ita et laeticiae praesentis fieret particeps,
past so also of-the-joy present he-should-become a-sharer
sequenti die, quanta erga eum Dominus beneficia egerit,
on-the-following day how-great toward him the-Lord kindnesses had-done
nuntiis directis apperuit. Cui etiam in augmentum laeticiae,
messengers sent he-revealed to-whom also for the-increase of-joy
quoniam coniugali minime tenebatur vinculo, demandavit
since by-the-conjugal by-no-means he-was-held bond he-sent-word
ac iuramento promittere fecit, ut, si sororem suam, scilicet
and by-oath to-promise made that if sister his namely
Gisleberti uxorem, habere posset, eam illi coniugio copularet;
of-Gislebert the-wife to-have he-could her to-him in-marriage he-would-join
quod si minus procederet, ipsius Gisleberti ex eadem sorore
and if less it-went-forward of-Gislebert himself from the-same sister
genitam, quam poenes se habuerat, fere iam nubilem,
the-begotten-daughter whom with himself he-had-had almost already marriageable
maritali ei coniugio traderet. Quo audito Bertaldus
in-marital to-him marriage he-would-hand-over which heard Berthold
inmenso est gaudio affectus elegitque potius nondum nubilem
with-immense was joy affected and-chose rather the-not-yet marriageable
filiam expectare quam matrem, quae iam nupserat, tollere.
daughter to-await than the-mother who already had-married to-take
Fridericus denique Magontiacensis ecclesiae archiepiscopus, 32
Frederick finally of-Mainz of-the-church archbishop
cuius consilio episcoporum nonnulli regem dimiserant, ut,
whose by-counsel of-the-bishops some the-king had-left that
quam occulte gestabat, iam infidelitas cunctis patéret,
which secretly he-was-carrying now disloyalty to-all should-be-plain
decem ferme ante praenominatorum diebus interitum regem
ten about before of-the-aforenamed days the-death the-king

deseruit ac Magontiam concitus venit, in qua nichil moratus
deserted and to-Mainz hurriedly came in which nothing having-delayed
Metensem urbem adit. Disposuerat enim regis frater
of-Metz city he-approaches had-arranged for of-the-king the-brother
Heinricus redeuntibus Heverardo atque Gisleberto cum
Henry returning Everard and Gislebert with
eodem Friderico isthic exercitum congregare sicque regi
the-same Frederick there an-army to-gather and-thus for-the-king
in Alsatia degenti bellum maximum praeparare. Cumque
in Alsace staying war the-greatest to-prepare and-when
illó pervenisset nominatus archiepiscopus, insperate et
thither he-had-come the-named archbishop unexpectedly and
non oportune nuntii ei occurrunt, qui iam praelibatos
not opportunely messengers him meet who already the-aforementioned
principes morte intercedente non vivere dicunt. Quo audito
princes death intervening not to-live say which heard
animo consternatus, quid faceret, penitus ignorabat.
in-mind dismayed what he-should-do wholly knew-not
33 Rex interea Alsatiam deserens Franciam occupabat. Cuius
the-king meanwhile Alsace leaving Franconia was-occupying of-whom
ob metum Magontiae cives redeuntem archiepiscopum intra
for fear of-Mainz the-citizens the-returning archbishop within
urbis moenia non suscipiunt. Unde factum est, ut non
of-the-city the-walls not receive whence done it-was that not
multo post a regis fidelibus captus et ante sui praesentiam
long after by of-the-king the-faithful taken and before his the-presence
adductus custodiae sit in Saxonia traditus. In qua aliquandiu
brought to-custody he-was in Saxony handed-over in which for-some-time
commoratus miseratione regis dignitati est pristinae restitutus.
having-stayed by-the-mercy of-the-king to-dignity was former restored

Heinricus denique regis, fratris scilicet sui, terrore 34
Henry finally of-the-king of-brother namely his by-terror
exanimatus in castellum vocabulo Capraemons ingeniis non
unnerved into the-castle by-name Chèvremont by-devices not
solum hominum, verum natura ipsa munitum ingredi voluit.
only of-men but by-nature itself fortified to-enter wished
Quod soror eius, vidua videlicet Gisleberti, praenoscens non
which the-sister his the-widow namely of-Gislebert foreknowing not
solum, ne id facere posset, prohibuit, verum huiusmodi
only lest it to-do he-might-be-able forbade but of-this-kind
eum sermonibus convenit: 'Pró! non tete miseriarum mearum
him with-words addressed O not you of-miseries my
taedet, quas coniuge interempto perpetior, nisi etiam meis te
it-wearies which husband slain I-endure unless also my you
in municionibus occludendo regis iram super regionem
in fortifications by-shutting-up of-the-king the-wrath upon region
hanc velut aquam effundas? Non feram, non patiar, non
this like water you-pour-out not I-shall-bear not I-shall-suffer not
sinam; non tanta vecordia michi innata inerit, ut ex
I-shall-allow not such madness in-me innate shall-be-in-me that from
meis incommodis tua compares commoda'.
my disadvantages your you-may-procure advantages
His Heinricus auditis, cum aliud quid faceret ignoraret, 35
these Henry heard since anything-else what he-should-do he-knew-not
adsumptis secum, quorum praesidio iuvaretur, quibusdam
taken with-himself whose by-protection he-might-be-helped certain
episcopis die quadam nudis pedibus regis ad pedes
bishops on-day a-certain with-bare feet of-the-king at the-feet
ipso ignorante pervenit supplexque misericordiam imploravit.
he-himself unaware arrived and-suppliant mercy implored
Cui rex: 'Indignum', inquit, 'facinus tuum misericordiam
to-whom the-king unworthy he-says crime your mercy

non meretur. Verum quia video te humiliatum coram me,
not deserves but because I-see you humbled before me
non inducam malum super te'. Iussit itaque eum rex ad
not I-shall-bring evil upon you ordered and-so him the-king to
palatium suum, quod in Francia in loco, qui Ingelenheim
palace his which in Franconia in the-place which Ingelheim
dicitur, constitutum est, proficisci sollertique illum vigilantia
is-called established is to-set-out and-with-skillful him watchfulness
custodiri, quoad irae remota paululum aegritudine, quid
to-be-guarded until of-wrath removed a-little the-sickness what
super eo faceret, sapientum consilio definiret.
about him he-should-do of-the-wise by-counsel he-should-determine

BOOK V

I · LIUDOLF'S MARRIAGE AND ANSCAR SENT TO SPOLETO

Hermann of Swabia adopts Liudolf as his son-in-law and heir. A solar eclipse marks Ramiro's victory over Abd al-Rahman, and a comet foretells famine in Italy. Hugh harasses Alberic's Rome. Hugh, fearing Anscar, makes him marquis of Spoleto to keep him far away, then sends Sarlio to buy the Spoletans' loyalty. Wigbert urges Anscar to wait for more men; Arcod mocks Wigbert as Terence's timid Chremes, and Liutprand calls Arcod the braggart Thraso.

Factum est, ut post mortem Heverardi atque Gisleberti 1
done it-was that after the-death of-Everard and of-Gislebert
necnon et Heinrici fratris regis inclusionem, concurrentibus
and also of-Henry the-brother of-the-king the-confinement running-together
undique ad regem congratulationis causa proceribus,
from-all-sides to the-king of-congratulation for-the-sake the-nobles
veniret et vir ditissimus Suevorum dux Herimannus, qui
there-came also a-man very-rich of-the-Swabians duke Hermann who
post congratulationis satietatem talibus regem est adgressus
after of-congratulation the-fill with-such the-king has addressed
sermonibus: 'Non clam domino meo est, cum praediorum
words not hidden from-lord my it-is as-well of-estates
latitudine tum pecuniarum inmensitate praedivitem me
by-the-breadth as of-moneys by-the-immensity very-rich me
absque liberis esse; nec est praeter unam parvulam gnatam,
without children to-be nor is-there except one little daughter
qui mearum rerum me decedente heres existat. Placeat
who of-my of-goods me departing heir may-stand let-it-please
itaque domino meo regi filium suum parvulum Liutolfum
and-so lord my king son his little Liudolf
mihi adoptare in filium, quatinus unicae filiae meae maritali
for-me to-adopt as son so-that to-only daughter my in-marital

commertio sotiatus me migrante mearum fiat rerum
intercourse allied me passing-away of-my he-may-become goods
hereditate magnificus'. Hoc itaque quia placuit regi
by-the-inheritance magnificent this and-so because pleased the-king
consilium, quod poposcerat, sine dilatione complevit.
the-counsel what he-had-demanded without delay he-fulfilled

2 Hoc in tempore, ut ipsi bene nostis, sol magnam
this in time as you-yourselves well know the-sun a-great
et cunctis terribilem passus est eclipsin sexta feria,
and to-all terrible suffered has eclipse on-the-sixth day
hora diei tertia, qua etiam die Abderahamen, rex
at-the-hour of-the-day third on-which also day Abd-al-Rahman king
vester, a Radamiro christianissimo rege Galiciae in bello est
your by Ramiro the-most-Christian king of-Galicia in war was
superatus. Sed et in Italia octo continuis noctibus mirae
overcome but also in Italy eight continuous nights of-wondrous
magnitudinis cometa apparuit, nimiae proceritatis igneos ex
greatness a-comet appeared of-excessive length fiery from
sese radios fundens, subsecuturam non multo post famem
itself rays pouring the-about-to-follow not long after famine
portendens, quae magnitudine sui misere vastabat Italiam.
portending which by-the-greatness its wretchedly laid-waste Italy

3 Ea siquidem tempestate Hugone rege turpiter expulso
at-that indeed season Hugh king shamefully expelled
Albericus, ut praefati sumus, Romanae civitatis monarchiam
Alberic as said-before we-have of-the-Roman city the-monarchy
obtinebat. Quem rex Hugo quotannis graviter opprimebat,
held whom king Hugh yearly heavily pressed
gladio et igne, quae poterat, universa consumens,
by-sword and fire the-things-which he-could all consuming
adeo ut civitates praeter Romam, in qua ipse consederat,
so-much that the-cities except Rome in which he-himself had-settled

omnes auferret. Sed et ipsam sine dubio cum depopulando
all he-took-away but also it without doubt as-well by-ravaging
tum cives muneribus corrumpendo conquireret, nisi
as the-citizens with-gifts by-corrupting he-would-have-won unless
oculta iusti Dei illi sententia prohiberet.
the-hidden of-just God to-him sentence forbade
Per id tempus Berengarius atque Anscarius in Italia fratres 4
through that time Berengar and Anscar in Italy brothers
clarebant uno quidem patre, Adelberto scilicet, Eporegiae
shone by-one indeed father Adalbert namely of-Ivrea
civitatis marchione, sed non una matre progeniti. Berengarium
city marquis but not by-one mother begotten Berengar
scilicet, uti praefati sumus, Gisla, Berengarii regis filia,
namely as said-before we-have Gisela of-Berengar king the-daughter
Anscarium autem Hermengarda, Adelberti Tusciae provinciae
Anscar moreover Ermengard of-Adalbert of-Tuscany province
marchionis, quam ex Berta regis Hugonis habuerat filia,
of-the-marquis whom from Bertha of-king Hugh he-had-had the-daughter
peperit. Quorum Berengarius consiliis providus, ingenio callidus,
bore of-whom Berengar in-counsels foresighted in-wit shrewd
Anscarius vero ad quodlibet facinus promptus. Quem et rex
Anscar but to any-whatever crime ready whom also king
Hugo nimis suspectum habuerat, ne se occideret ac regnum
Hugh too-much suspected had-held lest him he-kill and the-kingdom
sibimet optineret. Consilio itaque accepto, quia Tedbaldus
for-himself obtain counsel and-so taken because Theobald
marchio hominem exierat, Spoletinorum eum ac Camerinorum
marquis the-man had-put-off of-the-Spoletans him and of-the-Camerini
constituit marchionem, quatinus eo securius viveret,
he-established marquis so-that by-so-much more-securely he-might-live
quo longius hunc ab sese sequestratum esse cognosceret.
by-as-much farther him from himself sequestered to-be he-knew

Quo dum profectus esset, uti animi inpaciens erat, quicquid
whither when set-out he-had as in-mind impatient he-was whatever
ex rege mali cogitando mens ei suggesserat, rerum signis
from the-king of-evil by-thinking the-mind to-him had-suggested of-things by-signs
continuo declarabat. Quod Hugonem minime latuit.
at-once he-declared which Hugh by-no-means escaped-the-notice-of
Igitur quod remedium huic aegritudini dare posset, excogitans
therefore what remedy to-this sickness give he-could devising
Sarlionem ad se, Burgundionum ex gente progenitum,
Sarlio to himself of-the-Burgundians from the-race begotten
advocat. Cui et ait: 'Camerinorum ac Spoletinorum
he-summons to-whom also he-says of-the-Camerini and of-the-Spoletan
hominum non est mihi fides incognita. Est enim calamo
men not is to-me the-faith unknown it-is for to-a-reed
similis, cui si innisus fuerit homo, perforabit manum
like on-which if leaning shall-have-been a-man it-shall-pierce hand
eius. Vade itaque atque a me suscepta pecunia mentes eorum
his go and-so and from me received the-money the-minds their
corrumpe, ab Anscarii dilectione eos amove tibique coniunge.
corrupt from of-Anscar the-love them remove and-to-yourself join
Te nemo est qui possit facere cum melius tum commodius.
you no-one there-is who could to-do as-well better as more-conveniently
Habes enim illius Tedbaldi mei nepotis defuncti optimi
you-have for of-that Theobald my nephew dead the-best
marchionis uxorem, cuius auxiliis fretus cunctus ad te veniet
marquis the-wife whose by-help relying all to you shall-come
populus'. Profectus denique, haud secus atque rex praedixerat,
the-people having-set-out finally not otherwise than the-king had-foretold
Camerinorum ac Spoletinorum populus egit. Congregata
of-the-Camerini and of-the-Spoletans the-people acted gathered
itaque multitudine ad eam, in qua Anscarius erat, civitatem
and-so a-multitude to that in which Anscar was city

properare festinat. Quod cum audisset Anscarius, antesignanum
to-hasten he-hurries which when had-heard Anscar standard-bearer
suum nomine Wikbertum talibus adorsus est verbis:
his by-name Wigbert with-such addressed has words

'Sarlius inbellis, multorum fisus in armis,
Sarlio unwarlike of-many relying on the-arms
Pugnaturus adit, cui fortes pectore et armis
about-to-fight comes whom brave in-breast and in-arms
Occursare decet bellumque inferre cruentum.
to-run-to-meet it-befits and-war to-bring bloody
Lecta manus iuvenum bellisque exercita multis,
a-chosen band of-young-men and-in-wars practiced many
Est huc tendentem quae me comitata patronum,
is hither making-for which me accompanying its-patron
Protinus adveniet, fulvo decorata metallo'.
at-once shall-arrive with-tawny adorned metal

His auditis Wikbertus, ut erat vir non audatia solum, 6
these heard Wigbert as he-was a-man not on-boldness only
verum etiam scientia fretus: 'Mane', ait, 'ac copias, prout
but also on-knowledge relying stay he-says and forces as
potis est, congregato. Pergrave est enim exercitui cum tam
possible it-is gather very-grave it-is for for-an-army with so
paucis numeroso occurrere. Sed et si, quibuscum res
few a-numerous-one to-meet but also if those-with-whom the-affair
agitur, animadvertis, heroes sunt haud segnius atque nos
is-waged you-notice heroes they-are not more-slothfully than we
bello assuefacti'. Iam Anscarius Wikberto recta sibi consulenti
to-war accustomed already Anscar with-Wigbert rightly to-him advising
conivere decreverat directisque usquequaque nuntiis congregare
to-agree had-decided and-sent everywhere messengers to-gather

exercitum cuperat, cum Arcodus quidam, Burgundionum
an-army had-desired when Arcod a-certain of-the-Burgundians
sanguine ortus, Wikbertum ista consulentem dictis
from-blood sprung Wigbert these-things advising with-words
increparat amaris: 'Chremeti', inquit, 'similis es, qui ob
had-rebuked bitter to-Chremes he-says like you-are who for
Thrasonis metum Thaidi de occludendis aedibus consilium,
of-Thraso fear to-Thais about shutting the-house counsel
quo advocatos sibi a foro duceret, dedit; quem
whereby advocates for-himself from the-forum he-might-bring gave whom
cum Thais prohiberet: Quod cum salute tua, ait, cavere
when Thais forbade what with safety your she-says to-guard-against
possis, stultum admittere est. Malo ego nos prospicere
you-can foolish to-admit-it is I-prefer I us to-look-ahead
quam ulcisci accepta iniuria!' 'Optime', Wikbertus, 'inquam,
than to-avenge received the-injury best Wigbert I-say
Thrasonis fecisti memoriam militis, qui rabido prius ore
of-Thraso you-made mention of-the-soldier who with-raging first mouth
desaeviens, cum ad rem veram ventum esset, Syriscum
raving when to the-thing real come it-had-been Syriscus
in dextro cornu, Symalionem in sinistro constituens ipse
on the-right wing Simalio on the-left placing he-himself
sibi locum post principia elegit. Burgundiones enim
for-himself a-place behind the-front-ranks chose the-Burgundians for
garrulos esse, voraces ac inbelles, nullus, qui eos noverit,
chatterers to-be gluttonous and unwarlike none who them knows
ambigit. Sed et quam perfortiter saepe feceris, quas
doubts but also how very-bravely often you-have-done which
fugiendo declinasti, cicatrices indicant corporis'.
by-fleeing you-avoided the-scars show of-the-body

Anscar attacks with a few men; his horse falls into a ditch on top of him, and the enemy kill him with missiles. Hugh asks the emperor Romanus for Greek-fire ships against Fraxinetum. Hugh plans to blind Berengar of Ivrea, but the boy Lothar warns him, and Berengar flees through the Alps to Hermann in Swabia; Liutprand curses the mountains that let him pass.

Huiusmodi itaque Anscarius atque Wikbertus exitati dictis, 7
by-such and-so Anscar and Wigbert roused words
ubi Sarlium esse cum multis audiunt, quam mox cum paucis
when Sarlio to-be with many they-hear as soon with few
properare contendunt. Sex Sarlius acies habuerat, quarum
to-hasten they-strive six Sarlio battle-lines had of-which
tres contra Anscarii unam, in qua et ipse erat, direxerat.
three against of-Anscar one in which also he-himself was he-had-directed
Ipse vero fluvio interiecto rei spectans eventum cum
he but the-river lying-between of-the-affair watching the-outcome with
tribus remanserat. Verebatur enim, quod nec tanta eum
three had-remained he-feared for that not-even so-great him
quiret multitudo defendere, si suos in eum Anscarius
could a-multitude to-defend if his-men upon him Anscar
posset obtutus inducere. Haud mora, bellum incipitur, in quo
could his-gaze to-bring-in no delay the-battle is-begun in which
Arcodus, quia fugerat, non videtur, Wikbertus vero mortetenus
Arcod because he-had-fled not is-seen Wigbert but mortally
vulneratur, quoniam quidem mori satius quam fugere duxit.
is-wounded since indeed to-die better than to-flee he-reckoned
His itaque omnibus ab Anscario debellatis duas ei iterum
these and-so all by Anscar defeated two to-him again
Sarlius acies mittit, una solummodo secum retenta.
Sarlio battle-lines sends one only with-himself kept

Cumque Anscarius, quis suorum in campo occumberet, vellet
and-when Anscar which of-his-men on the-field fell wished
inquirere, non suo tantum quam aliorum sanguine
to-inquire not with-his-own so-much as of-others blood
cruentatus Wikbertus ei occurrit. Cui et ait: 'Duae
bloodied Wigbert him meets to-whom also he-says two
contra nos acies perpulchre armis instructae adveniunt, quas
against us battle-lines very-beautifully in-arms equipped are-coming which
te potius declinare quam expectare etiam atque etiam rogo.
you rather to-avoid than to-await again and again I-ask
Arcodus, ut ipse bene nosti, pugnae huius incentor, qualiter
Arcod as you-yourself well know of-battle this the-instigator how
aufugerit, vides. Ego vero positus in extremis non cogito iam
he-has-fled you-see I but placed in extremity not think now
de pugna, sed misericordem Deum rogo pro anima, ne mihi
about the-battle but merciful God I-ask for (my)-soul lest to-me
inputet, quae ob dilectionem tui hodie commerui crimina,
he-impute which for love of-you today I-have-incurred crimes
hominum neci dando corpora multa'. His expletis expiravit.
of-men to-death by-giving bodies many these completed he-expired
8 Collectis itaque Anscarius quos potuit, duabus phalangis
gathered and-so Anscar whom he-could the-two phalanxes
occurrens eas inter furibundus insiliit stragemque innumeram
meeting them among raging leaped and-slaughter countless
dedit. Comes quidam Hatto nomine duabus illis praeerat
gave a-count a-certain Hatto by-name over-the-two those commanded
aciebus, qui hac Anscario occurrit fidutia, quoniam
battle-lines who with-this Anscar met confidence since
confracta iam lancea solam in manu eius viderat hastam.
broken already his-lance only in hand his he-had-seen the-shaft
Quem dum intuitus esset Anscarius: 'Tune és', infit, 'qui
whom when looked-at had Anscar you are he-begins who

contempto crucis et sanctorum iuramento periurus in
scorned of-the-cross and of-the-saints the-oath perjured in
nomine Dei tui me tuum dominum deseruisti et ad
the-name of-God your me your lord deserted and to
vulpem Sarlium transfuga ac desertor abisti?
the-fox Sarlio a-turncoat and deserter went-off

Esse aliquos manes et subterranea regna,
to-be some shades and underground realms
in quibus periuri puniantur, Cocitum etiam et
in which the-perjured are-punished Cocytus also and
Stigio ranas in gurgite nigras,
in-the-Stygian frogs in the-whirlpool black

qui usque modo somniasti, re ipsa quam mox experire'!
who until now have-dreamed in-the-thing itself how soon experience
Haec dicens hastam, quam sine ferro gestabat, per
these-things saying the-shaft which without iron he-carried through
os illius valide iaciens sanguine cerebroque respersam
the-mouth his strongly hurling with-blood and-brain sprinkled
per occipitium eduxit enseque abstracto, quoniam
through the-back-of-the-head he-drew-out and-the-sword drawn since
multi super se irruerant, dimicare naviter coepit. Cumque
many upon him had-rushed to-fight vigorously he-began and-when
nullis sibi amminiculantibus omnium poene hostium solus
none for-him supporting of-all almost the-enemy alone
impetum sustineret huc illucque discurrens, sonipes, quo
the-onset he-sustained hither and-thither running-about the-steed on-which
insederat, adeo in scrobem cecidit, ut collo supposito
he-had-sat so-much into a-ditch fell that with-its-neck put-under
pedibusque sursum erectis eo usque super Anscarium iaceret,
and-its-feet upward raised so long upon Anscar it-lay

donec ab irruentibus hostibus directis missilibus occideretur.
until by the-rushing-in enemy directed missiles he-was-killed
Quo mortuo Sarlius marca secure potitur, et rex Hugo
whom dead Sarlio of-the-march securely takes-possession and king Hugh
gaudio inmenso afficitur.
with-joy immense is-affected
9 Dum haec aguntur, montana, quibus ab occidua seu
while these-things are-done the-mountains by-which on the-western or
septentrionali Italia cingitur parte, a Saracenis Fraxenetum
northern Italy is-girded side by the-Saracens Fraxinetum
inhabitantibus crudelissime depopulantur. Quam ob rem
inhabiting most-cruelly are-ravaged which for reason
Hugo rex consilio accepto nuntios Constantinopolim dirigit
Hugh king counsel taken messengers to-Constantinople directs
rogans imperatorem Romanōn, ut naves sibi Greco cum
asking the-emperor Romanus that ships to-him Greek with
igne transmittat, quas chelándia patrio sermone Greci
fire he-send which chelandia in-native speech the-Greeks
cognominant. Hoc autem eo fecit, ut, dum terrestri itinere
call this moreover for-this he-did that while by-land route
ipse ad destruendum tenderet Fraxinetum, eam partem,
he to destroying should-make-for Fraxinetum that part
qua mari munitur, Greci navigio obsiderent eorumque
where by-sea it-is-fortified the-Greeks with-the-fleet should-besiege and-their
naves exurerent ac, ne ab Hispania victus eis aut
ships should-burn and lest from Spain food to-them or
copiarum subsidia provenirent, diligentissime providerent.
of-forces reinforcements should-come most-carefully should-provide
10 Interea Berengarius, memorati frater Anscarii atque
meanwhile Berengar of-the-mentioned the-brother of-Anscar and
Eporegiae civitatis marchio, occulte quaedam in regem
of-Ivrea city marquis secretly certain-things against the-king

coepit moliri. Quod dum regi compertum esset, simulata
began to-contrive which when to-the-king discovered it-was with-feigned
benivolentia dissimulataque ira, dum ad sese veniret, luce
goodwill and-dissembled anger when to him he-should-come of-light
eum privare disposuit. Filius denique eius nomine Lotharius
him to-deprive he-arranged son finally his by-name Lothar
rex et ipse parvus ac necessariarum sibi rerum adhuc
king also he-himself small and of-necessary to-himself things still
ignarus, quoniam consiliis his interfuit, celare quemadmodum
ignorant since at-counsels these he-was-present to-conceal as
puer haud potuit, verum destinato ad Berengarium nuntio,
a-boy not could but sent to Berengar a-messenger
quod sibi pater suus facere vellet, apperuit. Hoc denique
what to-him the-father his to-do wished revealed this finally
Berengarius ut audivit, Italiam quam mox deseruit ac per
Berengar when he-heard Italy as soon deserted and by
montem Iovis in Sueviam ad Herimannum ducem properavit;
the-mount of-Jove into Swabia to Hermann duke hastened
uxorem vero suam Willam per aliam viam ad eandem
wife but his Willa by another route to the-same
provinciam venire praecepit. Quae tempore digressionis suae
province to-come ordered who at-the-time of-departure her
per montem Avium feta partuique vicina qualiter
through the-mount of-the-Birds pregnant and-to-childbirth near how
montes tam asperos atque invios transire pedibus poterit,
mountains so rough and pathless to-cross on-foot she-could
satis nequeo mirari, nisi quia fortunas omnes adversas
enough I-cannot to-wonder-at except that the-fortunes all adverse
mihi fuisse certo scio. Sed âh! quam sibi decipulam
to-me to-have-been certainly I-know but ah what for-himself a-snare
Lotharius praeparaverit, futuri ignarus videre non potuit.
Lothar prepared of-the-future unaware to-see not he-could

Dum enim Berengario consuluit, qui regnum et vitam
while for for-Berengar he-took-thought who the-kingdom and life
auferret sibimet, praeparavit. Imprecor itaque non Lothario,
would-take-away for-himself he-prepared I-curse and-so not Lothar
qui puericiae levitate peccavit idque postmodum amare
who of-boyhood by-the-levity sinned and-this afterward bitterly
poenituit, verum montibus illis crudelibus contra insuetum
repented but mountains those cruel against the-unaccustomed
omnibus morem facile eis iter praebentibus. Itaque libet
to-all custom easily to-them a-route offering and-so it-pleases
in eorum mihi nunc contumeliam exclamare:
to their for-me now insult to-cry-out

11 Improbe mons Avium, tali Neque tu nomine dignus,
wicked mount of-the-Birds of-such nor you name worthy
Conservas quia nam pestem, Nunc quam perdere possis.
you-preserve because for a-plague now which to-destroy you-could
Invius esse soles etiam, Cum sol igneus ardet,
pathless to-be you-are-wont even when the-sun fiery burns
Tempore quo Cererem messor Curva falce reposcit,
at-the-time when Ceres the-reaper with-curved sickle demands-back
Tempore quo radiis Phoebi Cancri sidus adurit.
at-the-time when with-rays of-Phoebus of-the-Crab the-star scorches
Pessime nunc es inaudito Rigidae tempore brumae
most-wicked now you-are unheard-of of-stiff in-the-time winter
Pervius, atque utinam possent Mea nunc vota valere,
passable and would-that could my now prayers prevail
Protinus in baratrum avulsus Aliis montibus isses.
at-once into the-abyss torn-away to-other mountains you-would-have-gone
Ecce Berengarium servat, Sinit et tramite recto
behold Berengar it-preserves allows and by-a-path straight

Mons transire Iovis, mirum haud, Suetus perdere sanctos
the-mount to-cross of-Jove wondrous not accustomed to-destroy the-holy
Et servare malos, vocitant Heu quos nomine Mauros,
and to-preserve the-wicked they-call alas whom by-name Moors
Sanguine qui gaudent hominum, Iuvat et vivere rapto.
in-blood who rejoice of-men it-pleases and to-live by-plunder
Quid loquar? ecce Deum cupio Tete fulmine aduri,
what shall-I-say behold God I-desire you by-thunderbolt to-be-burned
Conscissusque chaos cunctis Fias tempore cuncto.
and-rent chaos for-all may-you-become in-time all

III · OTTO SHELTERS BERENGAR AND THE GREEK FIRE

Hermann brings Berengar to Otto, who refuses Hugh's gold to abandon him and offers his own to reconcile them. Romanus asks Hugh for a daughter for his grandson, and since the Greeks care only who the father was, he accepts a bastard and sends the ships. Liutprand tells, as his stepfather told it, how Romanus repaired fifteen chelandia, mounted fire-throwers on every side, and burned Igor's fleet of Rus' before Constantinople, beheading the prisoners before Hugh's envoy.

Igitur Herimannus, Suevorum dux, venientem ad se 12
therefore Hermann of-the-Swabians duke coming to himself
Berengarium benigne suscepit eumque magno cum honore
Berengar kindly received and-him great with honor
ante piissimi regis Ottonis praesentiam duxit. Quem
before of-the-most-pious king Otto the-presence led whom
quanta rex devotione susceperit quantisque muneribus
with-how-great the-king devotion received and-with-how-great gifts
donaverit quantumque honoraverit, stilus meus se scribere
presented and-how-much honored pen my itself to-write

posse diffidit. Verum quantum poterit designatis, cuius
to-be-able distrusts but as-much-as it-shall-be-able marked of-what
sanctitatis quantaeque humanitatis rex fuerit, quantae
holiness and-of-how-great humanity the-king was of-how-great
etiam improbitatis Berengarius extiterit, facile prudens lector
also wickedness Berengar stood-forth easily the-prudent reader
animadvertere poterit.
to-notice shall-be-able

13 Rex Hugo audita Berengarii fuga nuntios suos regi
king Hugh heard of-Berengar the-flight messengers his to-king
Ottoni dirigit, secundum voluntatis suae deliberationem auri
Otto directs according-to of-will his the-deliberation of-gold
argentique copiam se ei daturum, si Berengarium
and-of-silver an-abundance himself to-him about-to-give if Berengar
non susciperet eique amminicula non conferret, promittens.
not be-received and-to-him supports not conferred promising
Quibus rex apologéticum huiusmodi dedit: 'Berengarius
to-whom the-king an-answer of-this-kind gave Berengar
non ob domini vestri deiectionem, verum, si potis est, ob
not for of-lord your the-overthrow but if possible it-is for
reconciliationem nostram adiit pietatem. Qua in re si
reconciliation our has-approached piety which in matter if
amminiculari illi poenes dominum vestrum potero, gazas
to-support him with lord your I-shall-be-able the-treasures
a se mihi promissas non solum non suscipio, verum meam
by him to-me promised not only not I-take but mine
illi libentissime tribuo; Berengario vero seu cuilibet nostrae
to-him most-gladly I-grant to-Berengar but or to-anyone of-our
pietatis clementiam imploranti mandasse subsidium non
piety the-clemency imploring to-have-ordered help not
praebere summae dementiae est'. Perpende itaque, quanta
to-provide of-the-highest madness is consider and-so with-how-great

eum rex pius caritate dilexerit, qui promissam non solum
him the-king pious charity loved who the-promised not only
non accipere, sed propriam pro illo pecuniam voluit dare.
not to-accept but his-own for him money wished to-give
Dum haec aguntur, Constantinopolitanus imperator cum 14
while these-things are-done the-Constantinopolitan emperor with
regis Hugonis nuntiis suos pariter dirigit, mandans naves
of-king Hugh the-messengers his-own together directs sending-word ships
et omnia, quae desideraret, se ei daturum, si nepoti
and all-things which he-should-desire himself to-him about-to-give if to-grandson
suo parvulo sibi omonimo, Constantini filio, filiam suam
his little to-himself namesake of-Constantine the-son daughter his
coniugem daret. Constantinum autem Leonis imperatoris,
as-wife he-should-give Constantine moreover of-Leo emperor
non ipsius Romanû filium dico. Tres enim hi cum Romanô
not of-the-same Romanus son I-say three for these with Romanus
simul imperitabant, eiusdem videlicet duo filii Stephanus atque
together were-ruling of-the-same namely two sons Stephen and
Constantinus, necnon et hic, de quo in praesentiarum
Constantine and also this-one about whom at present
sermo est, Constantinus Leonis imperatoris filius. Rex itaque
the-discourse is Constantine of-Leo emperor the-son king and-so
Hugo hac audita legatione directis iterum nuntiis Romanô
Hugh this heard embassy sent again messengers to-Romanus
denuntiat se legitimo ex coniugio filiam non habere, sed si
announces himself legitimate from marriage a-daughter not to-have but if
ex concubinarum filiabus vellet, egregiam ei forma posse
from of-the-concubines daughters he-wished outstanding to-him in-form to-be-able
praestare. Et quoniam Greci in genéseos nobilitate non, quae
to-offer and since the-Greeks in of-birth nobility not what
mater, sed quis fuerit pater, inquirunt, imperator Romanós
the-mother but who was the-father ask the-emperor Romanus

naves continuo Greco cum igne praeparavit, munera maxima
ships at-once Greek with fire prepared gifts very-great
misit atque, ut illam nepoti suo coniungeret, mandavit.
sent and that her to-grandson his he-should-join sent-word
Verum quoniam meus vitricus, vir gravitate ornatus, plenus
but since my stepfather a-man with-gravity adorned full
sapientia, regis Hugonis fuerat nuntius, pigrum michi non
of-wisdom of-king Hugh had-been the-messenger irksome to-me not
hic sit inserere, quid eum de imperatoris sapientia et
here let-it-be to-insert what him about of-the-emperor the-wisdom and
humanitate et, qualiter Rusios vicerit, audivi saepius dicere.
humanity and how the-Rus he-conquered I-heard often to-say
15 Gens quaedam est sub aquilonis parte constituta, quam a
a-people a-certain is under of-the-north the-part established which from
qualitate corporis Greci vocant Ρουσιος, Rúsios, nos vero
the-quality of-body the-Greeks call Rus Rus we but
a positione loci nominamus Nordmannos. Lingua quippe
from the-position of-the-place name Northmen in-tongue indeed
Teutonum nôrd aquilo, man autem dicitur homo, unde et
of-the-Germans nord north man moreover is-called man whence also
Nordmannos aquilonares homines dicere possumus. Huius
Northmen northern men to-call we-can of-this
denique gentis rex vocabulo Ínger erat, qui collectis mille
finally people the-king by-name Igor was who gathered a-thousand
et eo amplius navibus Constantinopolim venit. Quod Romanós
and it more ships to-Constantinople came which Romanus
imperator ut audivit, quoniam navalem suum exercitum
emperor when he-heard since naval his army
directum contra Saracenos et ad insularum custodiam habuit,
directed against the-Saracens and to of-the-islands the-guarding he-had
aestuari cogitationibus coepit. Cumque cogitationibus non
to-seethe with-thoughts he-began and-when with-thoughts not

paucis insomnes noctes duceret et Ínger cuncta mari vicina
few sleepless nights he-passed and Igor all-things to-the-sea near
diriperet, nuntiatum est Romano XV semifracta se
plundered it-was-announced it-was to-Romanus fifteen half-broken himself
habere chélandia, quae populus ob vetustatem sola reliquerat.
to-have chelandia which the-people for age alone had-left
Quod ut audivit, τοῦς καλαφάτας, tus calafatas, hoc est
which when he-heard the caulkers the caulkers that is
navium compositores, ad se venire praecepit, quibus et ait:
of-ships the-builders to himself to-come he-ordered to-whom also he-says
'Properantes sine dilatione ea, quae remanserant, chelándia
hastening without delay those which had-remained chelandia
praeparate. Sed et argumentum, quo ignis proicitur, non
prepare but also the-device by-which fire is-hurled not
in prora solum, verum etiam in puppi, insuper in utrisque
on the-prow only but also on the-stern moreover on both
lateribus ponite'. Compositis itaque secundum iussionem suam
sides put composed and-so according-to command his
chelandiis sapientissimos in eis viros collocat atque, ut regi
the-chelandia most-wise in them men he-places and that the-king
Íngero occurrant, denuntiat. Profecti denique, cum in pelago
Igor they-meet announces having-set-out finally when on the-sea
eos positos rex Inger aspiceret, ut vivos illos caperet,
them placed king Igor saw that alive them he-might-take
exercitui suo praecepit, et non occideret. Denique miserator
to-army his ordered and not kill finally the-pitying
et misericors Dominus, qui se colentes, se adorantes, se
and merciful Lord who him worshiping him adoring him
deprecantes non solum protegere, sed et victoria voluit
beseeching not only to-protect but also with-victory wished
honorare, ventis tunc placidum reddidit mare; secus enim
to-honor for-the-winds then calm made the-sea otherwise for

ob ignis emissionem Grecis esset incommodum. Igitur
for of-the-fire the-emission to-the-Greeks it-would-be inconvenient therefore
in Rusorum medio positi ignem circumcirca proiciunt. Quod
in of-the-Rus the-midst placed fire round-about they-hurl which
dum Rusi conspiciunt, e navibus confestim sese in mare
when the-Rus see from the-ships at-once themselves into the-sea
proiciunt eliguntque potius undis submergi quam igne
they-throw and-choose rather by-the-waves to-be-drowned than by-fire
cremari. Alii tunc loricis et galeis onerati, numquam
to-be-burned others then with-mail-coats and helmets laden never
visuri, ima pelagi petunt, nonnulli vero natantes inter
about-to-see the-depths of-the-sea seek some but swimming among
ipsos maris fluctus uruntur, nullusque die illa evasit, qui
the-very of-the-sea waves are-burned and-none on-day that escaped who
fuga sese ad terram non liberavit. Rusorum etenim naves
by-flight himself to the-land not freed of-the-Rus for the-ships
ob parvitatem sui, ubi aquae minimum est, transeunt, quod
for smallness their where of-water least is pass which
Grecorum chelándia ob profunditatem sui facere nequeunt.
of-the-Greeks the-chelandia for depth their to-do cannot
Inger ingenti cum confusione postmodum ad propria est
Igor huge with confusion afterward to his-own is
reversus; Greci vero victoria potiti vivos secum multos
returned the-Greeks but victory having-gained alive with-them many
ducentes Constantinopolim regressi sunt laeti. Quos omnes
leading to-Constantinople returned are glad whom all
Romanós in praesentia regis Hugonis nuntii, vitrici
Romanus in the-presence of-king Hugh of-the-messenger of-stepfather
scilicet mei, decollare praecepit.
namely my to-behead ordered

The Greek fire burns the Saracen fleet at Fraxinetum, but Hugh, fearing Berengar, sends the Greeks home and leaves the Saracens to guard the Alpine passes, where they kill many pilgrims; Liutprand compares Ahab sparing Ben-hadad. Berengar's man Amadeus, disguised as a beggar, sounds out the Italian princes and even takes alms from Hugh's hand. Hugh pays off the Hungarians and sends them toward Spain, and dispatches his daughter Bertha to marry the young Romanus at Constantinople.

Rex itaque Hugo congregato exercitu classibus per 16
king and-so Hugh gathered an-army the-fleets through
Tirrenum mare ad Fraxinetum directis terrestri ipse eô
the-Tyrrhenian sea to Fraxinetum directed by-the-land he-himself thither
itinere pergit. Quo dum Greci pervenirent, igne proiecto
route goes whither when the-Greeks arrived fire hurled
Sarracenorum naves mox omnes exurunt. Sed et rex
of-the-Saracens the-ships soon all they-burn but also the-king
Fraxinetum ingressus Sarracenos omnes in montem Maurum
Fraxinetum having-entered the-Saracens all into the-mount Moor
fugere compulit, in quo eos circumsedendo capere posset,
to-flee compelled in which them by-besieging to-take he-could
si res haec, quam prompturus sum, non impediret.
if the-affair this which about-to-set-forth I-am not had-hindered
Rex Hugo Berengarium, ne collectis ex Francia et ex Suevia 17
king Hugh Berengar lest gathered from Francia and from Swabia
copiis super se irrueret regnumque sibi auferret,
forces upon him he-should-rush and-the-kingdom from-him should-take-away
maxime timuit. Unde non bono accepto consilio Grecos ad
greatly feared whence not good taken counsel the-Greeks to
propria mox remisit ipseque cum Saracenis hac ratione
their-own soon sent-back and-he-himself with the-Saracens on-this reasoning

foedus iniit, ut in montibus, qui Sueviam atque Italiam
a-treaty entered that in the-mountains which Swabia and Italy
dividunt, starent, ut, si forte Berengarius exercitum ducere
divide they-should-stand that if perhaps Berengar an-army to-lead
vellet, transire eum omnimodis prohiberent. Eô vero constituti
wished to-cross him in-every-way they-should-prevent there but established
quam multorum Christianorum ad beatorum apostolorum
how of-many Christians to of-the-blessed apostles
Petri et Pauli limina transeuntium sanguinem fuderint, ille
Peter and Paul the-thresholds crossing the-blood they-shed he
solus scit numerum, qui eorum nomina scripta tenet in libro
alone knows the-number who their names written holds in the-book
viventium. Quam inique tibi, rex Hugo, regnum defendere
of-the-living how unjustly for-yourself king Hugh the-kingdom to-defend
conaris! Herodes, ne terreno regno privaretur, innocentes
try Herod lest of-the-earthly kingdom he-be-deprived innocents
multos occidit; tu, ut obtineas, nocentes et morte dignos
many killed you that you-may-hold the-guilty and of-death worthy
dimittis; atque utinam ea ratione nocentes illi tunc viverent,
you-release and would-that on-this reasoning the-guilty those then lived
ne innocentes postmodum interimerent! Puto, sed quod verius
lest the-innocent afterward they-should-slay I-think but what truer
est, credo te non legisse, immo nec audivisse, qualiter
is I-believe you not to-have-read nay nor to-have-heard how
iram Domini incurreret rex Israhel Achab, dum regem
the-wrath of-the-Lord incurred the-king of-Israel Ahab when the-king
Siriae, virum morte dignum, foederatum dimitteret Benadab.
of-Syria a-man of-death worthy allied he-released Ben-hadad
Unus enim de filiis prophetarum dixit ad Achab: ‘Haec dicit
one for of the-sons of-the-prophets said to Ahab thus says
Dominus: Quia dimisisti virum dignum morte de manu tua,
the-Lord because you-have-released a-man worthy of-death from the-hand your

erit anima tua pro anima eius et populus tuus pro populo
shall-be soul your for the-soul his and people your for the-people
eius'. Quod et factum est. Verum quantum tibi hac in re
his which also done was but how-much to-yourself this in matter
obfueris, stilus noster suis in locis oportunius enarrabit.
you-have-harmed pen our their-own in places more-fitly shall-relate
Tempore, quo Berengarius ab Italia fugiit, quendam secum 18
at-the-time when Berengar from Italy fled a-certain with-himself
Amedeus nomine militem duxit adprime nobilem et, ut
Amadeus by-name soldier he-led exceedingly noble and as
postmodum claruit, non Ulixe calliditate ac temeritate
afterward was-clear not than-Ulysses in-cunning and boldness
inferiorem. Fortissimus rex Otto cum nonnullis inpeditus rebus
inferior most-brave king Otto as-well by-some hindered affairs
tum quotannis ab Hugone rege muneribus inmensis delinitus
as yearly by Hugh king with-gifts immense soothed
Berengario copias praestare non posset, ipse, quem praefatus
to-Berengar forces to-provide not could he whom spoke-of-before
sum, Amedeus Berengarium ita convenit: 'Non clam te
I-have Amadeus Berengar thus addressed not hidden from-you
est, domine mi, quam invisum rex Hugo imperio se duro
is-it lord my how hateful king Hugh by-rule himself harsh
Italicis cunctis effecerit, praesertim cum et concubinarum
to-the-Italians all has-made especially since both of-concubines
filiis ac Burgundionibus sit dignitates largitus nec ullus
on-the-sons and the-Burgundians he-has dignities bestowed nor any
inveniatur Italicus, qui aut expulsus aut non dignitatibus
is-found Italian who either expelled or not of-dignities
omnibus sit privatus. Et quod in regem non aliquid
all has-been deprived and that against the-king not anything
moliuntur, haec causa est, quoniam quidem, quem sibi
they-contrive this the-cause is since indeed whom for-themselves

constituant principem, non habent. Si itaque nostrum
they-may-establish as-prince not they-have if and-so of-us
aliquis mutato habitu, ne agnosceretur, eô tenderet
someone changed his-dress lest he-be-recognized thither should-make-for
eorumque voluntatem inquireret, consilium nobis procul dubio
and-their will should-inquire counsel for-us beyond doubt
bonum exculperet'. Cui Berengarius: 'Te', inquit, 'cum
good would-hammer-out to-whom Berengar you he-says as-well
commodius tum nemo potest facere melius'. Igitur Amedeus
more-conveniently as no-one can to-do better therefore Amadeus
mutato habitu cum pauperibus, qui orationis gratia Romam
changed his-dress with the-poor who of-prayer for-the-sake to-Rome
pergunt, Romam quasi profecturus Italiam petit, principes
go to-Rome as-if about-to-set-out Italy seeks the-princes
convenit et, quid unusquisque cordi haberet, inquisivit; neque
meets and what each at-heart had he-inquired nor
enim eodem omnibus se habitu ostendebat, nunc niger
for in-the-same to-all himself garb he-showed now black
alii, subrubeus alii, maculosus alii videbatur. Verum
to-others reddish to-others spotted to-others he-seemed but
'fama, malum, quo non velotius ullum mobilitate viget',
rumor an-evil than-which none swifter any by-mobility thrives
eum in Italia esse auribus regis innotuit. Quem dum
him in Italy to-be to-the-ears of-the-king made-known whom when
diligenter iuberet inquirere, ipse prolixam et pulcherrimam
carefully he-ordered to-search-for he-himself long and most-beautiful
barbam pice adeo defedavit, capillos subaureos nigredine
beard with-pitch so-much defiled the-hair golden with-blackness
immutavit, fatiem deturpavit, debilem finxit, adeo ut inter
changed his-face disfigured crippled feigned so-much that among
pauperes regis in praesentia comedentes se regi nudum
the-poor of-the-king in the-presence eating himself to-the-king naked

ostenderet et vestem ab eo, qua indueretur, acciperet
he-showed and a-garment from him with-which he-might-be-clothed received
et, quicquid rex de Berengario et se ipso loqueretur,
and whatever the-king about Berengar and him himself said
audiret. Hoc denique modo cunctis diligentissime perscrutatis
he-heard this finally in-way all-things most-carefully examined
non eodem, quo venerat, modo cum oratoribus est
not in-the-same in-which he-had-come way with the-pilgrims is
regressus. Praeceperat enim rex clusarum custodibus, ne
returned had-ordered for the-king of-the-passes to-the-guards that-not
quempiam transire permitterent, nisi prius, quis esset, diligenti
anyone to-cross they-allow unless first who he-was by-careful
investigatione perquirerent. Quod Amedeus audiens per invia
investigation they-searched which Amadeus hearing through pathless
quaedam et aspera nulli custodita loca pertransiit atque ad
certain and rough by-none guarded places crossed and to
Berengarium cum ea, quam audire voluit, legatione pervenit.
Berengar with that which to-hear he-wished embassy came
Hoc in tempore rex Hugo datis decem nummorum modiis 19
this in time king Hugh given ten of-coins measures
pacem cum Hungariis fecit, quos ab Italia acceptis obsidibus
peace with the-Hungarians made whom from Italy received hostages
expulit atque in Hispaniam dato eis praeduce direxit.
he-expelled and into Spain given to-them a-guide directed
Quod vero ad Hispaniam et ad civitatem ipsam, in qua
that but to Spain and to the-city itself in which
rex vester moratur, Cordobam non venerunt, haec causa
king your stays Cordoba not they-came this the-cause
fuit, quoniam triduo per inaquosam et siti vastam
was since for-three-days through a-waterless and by-thirst desolate
regionem transierunt; putantes itaque equos seseque siti
region they-passed thinking and-so their-horses and-themselves by-thirst

perituros praeduce sibi ab Hugone concesso mortetenus
about-to-perish the-guide to-them by Hugh granted mortally
verberato celeriori quam abirent impetu revertuntur.
beaten with-a-swifter than they-had-gone-away onset return
Hac etiam eadem tempestate idem rex Hugo Bertam
at-this also same season the-same king Hugh Bertha
filiam suam, quam ex meretrice Pezola ipse genuerat,
daughter his whom from the-harlot Pezola he-himself had-begotten
per Sigefredum, venerabilem Parmensis ecclesiae antistitem,
through Sigefred venerable of-Parma of-the-church the-bishop
Constantinopolim direxit Romanô parvulo Constantini
to-Constantinople directed to-Romanus little of-Constantine
Porphýrogeniti filio copulandam coniugio. Tenebatque
Porphyrogenitus the-son to-be-joined in-marriage and-held
summum imperii Romanós maior eiusque filii duo
the-summit of-empire Romanus the-elder and-his sons two
Constantinus et Stephanus, quibus post Romanôn praestabat
Constantine and Stephen to-whom after Romanus ranked-first
Constantinus, Leonis imperatoris filius, cuius parvulus ex
Constantine of-Leo emperor the-son whose little-one from
Helena, Romani maioris imperatoris filia, natus iam
Helena of-Romanus the-elder emperor the-daughter born the-already
nominatam Bertam, quam mutato nomine Greci dixerant
named Bertha whom changed her-name the-Greeks had-called
Eudokian, uxorem duxerat. His itaque quattuor imperantibus
Eudocia as-wife had-taken these and-so four ruling
Stephanus atque Constantinus fratres ignorante Constantino,
Stephen and Constantine brothers unaware Constantine
Leonis imperatoris filio, adversus Romanôn patrem suum
of-Leo emperor the-son against Romanus father their
quaedam σφάλματα, sfalmata, id est dolos, machinabantur.
certain plots plots that is wiles were-contriving

Taedebat enim eos patris severitate imposita, quaecumque
it-wearied for them of-the-father by-the-severity imposed whatever
vellent, facere non licere. Unde et malo mox accepto
they-wished to-do not to-be-allowed whence also evil soon taken
consilio, quatinus patrem deicerent, pertractabant.
counsel so-that the-father they-might-cast-down they-deliberated

V · ROMANUS DEPOSED BY HIS SONS

Stephen and Constantine depose their father Romanus and send him to a monastic island, but the people demand Constantine Porphyrogenitus, who shows himself at a window and calms them. Diabolinus warns Constantine that the brothers mean to kill him at a banquet, and with the Macedonians he seizes them at the table and sends them to the same island. Romanus greets his sons there with gentle irony, promising them cold water, beans, and fasts, and prays in verse at the altar that the throne be held by its rightful heir.

Constantinopolitanum palatium non pulcritudine solum, 21
the-Constantinopolitan palace not in-beauty only
verum etiam fortitudine omnibus, quas umquam perspexerim,
but also in-strength all which ever I-have-seen
munitionibus praestat, quod etiam iugi militum stipatione
fortresses surpasses which also by-constant of-soldiers guard
non minima observatur. Moris itaque est hoc post
not least is-watched of-custom and-so is this after
matutinum crepusculum omnibus mox patere, post tertiam
the-morning twilight to-all soon to-lie-open after the-third
vero diei horam emissis omnibus dato signo, quod est
but of-the-day hour sent-out all given a-signal which is
mîs, usque in horam nonam cunctis aditum prohibere.
dismissal until into the-hour ninth to-all access to-forbid

In hoc igitur Romanós is to chrýsotriclinon, id est aureum
in this therefore Romanus in the Chrysotriclinos that is the-golden
triclinium, quae praestantior pars est, potentissime degens
dining-hall which the-more-excellent part is most-powerfully living
ceteras palatii partes genero Constantino filiisque suis
the-other of-the-palace parts to-his-son-in-law Constantine and-sons his
Stephano et Constantino distribuerat. Hi duo denique, ut
Stephen and Constantine had-distributed these two finally as
praediximus, non ferentes patris iustam severitatem in
we-said-before not bearing of-the-father the-just severity in
eorum cubiculis multis copiis congregatis diem constituerunt,
their chambers many forces gathered a-day they-fixed
quando patrem deicere solique ipsi possent regnare.
when the-father to-cast-down and-alone they-themselves could to-reign
Cumque dies adveniret optata, cunctis de palatio iuxta
and-when the-day arrived desired all from the-palace according-to
morem egressis Stephanus et Constantinus facta congressione
the-custom gone-out Stephen and Constantine made an-assembly
super patrem irruunt eumque de palatio civibus ignorantibus
upon the-father rush and-him from the-palace the-citizens unaware
deponunt et ad vicinam insulam, in qua caenobitarum
they-depose and to a-neighboring island in which of-cenobites
multitudo phylosophabatur, tonso ei, ut moris est,
a-multitude philosophized shorn for-him as of-custom is
capite phylosophandum transmittunt. Fit quam mox
in-the-head for-philosophizing send-across there-arises as soon
multirumiger in Constantinupoleos [populum] sonitus:
a-many-rumored into of-Constantinople the-people sound
Romanon eiectum quidam, Constantinum eius socerum
Romanus thrown-out some Constantine his father-in-law
interfectum alii clamitabant. Nec mora, totius populi
killed others cried-out nor delay of-the-whole people

ad palatium fit concursus. Romanos quasi imperator
to the-palace there-is a-running-together Romanus as-if an-emperor
abusivus non requiritur, verum Constantinus an supersit,
usurping not is-sought but Constantine whether he-survives
ab omnibus percontatur. Cumque inquisitionis sedicio non
by all is-asked and-when of-inquiry a-sedition not
modica fieret pro Constantino, rogantibus Stephano et
small arose for Constantine asking Stephen and
Constantino ex ea parte, qua Zucanistrii magnitudo
Constantine from that side where of-the-Tzykanisterion the-greatness
portenditur, Constantinus crines solutus per cancellos caput
stretches Constantine his-hair loosened through the-railings his-head
exposuit suaque ostensione populi mox tumultum sedavit
put-out and-by-his showing of-the-people soon the-tumult calmed
ac in propria quemque repedare coegit. Quod factum gravem
and to their-own each to-go-back compelled which deed heavy
duobus fratribus ingessit dolorem. 'Quid profuit', inquiunt,
on-the-two brothers brought grief what did-it-profit they-say
'quod abdicato patre alium, qui non pater est, dominum
that deposed the-father another who not father is as-lord
sustinemus? Tolerabilius enim decentiusque paternam quam
we-endure more-tolerably for and-more-fittingly a-father's than
exteram pateremur dominationem. Quid illud', aiunt, 'quod
a-stranger's we-should-suffer domination what (is)-that they-say that
in huius auxilium non solum propriae, sed et exterae venere
to his help not only our-own but also foreign have-come
nationes? Sigefredus quippe episcopus, regis Hugonis nuntius,
nations Sigefred indeed bishop of-king Hugh the-messenger
adsumptis secum suae linguae nationibus Amelfetanis,
taken with-himself of-his tongue the-nations Amalfitans
Romanis, Caietanis, nobis ad interitum, huic praesidio fuit'.
Romans Gaetans for-us to ruin to-this-one a-protection was

22 His dictis armatorum manibus cubicula, sicut et pro patre,
these said of-armed-men with-bands the-chambers as also for the-father
complent. Quibus Diavolinos praefuit, qui horum omnium
they-fill over-whom Diabolinus commanded who of-these all
incentor et post paululum proditor extitit. Constantinum
the-instigator and after a-little the-betrayer stood-forth Constantine
namque libris incumbentem ita convenit: 'Quae tibi
for over-books bending thus he-addressed what for-you
incommoda a Stephano et Constantino fratribus, immo
troubles by Stephen and Constantine the-brothers nay
inimicis tuis praeparentur, isthaec, quae in te vetus permanet,
enemies your are-prepared this which in you old remains
religio ignorat. Si enim infortunia tibi parta cognosceres,
religion knows-not if for the-misfortunes for-you gotten you-knew
quatenus posses vivere, cogitares. Uxoris tuae Stephanus
how you-could to-live you-would-think of-wife your Stephen
et Constantinus fratres armatorum manibus congregatis
and Constantine the-brothers of-armed-men bands gathered
atque in cubiculis iam conclusis te non ut patrem de
and in chambers already shut-up you not as (their)-father from
palatio expellere, verum hic cogitant interficere. Occasio
the-palace to-expel but here plan to-kill the-occasion
autem tui haec interitus erit: cenatum te post triduum
moreover of-your this death shall-be to-dine you after three-days
Constantinus et Stefanus invitabunt. Cumque tuae sessionis
Constantine and Stephen shall-invite and-when your of-seat
medium, exellentiae tuae quatenus moris est, obtinere
the-middle of-excellence your as of-custom is to-hold
temptabis, percusso mox scuto inclusi de cubiculo exilient
you-shall-try struck soon a-shield the-shut-in from the-chamber shall-leap-out
tuamque fuso sanguine vitam finient. Fidem autem si
and-your with-poured-out blood life shall-end faith moreover if

relatis exposcis, iis inpraesentiarum argumentis
for-the-things-reported you-demand with-these at-present proofs
adfirmo, quoniam conclusorum tibi personas rimis
I-affirm since of-the-shut-in to-you the-persons through-chinks
ostendo; dein, quod saluti solempnius est tuae, hostiorum
I-show then what for-safety more-solemn is your of-the-doors
tibi claves trado'. His auditis Constantinus: 'Age', infit,
to-you the-keys I-hand-over these heard Constantine come he-begins
'ut coniuratorum prodidisti perfidiam, quatenus hanc
as of-the-conspirators you-have-betrayed the-perfidy how this
devincam, exprome sententiam. Non enim mihi tam mea
I-may-overcome set-forth your-opinion not for to-me so my
salus cara, quam pietas erit in referenda gratia iucunda'.
safety dear as gratitude shall-be in returning thanks pleasant
Cui Diavolinus: 'Non', inquit, 'clam te est, Macedones
to-whom Diabolinus not he-says hidden from-you it-is the-Macedonians
cum tibi devotos tum bello duros existere; mittito itaque
as-well to-you devoted as in-war hard to-stand-forth send and-so
ac cubicula propria Stefano et Constantino ignorantibus
and the-chambers your-own with-Stephen and Constantine unaware
eis suffarcinato. Cumque designata dies convivii advenerit
them stuff and-when the-appointed day of-the-banquet shall-have-come
atque ob sessionis fastum simultas inrepserit, dato signo,
and for of-seating the-pomp a-quarrel shall-have-crept-in given a-signal
ut praefatus sum, percusso scilicet scuto, cum illorum manus
as said-before I-have struck namely a-shield when their bands
armatorum praesidio eis esse non poterit, tui mox ex
of-armed-men protection to-them to-be not shall-be-able yours soon from
inproviso prosiliant eosque tanto commodius quanto
the-unforeseen should-leap-out and-them by-so-much more-conveniently by-as-much
insperatius capiant atque ad vicinum monasterium, ad
more-unexpectedly take and to the-neighboring monastery to

quod patrem suum, socerum scilicet tuum, direxerant, tonsis,
which father their father-in-law namely your they-had-directed shorn
ut moris est, crinibus phylosophandum transmittant. Divinae
as of-custom is the-hair for-philosophizing send-across of-divine
siquidem rectitudo iustitiae tuum negotium secundabit, cuius
indeed the-rectitude justice your business shall-favor whose
reconpensatio, ne in patrem peccarent, illos non terruit
requital lest against their-father they-sin them not deterred
et te, ne offenderes, custodivit'. Quod iusto Dei iuditio
and you lest you-offend has-guarded which by-the-just of-God judgment
ita accidisse non solum Europa, sed et Asia nunc
so to-have-happened not only Europe but also Asia now
cantat et Africa. Designato etenim die, dum simulata
sings and Africa appointed for the-day when with-feigned
pace Constantinum hunc Stefanus et Constantinus fratres
peace Constantine this-one Stephen and Constantine the-brothers
ad convivium invitarent et ob sessionis fastum tumultus
to a-banquet invited and for of-seating the-pomp a-tumult
insurgeret, percusso, ut dictum est, scuto Macedones
arose struck as said it-is the-shield the-Macedonians
insperato proruunt duosque fratres Stefanum et Constantinum
unexpectedly rush-forth and-the-two brothers Stephen and Constantine
quam mox conprehensos, tonsos capite ad vicinam insulam
as soon seized shorn in-the-head to the-neighboring island
phylosophandum, ad quam patrem direxerant, mittunt.
for-philosophizing to which their-father they-had-directed send
23 Quorum pater Romanós adventum ut audivit, graciarum
whose father Romanus the-arrival when he-heard of-thanks
actiones Deo exibuit eisque extra fores monasterii obvians
acts to-God displayed and-them outside the-doors of-the-monastery meeting
laeta fatie: 'Festivum tempus', inquit, 'quod humilitatem
with-glad face festive the-time he-says which humility

nostram imperium vestrum visitare coegit. Caritas, puto, quae
our the-empire your to-visit has-compelled the-charity I-think which
de me palacio expulit, filiacionem vestram non ibi diu esse
from me the-palace expelled sonship your not there long to-be
permisit. O factum bene, quod me quam dudum praemisistis.
allowed O done well that me so long-ago you-sent-ahead
Confratres enim et commilitones mei supernae tantum
the-brothers for and fellow-soldiers my of-heavenly only
phylosophyae incunbentes, qualiter imperatores susciperent,
philosophy intent how emperors they-should-receive
ignorarent, si non me iam dudum imperialibus institutis
would-not-know if not me already long-ago in-imperial customs
attritum haberent. Parta iam frigidior Goticis aqua decocta
worn they-had ready already colder than-Gothic water boiled
pruinis; dulces adsunt fabae, lachana porrique recentes. Non
by-frosts sweet are-present beans greens and-leeks fresh not
hic marinae delitiae morbos, sed crebra potius ieiunia creant.
here of-the-sea dainties diseases but frequent rather fasts create
Turbam vero hanc tantam, tam sumptuosam modicitas nostra
the-crowd but this so-great so costly modesty our
non recipit; vestrum solummodo imperium suscipit, quod, ne
not receives your only the-empire receives which lest
paternam desereret senectutem, advenit'. Romanos haec
the-paternal it-should-desert old-age has-come Romanus these-things
et huiuscemodi perstringente Stephanus et Constantinus
and of-this-kind touching-on Stephen and Constantine
filii pudibundo contuentes lumine terram, quam invite
the-sons with-shamefaced looking with-eye the-ground how unwillingly
monasterium peterent, non est percontari necesse, sed credere.
the-monastery they-sought not is to-inquire necessary but to-believe

Expansis itaque post haec manibus ad altaris Romanos
spread-out and-so after these-things the-hands to of-the-altar Romanus
crepidinem fusus huiusmodi cum lacrimis Deo preces effudit:
the-step prostrate in-this-way with tears to-God prayers poured-out

24 ‘Christe Deus, cum quo pater est et spiritus unum,
Christ God with whom the-father is and the-spirit one
Iure patris verbum, per quod pater omnia mundo
by-right of-the-father the-word through which the-father all-things to-the-world
Innotuit secreta poli seu mistica pandens,
made-known the-secrets of-heaven or mystic-things disclosing
Respice figmentum propria bonitate creatum.
look-upon the-creature by-your-own goodness created
Ne patiare, precor, demonis me fraude perire,
not may-you-suffer I-pray of-the-demon me by-fraud to-perish
Sanguine quem sacro voluisti reddere vitae!
by-blood whom sacred you-wished to-restore to-life
Da, Deus, ut mundi tumidos calcare conatus
grant God that of-the-world the-swollen to-trample efforts
Iam valeam, sistatque procul corruptor iniquus,
now I-may-be-able and-may-stand far-off the-corrupter unjust
Cui labor est animas semper fedare beatas,
whose labor is souls always to-defile blessed
Imperii cum sceptra tuli! Nunc haud placet, esto!
of-empire when the-scepters I-bore now not it-pleases let-it-be
Gratia dignatus tibi sit quod pellere iniquos,
grace deigned to-you be that to-drive-out the-unjust
Imperii teneant solium ne iniuste paternum’.
of-empire they-may-hold the-throne lest unjustly paternal

Berengar enters Italy by the Val Venosta, winning Formicaria by promising Manasses the see of Milan. The princes go over to Berengar at Milan; Liutprand reflects that the greedy are never rich. Hugh asks them at least to accept Lothar, and Berengar has the boy accepted so that Hugh will not leave with his treasure.

His ita gestis Stefanus atque Constantinus custodia iugi 25
these thus done Stephen and Constantine with-guard constant
observantur, patre, quae ei acciderant, aequanimiter
are-watched the-father the-things-which to-him had-happened with-even-mind
perferente. Aiunt enim hunc, et sub adtestatione confirmant,
bearing they-say for him and under attestation confirm
dum a fratribus lentis ob purgationem culparetur, respondisse,
when by the-brothers slow for purification he-was-blamed to-have-answered
quod luculentius regnaret, qui servorum Dei humilitatibus
that more-splendidly he-reigned who of-the-servants of-God to-the-humilities
deserviret, quam qui potentibus mundi peccatoribus
was-serving than he-who over-the-powerful of-the-world sinners
imperaret.
ruled
Desideratus interea Berengarius ex Suevorum partibus 26
longed-for meanwhile Berengar from of-the-Swabians the-parts
paucis secum comitantibus a Suevia per Venustam vallem
a-few with-him accompanying from Swabia through the-Venosta valley
Italiam petiit applicuitque castra secus munitionem vocabulo
Italy sought and-pitched his-camp beside a-fortress by-name
Formicaria, quae a Mannasse, ut iam praediximus, Arelatensis
Formicaria which by Manasses as already we-said-before of-Arles
sedis archiepiscopo tuncque Tridentinae, Veronensis atque
of-the-see archbishop and-then of-Trent of-Verona and

Mantuanae invasore, Adelardi sui clerici erat vigiliae
of-Mantua the-invader of-Adalard his cleric was to-the-watch
commendata. Cumque Berengarius nullius machinamenti
entrusted and-when Berengar of-no siege-engine
apparatu nulliusque belli impetu hanc se capere posse
by-equipment and-of-no war by-onset it himself to-take to-be-able
conspiceret, Mannasse ambitionem et kenodoxiam, id est
saw of-Manasses the-ambition and vainglory that is
vanam gloriam, cognoscens, Adelardum ad se venire
vain glory knowing Adalard to himself to-come
rogavit; cui et ait: 'Si munitionem hanc potestati meae
asked to-whom also he-says if fortress this to-power my
tradideris dominumque tuum Mannassen ad adiutorium meum
you-hand-over and-lord your Manasses to help my
protraxeris, se Mediolanii archiepiscopatus, te vero Cumani
you-draw him of-Milan of-the-archbishopric you but of-Como
episcopatus dignitate post acceptam regni potestatem
of-the-bishopric with-the-dignity after received of-the-kingdom power
donabo. Et ut promittenti mihi fidem admittas, quod
I-shall-present and that promising to-me faith you-may-admit what
verbis spondeo, iuramentis adfirmo'. Haec dum Mannasse ab
in-words I-pledge by-oaths I-affirm these-things when to-Manasses by
Adalardo narrantur, munitionem solum Berengario dare non
Adalard are-told the-fortress only to-Berengar to-give not
iussit, verum etiam Italos omnes eius in auxilium invitavit.
he-ordered but also the-Italians all his to help invited
27 Fama igitur, 'malum quo non velotius ullum mobilitate
rumor therefore an-evil than-which not swifter any by-mobility
viget', Berengarii adventum quam mox omnibus nuntiavit.
thrives of-Berengar the-arrival as soon to-all announced
Coeperuntque mox nonnulli Hugone deserto Berengario
and-began soon some Hugh deserted to-Berengar

adhaerere. Horum Milo, praepotens Veronensium comes, extitit
to-cling of-these Milo very-powerful of-the-Veronese count stood-forth
primus, qui, dum Hugoni suspectus appositis clam custodibus
first who when to-Hugh suspected placed secretly guards
servaretur, simulatus se non intellegere custodiri, ferme
he-was-watched pretending himself not to-understand to-be-guarded nearly
cenam usque ad noctis pertraxit medium; cumque omnes
the-supper up to of-the-night drew-out the-middle and-when all
tam somno quam Liaeo adgravati, corpora quieti traderent,
as-much with-sleep as with-Lyaeus weighed-down their-bodies to-rest gave
solo se qui eius portaverat clipeum comitante, Veronam
alone himself who his had-carried shield accompanying to-Verona
percitus venit directisque nuntiis Berengarium excivit, quem
hurriedly came and-sent messengers Berengar called-out whom
et in Verona, quo Hugoni firmius resisteret, suscepit. Sane
also in Verona so-that Hugh more-firmly he-might-resist received indeed
nulla hunc infidelitas ab Hugone divisit, verum illata sibi
no him disloyalty from Hugh divided but inflicted on-himself
ab eodem nonnulla incommoda, quae iam diu sustinere non
by the-same some injuries which now long to-bear not
potuit. Prosequitur hunc Wido, Mutinensis ecclesiae praesul,
he-could follows this-one Guy of-Modena of-the-church the-bishop
non iniuria lacessitus, sed maxima illa abbatia Nonantula,
not by-injury provoked but by-the-very-great that abbey Nonantola
quam et tunc adquisivit, animatus. Qui Hugonem solum non
which also then he-acquired spurred who Hugh only not
deseruit, verum etiam multorum multitudinem tulit. Quod
deserted but also of-many a-multitude took-along which
Hugo ut audivit, congregatis copiis ad eius castrum Vineolam
Hugh when he-heard gathered forces to his castle Vignola
venit idque viriliter, sed inutiliter oppugnavit; quod quam
came and-it manfully but uselessly attacked which how

mendatii alienum sit, sententia subsequens declarabit. Nam
from-falsehood alien is the-sentence following shall-declare for
dum eodem degeret, Berengarius ab Arderico archiepiscopo
while there he-stayed Berengar by Ardric archbishop
accitus Veronam deseruit ac Mediolanium concitus venit.
summoned Verona left and to-Milan hurriedly came
Quo audito rex Hugo Papiam tristis advenit. Coeperunt
which heard king Hugh to-Pavia sad arrived began
interea omnes Italiae primates omine non bono Hugonem
meanwhile all of-Italy the-chief-men with-omen not good Hugh
deserere et egenti Berengario adhaerere. Egentem autem non
to-desert and to-needy Berengar to-cling needy moreover not
nichil possidentem, sed cui numquam quicquam satis est,
nothing possessing but to-whom never anything enough is
aio. Quoniam improbi et avari, qui incertas atque in casu
I-say since the-wicked and avaricious who uncertain and in chance
positas possessiones habent et plus semper appetunt, nec
placed possessions have and more always seek nor
eorum quisquam adhuc inventus est, cui, quod haberet,
of-them any yet found has-been to-whom what he-had
esset satis, non modo non copiosi divites, sed etiam inopes
was enough not only not abundantly rich but even needy
ac pauperes existimandi sunt. Soli enim sunt divites et
and poor to-be-reckoned are alone for are rich and
fructuosas ac sempiternas possident res, qui suis rebus
fruitful and everlasting possess things who with-their-own things
contenti satis esse putant, quod est. Non esse cupidum vera
content enough to-be think what is not to-be greedy true
pecunia est; non esse emacem vectigal est. Fateamur itaque,
money is not to-be fond-of-buying a-revenue is let-us-confess and-so
uter est ditior, cui deest, an cui superat? qui eget, an
which is richer he-who lacks or he-who abounds he-who needs or

qui habundat? cui possessio quo est maior, eo
he-who has-plenty to-whom possession by-as-much is greater by-so-much
plus requirit ad se tuendam, an qui se suis viribus
more requires for itself to-guard or he-who himself with-his-own strength
sustinet? Contentum etenim suis rebus maximae sunt
sustains to-the-content for with-his-own things the-greatest are
certissimaeque divitiae. Verum de hoc satis nunc dictum
and-most-certain riches but about this enough now said
esse sufficiat. Ad Berengarium stili intentio redeat, cuius
to-be let-it-suffice to Berengar of-the-pen the-intention let-return whose
in adventum aureum omnes seculum promittebant et felicia,
at arrival a-golden all age promised and happy
quae talem extulerant, tempora clamitabant.
which such-a-man had-raised times cried-out
Eo itaque Mediolanii degente ac Italicas dignitates 28
with-him and-so at-Milan staying and Italian dignities
sibi adhaerentibus dispensante, rex Hugo Lotharium, filium
to-him to-those-clinging dispensing king Hugh Lothar son
suum, non ad Berengarii solum, verum ad totius populi
his not to of-Berengar only but to of-the-whole people
praesentiam dirigit, petens, quia se eis non morigerum
the-presence directs asking because him to-them not compliant
abdicant, filium saltem Dei pro amore, qui nil in eos
renounce the-son at-least of-God for love who nothing against them
deliquerat, suscipiant ac voluntatibus eorum morigerum
had-offended they-should-receive and to-wills their compliant
reddant. Lothario denique Mediolanium petente rex Hugo
make Lothar finally Milan seeking king Hugh
Papia omni cum pecunia egressus Italiam deserere atque in
from-Pavia all with money gone-out Italy to-desert and into
Burgundiam ire cogitavit. Sed res eum ista retinuit, quoniam,
Burgundy to-go thought but thing him this held-back since

dum misericordia inclinati Lotharium in ecclesia beatorum
when by-mercy inclined Lothar in the-church of-the-blessed
confessoris et martyrum Ambrosii, Gervasii et Protasii ante
confessor and martyrs Ambrose Gervase and Protase before
crucem prostratum erigerent regemque sibi constituerent,
the-cross prostrate they-raised and-as-king for-themselves established
quam mox post Hugonem dirigunt nuntium, quem se
as soon after Hugh they-direct a-messenger whom himself
iterum super eos regnaturum promittunt. Hoc plane
again over them about-to-reign they-promise this plainly
consilium, immo deceptionem, non omnes, sed Berengarius,
counsel nay deception not all but Berengar
ut erat calliditate suffarcinatus, adinvenit, non quo hos
as he-was with-cunning stuffed devised not that these
regnare disponeret, sed, ut post claruit, ne Hugo discederet
to-reign he-intended but as afterward was-clear lest Hugh should-depart
atque inmensa quam habebat pecunia Burgundionum aut
and with-immense which he-had money of-the-Burgundians or
aliarum gentium super se populos invitaret.
of-other races upon him the-peoples should-invite

Berengar replaces bishops at will. Liutprand's parents place him with Berengar as his secretary, and Berengar repays him as the ostrich does, seeming a hawk until it mocks its rider. Hugh retires to Provence and dies. Willa takes her daughters' tutor, the priest Dominic, as her lover, and when a dog exposes him he is castrated. Berengar pays off the Hungarians with a tax that leaves him rich.

Hoc in tempore Ioseph quidam, moribus senex, diebus 29
this in time Joseph a-certain in-manners an-old-man in-days
iuvenis, Brixianae civitatis clarebat episcopus. Quem
a-young-man of-Brescia city shone bishop whom
Berengarius, ut erat Dei timens, ob morum probitatem
Berengar as he-was God fearing for of-manners the-uprightness
episcopio privavit, eius loco Antonium, qui nunc usque
of-the-bishopric deprived his in-place Anthony who now still
superest, nullo concilio habito, nulla episcoporum deliberatione
survives no council held no of-bishops deliberation
constituit. Sed et Cumis tunc non Adelardum, ut iuraverat,
established but also at-Como then not Adalard as he-had-sworn
verum ob Mediolanensis archiepiscopi amorem Waldonem
but for of-the-Milanese archbishop love Waldo
quendam episcopum ordinavit. Quod quam bene fecerit,
a-certain bishop he-ordained which how well he-did
subditorum depopulatio, vitium incisio, arborum decorticacio,
of-the-subjects the-ravaging of-vines the-cutting of-trees the-stripping-of-bark
multorum oculorum excussio, simultatis saepissima
of-many eyes the-knocking-out of-quarrel the-most-frequent
repetitio cum signis tum gemitibus narrat. Hadelardum
repetition as-well by-signs as by-groans relate Adalard
autem Regensi praefecit ecclesiae.
moreover over-the-Reggian he-set church

30 Bosonem vero, Hugonis regis spurium, Placentinae sedis
Boso but of-Hugh king the-bastard of-Piacenza of-the-see
et Liutefredum Papiensis ecclesiae episcopos expellere
and Liutfred of-the-Pavian church bishops to-expel
cogitavit, verum intercedente pretio ob Dei se amorem
he-thought but intervening a-price for of-God himself the-love
eos dimisisse simulavit. Quam inmensum tunc Italis
them to-have-released he-pretended how immense then for-the-Italians
gaudium! Alterum David venisse latrabant. Sed et magno
joy another David to-have-come they-barked but also to-great
Karolo caeca hunc mente praeferebant. Quamquam enim
Charles with-blind him mind they-preferred although for
iterato Hugonem atque Lotharium reges Italici susciperent,
again Hugh and Lothar kings the-Italians received
Berengarium tamen nomine solum marchionem, potestate vero
Berengar yet in-name only marquis in-power but
regem, illos vocabulo reges, actu autem neque pro comitibus
king them in-word kings in-deed moreover not-even as counts
habebant. Quid plura? Tanta hac Berengarii fama, humanitate,
they-held what more with-such this of-Berengar report humanity
liberalitate parentes mei acciti ei me ad serviendum
generosity parents my summoned to-him me for serving
tradunt. Cui et inmensis oblatis muneribus secretorum eius
hand-over to-whom also immense offered gifts of-secrets his
conscium ac epistolarum constituunt signatorem. Cui cum
privy and of-letters they-establish the-signer to-whom when
fideliter longo tempore deservirem, hac, quam prosecuturus
faithfully for-a-long time I-served with-this which about-to-pursue
sum suis in locis, pro dolor! mercede donavit. Verum haec
I-am their-own in places for grief reward he-presented but this
retributio poene me ad desperationem usque pertraheret, si in
requital almost me to despair even would-drag if in

re consimili consotios plurimos non excuderet. De isto
thing similar fellows very-many not it-should-strike-out about him
enim pulchre dictum accipimus: ‘Pennae strutionis similes
for beautifully said we-receive the-feathers of-the-ostrich like
sunt pennis accipitris et herodii. Cum tempus advenerit,
are to-the-feathers of-the-hawk and of-the-heron when the-time shall-have-come
in altum alas erigit, deridet equitem et ascensorem
on high its-wings it-raises it-mocks the-horseman and the-rider
eius’. Hic enim superstitibus Hugone et Lothario magnus
his this-one for surviving Hugh and Lothar a-great
voraxque strutio non bonus, sed bono similis est visus.
and-greedy ostrich not good but to-a-good-one like was seen
Eis autem decedentibus et ad regni fastigia omnibus
with-them moreover departing and to of-the-kingdom the-heights all
illum promoventibus, quantum alas erexerit quantumque nos
him promoting how-much his-wings he-raised and-how-much us
omnes irriserit, non tam verbis quam suspiriis ac gemitibus
all he-mocked not so-much in-words as by-sighs and groans
narro. Sed his omissis ad narrandi seriem redeamus.
I-relate but these omitted to of-narrating the-thread let-us-return
Rex Hugo cum divinam animadversionem declinare ac 31
king Hugh since divine punishment to-avoid and
Berengario praeesse non posset, relicto Lothario et simulata
Berengar to-be-over not he-could left Lothar and with-feigned
pace Berengarii fidei tradito in Provinciam omni cum
peace of-Berengar to-faith handed-over into Provence all with
pecunia properavit. Quo audito Raimundus Aquetaniorum
money hastened which heard Raymond of-the-Aquitanians
princeps eum adiit, cui et pro minis mille se
prince him approached to-whom also for minas a-thousand himself
in militem dedit fidemque sibi servaturum iuramento
as soldier gave and-faith to-him about-to-keep by-oath

adfirmavit. Sed et congregatis copiis Italiam ingressurum ac
affirmed but also gathered forces Italy about-to-enter and
Berengarium debellaturum esse promisit; quod quanto nos
Berengar about-to-subdue to-be he-promised which with-how-great us
omnes cachinno affecerit, gentis eiusdem vilitas palam
all laughter affected of-the-people the-same the-worthlessness openly
facit, quae etsi praesidio esse posset, ad effectum tamen
makes which even-if a-help to-be could to effect yet
haudquaquam perduceret, quoniam quidem vocante Domino
by-no-means would-bring since indeed calling the-Lord
brevi rex Hugo viam est carnis universae ingressus, Bertae
shortly king Hugh the-way has of-flesh all entered to-Bertha
nepti suae, Bosonis Arelatensis comitis viduae, pecunia derelicta.
niece his of-Boso of-Arles count the-widow money left
Quam etiam brevi spatio intercedente memoratus Raimundus,
whom also brief a-space intervening the-mentioned Raymond
inpurissimae gentis princeps inpurior, sibi maritam effecerat,
of-the-most-impure race the-prince more-impure for-himself as-wife had-made
cuius non solum concubitu, verum etiam osculo indignum
of-whose not only lying-with but also kiss unworthy
elegantes formarum inspectores etiam atque etiam confirmant.
elegant of-forms inspectors again and again confirm
32 Huius hoc in tempore soror, Berengarii scilicet uxor Willa,
of-this-man this in time the-sister of-Berengar namely the-wife Willa
passa est crimen incesti. Quod ita accidisse non solum
suffered has the-charge of-incest which so to-have-happened not only
aulici vel cubicularii, verum aucupes et cupedenarii clamant.
the-courtiers or chamberlains but the-fowlers and the-confectioners cry-out
Habuit ea presbiterulum capellanum, nomine Dominicum,
had she a-little-priest as-chaplain by-name Dominic
statura brevem, colore fuligineum, rusticum, setigerum,
in-stature short in-color sooty rustic bristly

indocilem, agrestem, barbarum, durum, villosum, cauditum,
unteachable boorish barbarous hard hairy tailed
petulcum, insanum, rebellem, iniquum, cuius magisterio duas
lustful insane rebellious wicked whose to-teaching two
Willa commendaverat gnatas, Gislam scilicet atque Girbergam,
Willa had-entrusted daughters Gisela namely and Gerberga
ut eas litterarum scientia epotaret. Occasione itaque
that them of-letters with-knowledge he-might-drench by-the-occasion and-so
puellarum, quas presbiter Dominicus, hirsutus, inlotus facete
of-the-girls whom the-priest Dominic shaggy unwashed wittily
docebat, mater ei propitiaverat, tribuens delicatum cibum
taught the-mother to-him had-shown-favor bestowing dainty food
vestesque preciosas. Mirari omnes, cur cunctis invisa,
and-clothes costly they-wondered all why to-all hateful
ingrata, tenax huic existeret larga. Sententia tamen
ungracious stingy to-this-one she-stood-forth generous the-sentence yet
veritatis, quae ait: 'Nihil opertum, quod non reveletur, et
of-the-truth which says nothing covered which not shall-be-revealed and
ocultum, quod non in publicum veniat', diu mirari homines
hidden which not into the-public shall-come long to-wonder men
passa non est. Nam cum nocte quadam Berengario absente
allowed not has for when on-night a-certain Berengar absent
ad cubile dominicum more solito hirsutus isdem
to the-bed lordly in-the-manner accustomed the-shaggy the-same
vellet accedere, canis isthic aderat, qui latratu horribili
wished to-approach a-dog there was-present which with-barking horrible
circumiacentes exitavit huncque morsu vehementi laniavit.
those-lying-around roused and-him with-bite vehement tore
Consurgentes denique, qui in domo erant, cum eum
rising-up finally those-who in the-house were when him
conprehenderent et, quo iret, interrogarent, apologeticum
they-seized and where he-was-going asked excuse

istud anticipando domina dedit: 'Ad mulieres nostras ibat
this by-anticipating the-mistress gave to the-women our he-was-going
perditus'. Sperans itaque presbiterulus sibi lenius fore,
the-wretch hoping and-so the-little-priest for-himself more-lenient it-would-be
si teneret sententiam dominae: 'Ita est, inquam'. Coepit
if he-held-to the-sentence of-the-mistress so it-is I-say began
itaque domina vitae eius insidiari praemiumque promittere,
and-so the-mistress the-life his to-plot-against and-a-reward to-promise
si esset, qui ei vitam auferret. Sed cum
if there-were-anyone who from-him life should-take-away but since
timerent Deum omnes et mors eius differretur, pervenit ad
feared God all and death his was-deferred came to
Berengarium sermo. Willa vero coepit aruspices maleficosque
Berengar the-talk Willa but began soothsayers and-sorcerers
inquirere, quo eorum carminibus iuvaretur. Utrum autem
to-seek-out so-that of-them by-spells she-might-be-helped whether moreover
horum carminibus an Berengarii sit adiuta mollicie, nescio;
of-these by-spells or of-Berengar she-was helped by-softness I-know-not
adeo mens eius est inclinata, ut sponte maritali
so-much mind his was inclined that of-his-own-accord to-the-marital
porrigeret ora capistro. Presbiterulus itaque, quia dominae
he-held-out his-mouth halter the-little-priest and-so because of-the-mistress
asseculas adhinnivit, virilibus amputatis dimittitur; domina
attendants whinnied-at his-virile-parts cut-off is-dismissed the-mistress
vero a Berengario magis diligitur. Dixerunt autem, qui
but by Berengar more is-loved said moreover those-who
eum eunuchizaverunt, quod merito illum domina amaret,
him made-a-eunuch that deservedly him the-mistress loved
quem priapeia portare arma constaret.
whom Priapean to-carry arms it-was-agreed

Per id tempus Taxis, Hungariorum rex, magno cum 33
through that time Taksony of-the-Hungarians king great with
exercitu in Italiam venit. Cui Berengarius non ex propria
army into Italy came to-whom Berengar not from his-own
pecunia, sed ex ecclesiarum ac pauperum collectione X
money but from of-the-churches and of-the-poor a-collection ten
modios nummorum dedit. Fecit autem hoc, non ut populi
measures of-coins gave he-did moreover this not that of-the-people
curam haberet, sed ut hac occasione magnam pecuniam
care he-should-have but that by-this occasion great money
congregaret. Quod et fecit. In omni enim utrius sexus homo,
he-might-gather which also he-did in every for of-each sex person
tamque ablactatus quam lactens, pro se nummum dedit,
and-as-much weaned as suckling for himself a-coin gave
quibus aes commiscens ex paucis X modios fecit; ceteram
with-which bronze mixing from few ten measures he-made the-rest
vero partem et, quicquid ex ecclesiis tulit, sibi retinuit.
but part and whatever from the-churches he-took for-himself he-kept

BOOK VI

I · LIUTPRAND'S EMBASSY TO CONSTANTINOPLE

Writing in hardship, Liutprand turns to his embassy. Constantine Porphyrogenitus invites Berengar to send an envoy, and Berengar, wanting one who costs him nothing, persuades Liutprand's stepfather that the young man should learn Greek. Liutprand sails from Pavia to Venice, reaches Constantinople in September, and is received in the Magnaura, where gilded bronze birds sing on a gilded bronze tree and gilded lions roar beside a throne that rises toward the ceiling.

Temporis instantis qualitas tragoedum me potius quam 1
of-the-time present the-quality a-tragedian me rather than
historiographum quaereret, nisi pararet Dominus in
a-historian would-seek unless were-preparing the-Lord in
conspectu meo mensam adversus eos, qui tribulant me.
sight my a-table against those who trouble me
Explicare enim non possum, quot peraegre profectus
to-unfold for not I-can by-how-many abroad having-set-out
incommoditatibus quatiar, iuvatque hominem exteriorem
discomforts I-am-shaken and-it-pleases the-man outer
potius lugere quam scribere. Interior vero apostolicis
rather to-mourn than to-write the-inner but by-apostolic
confirmatus institutis 'in huiusmodi tribulationibus gloriatur
strengthened precepts in such tribulations glories
sciens, quod tribulatio patientiam operatur, patientia autem
knowing that tribulation patience works patience moreover
probationem, probatio vero spem; spes autem non confundit,
trial trial but hope hope moreover not confounds
quia caritas Dei diffusa est in cordibus nostris per
because the-charity of-God poured-out is in hearts our through
Spiritum sanctum, qui datus est nobis'. Pareat itaque interiori
the-Spirit holy who given is to-us let-obey and-so the-inner

exterior suaque infortunia non solum non abhorreat, verum in
the-outer and-its misfortunes not only not shrink-from but in
his potius conquiescat; dumque scribendi operam dans fortunae
these rather rest and-while of-writing effort giving of-fortune
rota elevari hos, illos deprimi dixerit, praesentem
by-the-wheel to-be-raised these those to-be-pressed-down he-has-said the-present
incommoditatem minus sentiet eiusque mutabilitati congaudens
discomfort less he-shall-feel and-its in-mutability rejoicing-together
deteriora, quod fieri nequit, ni mors aut membrorum
worse-things which to-happen cannot unless death or of-limbs
debilitatio intercedat, iam non metuat, sed fortunata semper
the-weakening intervene now not let-him-fear but fortunate-things always
expectet. Instantia enim si mutaverit, salutem, quae
let-him-await the-present for if it-shall-have-changed the-safety which
deest, adferet, infortunatum, quod adest, expellet. Scribat
is-lacking shall-bring the-unfortunate which is-present shall-drive-out let-him-write
itaque et superioribus vera haec, quae secuntur, adiungat.
and-so and to-the-earlier true these-things which follow let-him-join

2 Rege Hugone Provinciae in partibus defuncto Berengarii
king Hugh of-Provence in the-parts dead of-Berengar
nomen celebre apud nonnullas, praesertim apud Grecas extitit
the-name famous among some especially among the-Greek stood-forth
nationes. Is enim Italicis omnibus principabatur virtute,
nations he for over-the-Italians all ruled in-power
rex vero Lotharius solo nomine. Constantinus itaque, qui
king but Lothar in-name only Constantine and-so who
deiectis Romanô filiisque suis Constantinupoleos regebat
cast-down Romanus and-sons his of-Constantinople ruled
imperium, audito Berengarium potentia praestare Lothario,
the-empire heard Berengar in-power to-surpass Lothar
per Andream quendam, qui ab officio comis curtis
through Andrew a-certain who from the-office count of-the-court

dicebatur, literas Berengario dirigit, in quibus continebatur
was-called letters to-Berengar directs in which was-contained
vehementer se Berengarii nuntium velle videre, cuius in
vehemently himself of-Berengar a-messenger to-wish to-see whose in
reditu cognosceret, quanta eum caritate diligeret. Scripsit
return he-might-know with-how-great him charity he-loved he-wrote
etiam et commendaticias eidem pro Lothario litteras,
also and commendatory to-the-same for Lothar letters
ut fidelis ei esset administrator, cui Deo largiente
that faithful to-him he-should-be an-administrator to-whom God granting
extiterat gubernator. Constantinus namque sollicitudinem
he-had-stood-forth as-governor Constantine for solicitude
non parvam Lotharii pro salute habebat, religiose ob amorem
not small of-Lothar for the-safety had religiously for the-love
nurus suae cogitans, quae Lotharii soror extiterat.
of-daughter-in-law his thinking who of-Lothar the-sister had-stood-forth
Berengarius itaque calliditate, qua erat suffarcinatus, 3
Berengar and-so with-the-cunning with-which he-was stuffed
cogitans, quem potissimum mitteret, cui nil inpensae ob
thinking whom above-all he-should-send to-whom no expense for
itineris longinquitatem praeberet, vitricum, cuius tunc sub
of-the-journey the-length he-should-provide stepfather whose then under
cura degebam, conveniens: 'Quanti mihi', inquit, 'esset,
care I-was-living addressing how-much to-me he-says it-would-be-worth
privignum tuum Grecas literas non ignorare!' Cui, cum
stepson your Greek letters not to-be-ignorant-of to-whom when
diceret: 'Utinam divitiarum mearum ea gratia partem
he-said would-that of-riches my for-that favor part
mediam distributam haberem', 'Non necesse', ait, 'habes, neque
half distributed I-had not necessary he-says you-have nor
centesimam impertiri. Constantinopolitanus imperator litteris
the-hundredth to-impart the-Constantinopolitan emperor by-letters

orat, ut meum ad se nuntium dirigam. Quod cum ob animi
begs that my to himself messenger I-direct which as-well for of-mind
constantiam nemo melius tum ob dicendi copiam nemo
the-constancy no-one better as for of-speaking the-abundance no-one
commodius facere potest. Quid dicam, quam facile doctrinas
more-fitly to-do can what shall-I-say how easily the-doctrines
ebibet Grecas, qui tam puerilibus in annis epotavit Latinas?'
shall-drink-up Greek he-who so boyish in years has-drained the-Latin
Hac spe quam mox vitricus animatus inpensas omnes distribuit
by-this hope as soon stepfather animated the-expenses all distributed
meque magnis cum muneribus Constantinopolim direxit.
and-me great with gifts to-Constantinople directed

4 Die quippe Kalendarum Augustarum Papia exiens per
on-the-day indeed of-the-Kalends of-August from-Pavia going-out through
Heridani alveum triduo Venetiam veni, ubi et Salemonem
of-the-Po the-channel in-three-days to-Venice I-came where also Salemon
Grecorum nuntium, kitonitan, eunuchum, repperi, ab
of-the-Greeks messenger chamberlain eunuch I-found from
Hispania et Saxonia reversum Constantinopolim versus tendere
Spain and Saxony returned Constantinople toward to-head
cupientem secumque ducentem domini nostri, tunc regis, nunc
desiring and-with-him leading of-lord our then king now
imperatoris, magnis cum muneribus nuntium, Liutefredum
emperor great with gifts the-messenger Liutfred
scilicet, Magontinum institorem ditissimum. Octavo denique
namely of-Mainz a-merchant very-rich on-the-eighth finally
Kalendas Septembris Venetia exeuntes XV. Kalendas
Kalends of-September from-Venice going-out on-the-fifteenth Kalends
Octobris Constantinopolim venimus, ubi quam inaudito
of-October to-Constantinople we-came where how in-unheard-of
miroque simus modo recepti, scribere non pigebit.
and-wondrous we-were way received to-write not it-shall-irk

Est Constantinopolim domus palatio contigua mirae 5
there-is at-Constantinople a-house to-the-palace adjoining of-wondrous
magnitudinis seu pulchritudinis, quae a Grecis per V loco
greatness or beauty which by the-Greeks through V in-place
digammae positam Magnaura, quasi magna aura dicitur. Hanc
of-digamma put Magnaura as-if great breeze is-called this
itaque Constantinus cum ob Hispanorum nuntios, qui tunc
and-so Constantine as-well for of-the-Spaniards the-messengers who then
eô noviter venerant, tum ob me et Liutefredum hoc modo
thither newly had-come as for me and Liutfred in-this way
praeparari iussit. Aerea, sed deaurata quaedam arbor ante
to-be-prepared ordered a-bronze but gilded certain tree before
imperatoris sedile stabat, cuius ramos itidem aereae diversi
of-the-emperor the-seat stood whose branches likewise bronze of-diverse
generis deaurataeque aves replebant, quae secundum species
kind and-gilded birds filled which according-to species
suas diversarum avium voces emittebant. Imperatoris vero
their of-diverse birds the-voices sent-forth of-the-emperor but
solium huiusmodi erat arte compositum, ut in momento
the-throne in-such-a-way was by-art composed that in a-moment
humile, exelsius modo, quam mox videretur sublime, quod
low higher now as soon it-was-seen lofty which
inmensae magnitudinis, incertum utrum aerei an lignei,
of-immense size uncertain whether bronze or wooden
verum auro tecti leones quasi custodiebant, qui cauda
but with-gold covered lions as-if guarded which with-the-tail
terram percutientes aperto ore linguisque mobilibus rugitum
the-ground striking with-open mouth and-tongues moving a-roar
emittebant. In hac igitur duorum eunuchorum humeris
sent-forth in this therefore of-two eunuchs on-the-shoulders
incumbens ante imperatoris praesentiam sum deductus.
leaning before of-the-emperor the-presence I-was led

Cumque in adventu meo rugitum leones emitterent, aves
and-when at arrival my a-roar the-lions sent-forth the-birds
secundum speties suas perstreperent, nullo sum terrore, nulla
according-to species their clamored by-no I-was terror by-no
admiratione commotus, quoniam quidem ex his omnibus eos
wonder moved since indeed about these all those
qui bene noverant fueram percontatus. Tertio itaque pronus
who well knew I-had-been inquired a-third-time and-so prostrate
imperatorem adorans caput sustuli et, quem prius moderata
the-emperor adoring my-head I-raised and him-whom before by-moderate
mensura a terra elevatum sedere vidi, mox aliis
measure from the-ground raised to-sit I-saw soon in-other
indutum vestibus poenes domus laquear sedere prospexi;
dressed clothes near of-the-house the-ceiling to-sit I-beheld
quod qualiter fieret, cogitare non potui, nisi forte eo
which how it-happened to-think not I-could unless perhaps by-that
sit subvectus ergálio, quo torcularium arbores subvehuntur.
he-was raised-up machine by-which of-wine-presses the-beams are-raised
Per se autem tunc nihil locutus, quoniam, etsi vellet,
through himself moreover then nothing having-spoken since even-if he-wished
intercapedo maxima indécorum faceret, de vita Berengarii
the-gap greatest unseemly would-make about the-life of-Berengar
et sospitate per logothetam est percontatus. Cui cum
and safety through the-logothete he-has inquired to-whom when
consequenter respondissem, interprete sum innuente egressus
fittingly I-had-answered the-interpreter I-have nodding gone-out
et in datum mihi hospitium mox receptus.
and into given to-me lodging soon received

Having nothing from Berengar but a lying letter, Liutprand presents his own gifts in Berengar's name: mail coats, shields, cups, swords, and four young eunuchs. Constantine feasts him in the Hall of the Nineteen Couches, where gilded ropes lower bowls of fruit to the table. Before Palm Sunday he sees the emperor pay his officials in gold, and is given a cloak and a pound of gold.

Sed nec hoc pigeat memorare, quid tunc pro Berengario egerim, 6
but nor this let-it-irk to-recall what then for Berengar I-did
scilicet ut agnoscatur, quanta hunc caritate dilexerim
namely that it-may-be-recognized with-how-great him charity I-loved
et cuiusmodi ab eo reconpensationem pro bene gestis
and of-what-kind from him requital for well done-things
acceperim. Hispanorum nuntii et nominatus Liutefredus,
I-received of-the-Spaniards the-messengers and the-named Liutfred
domini nostri tunc regis Ottonis nuntius, magna ex eorum
of-lord our then king Otto the-messenger great from of-their
dominorum parte munera imperatori Constantino detulerant.
lords part gifts to-the-emperor Constantine had-brought
Ego vero Berengarii ex parte nihil praeter epistolam, et hanc
I but of-Berengar from part nothing except a-letter and this
mendatio plenam, detuleram. Aestuabat itaque non parum
with-lying full had-brought was-seething and-so not a-little
hac pro verecundia animus et, quid super hac re faceret,
this for shame my-mind and what about this matter it-should-do
cogitabat attentius. Aestuanti autem et mihi nimium
was-pondering more-attentively to-the-seething moreover and to-me too-much
fluctuanti mens suggessit, quatinus dona, quae imperatori mea
wavering my-mind suggested that the-gifts which to-the-emperor my
ex parte detuleram, Berengarii ex parte conferrem parvumque
from part I-had-brought of-Berengar from part I-should-confer and-the-small

munus, prout possem, verbis ornarem. Optuli autem
gift as I-could with-words I-should-adorn I-offered moreover
loricas optimas VIIII, scuta optima cum bullis deauratis VII,
mail-coats excellent nine shields excellent with bosses gilded seven
coppas argenteas deauratas II, enses, lanceas, verua, mancipia
cups silver gilded two swords lances spits slaves
IIIIor carzimasia, imperatori nominatis omnibus preciosiora.
four carzimasia to-the-emperor than-the-named all more-precious
Carzimasium autem Greci vocant amputatis virilibus et
carzimasium moreover the-Greeks call with-cut-off virile-parts and
virga puerum eunuchum; quod Verdunenses mercatores ob
the-rod a-boy eunuch which the-Verdun merchants for
inmensum lucrum facere et in Hispaniam ducere solent.
immense profit to-make and into Spain to-take are-wont

7 His ita gestis imperator me post triduum ad palatium vocare
these thus done the-emperor me after three-days to the-palace to-call
precepit proprioque mecum ore locutus ad convivium
ordered and-with-his-own with-me mouth having-spoken to a-banquet
invitavit magnoque post convivium me meosque asseculas
invited and-with-great after the-banquet me and-my attendants
munere donavit. Verum quia narrandi se occasio intulit,
gift presented but because of-narrating itself the-occasion has-offered
qualis eius sit mensa, festis praecipue diebus, qualesque
of-what-kind his is the-table on-feast especially days and-what-kind
ad mensam ludi celebrentur, bonum non opinor silere, sed
at the-table games are-celebrated good not I-think to-be-silent but
scribere.
to-write

8 Est domus iuxta yppodromum aquilonem versus mirae
there-is a-house beside the-hippodrome the-north toward of-wondrous
altitudinis seu pulchritudinis, quae Decanneacubita vocatur,
height or beauty which the-Nineteen-Couches is-called

quod nomen non ab re, sed ex apparentibus causis sortita
which name not from nothing but from apparent causes got
est; deca enim grece, latine X, ennea IX, cubita autem a
it-has deca for in-Greek in-Latin ten ennea nine couches moreover from
cubando inclinata vel curvata possumus dicere. Hoc autem
lying-down inclined or curved we-can to-say this moreover
ideo, quoniam quidem X et IX mensae in ea, quae secundum
for-this since indeed ten and nine tables in it which according-to
carnem est, domini nostri Iesu Christi nativitate apponuntur.
the-flesh is of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ on-the-nativity are-set
In quibus imperator pariter et convivae non sedendo, ut
in which the-emperor together and the-guests not by-sitting as
ceteris diebus, sed recumbendo epulantur; quibus in diebus
on-the-other days but by-reclining feast which in days
non argenteis, sed aureis tantum vasis ministratur. Post cibum
not with-silver but with-golden only vessels it-is-served after the-food
autem aureis vasis tribus sunt poma delata, quae ob inmensum
moreover in-golden vessels three were fruits brought which for immense
pondus non hominum manibus, sed purpura tectis vehiculis
weight not of-men by-the-hands but with-purple covered by-carts
sunt allata. Apponuntur autem duo hoc in mensa modo. Per
were brought are-set moreover two in-this at the-table way through
foramina laquearis tres sunt funes pellibus deauratis tecti cum
the-openings of-the-ceiling three are ropes with-skins gilded covered with
anulis depositi aureis, qui ansis, quae in scutulis prominent,
rings let-down golden which to-the-handles which on the-bowls project
positi, adiuvantibus inferius quattuor aut eo amplius hominibus
placed helping from-below four or it more men
per vertibile, quod supra laquearium est, ergalium in mensam
through the-revolving which above the-ceiling is machine onto the-table
subvehuntur eodemque modo deponuntur. Ludos denique, quos
are-lifted and-in-the-same way are-let-down the-games finally which

ibi perspexerim, quia nimis longum est scribere, praetermitto;
there I-saw because too long it-is to-write I-pass-over
unum solummodo ob admirationem hic inserere non pigebit.
one only for the-wonder here to-insert not it-shall-irk
9 Venit quidam XXIIIIor et eo amplius pedum longitudinis
there-came a-certain-man twenty-four and it more of-feet in-length
lignum sine manuum amminiculis in fronte gerens, quod
a-pole without of-hands supports on his-forehead carrying which
cubito a summitate inferius, bicubitum transversim habuerat.
a-cubit from the-top lower two-cubits crosswise had
Adducti sunt autem duo pueri nudi, sed campestrati, hoc est
brought were moreover two boys naked but girded that is
succinctoria habentes, qui per lignum ascendentes eodemque
loincloths having who up the-pole climbing and-on-the-same
ludentes versisque deorsum capitibus per id descendentes
playing and-turned downward their-heads down it descending
ita servaverunt immobile, ac si radicitus terrae esset
so kept-it immovable as if by-the-roots to-the-earth it-were
adfixum. Denique post unius descensum alter, qui remanserat
fixed finally after of-one the-descent the-other who had-remained
eodemque solus luserat, ampliori me admiratione attonitum
and-on-the-same alone had-played with-greater me wonder astonished
reddidit. Quoquo modo enim, quoad uterque luserat, videbatur
made in-whatever way for while each had-played it-seemed
possibile, quoniam quidem quamquam mirabili, verum pondere
possible since indeed although with-wondrous but with-weight
non dispari lignum, per quod ascenderant, gubernabant.
not unequal the-pole up which they-had-climbed they-steered
Unus vero, qui in ligni summitate remansit, quia ita se
the-one but who on of-the-pole the-top remained because so himself
aequaliter ponderavit, ut et luserit ac sanus descenderit,
equally he-balanced that both he-played and sound descended

ita me stupidum reddidit, ut ipsum etiam imperatorem mea
so me stupefied made that the-very even emperor my
admiratio non lateret. Unde et accersito interprete, quid
wonder not escaped-the-notice-of whence also summoned the-interpreter what
mihi mirabilius videretur, est sciscitatus: puer, qui se adeo
to-me more-wonderful seemed he-has inquired the-boy who himself so
moderate rexerat, ut immobile lignum esset, an is, qui id in
moderately had-ruled that immovable the-pole should-be or he who it on
fronte tam argumentose tenuerat, ut puerorum nec pondus
his-forehead so ingeniously had-held that of-the-boys neither the-weight
neque ludus vel modicum flecteret. Cumque me ignorare, quid
nor the-play even a-little bent-it and-when me not-to-know what
mihi thaumastoteron, id est mirabilius, videretur, edicerem,
to-me more-wonderful that is more-wonderful seemed I-declared
magno inflatus cachinno se similiter neque scire respondit.
with-great puffed-up laughter himself likewise not to-know he-answered
Sed neque hoc silentio praetereundum esse arbitror, quod 10
but not this in-silence to-be-passed-over to-be I-think that
novi mirique aliud eôdem perspexerim. In ea, quae
new and-wondrous another-thing there I-saw in that which
ante vaiophóron, quod nos palmarum ramos dicimus,
before palm-bearing which we of-palms the-branches call
ebdomada, tam militibus quamque et in diversis constitutis
the-week as-much to-the-soldiers as also in diverse established
officiis numismatorum aureorum erogationem, prout cuiusque
offices of-coins golden the-distribution as of-each
meretur officium, imperator facit. Cui erogationi quia me
deserves the-office the-emperor makes at-which distribution because me
interesse voluit, venire praecepit. Fuit autem huiusmodi.
to-be-present he-wished to-come he-ordered it-was moreover of-this-kind
Erat apposita X cubitorum longitudinis ac IIIIor latitudinis
there-was set ten of-cubits in-length and four in-breadth

mensa, quae numismata loculis colligata, prout cuique
a-table which the-coins in-purses bound as to-each
debebatur, numeris extrinsecus in loculis scriptis retinebat.
was-owed with-numbers on-the-outside on the-purses written held
Ingrediebantur denique ante imperatorem non confuse, sed
they-entered finally before the-emperor not confusedly but
ordinatim secundum vocantis vocem, qui scripta virorum
in-order according-to of-the-caller the-voice who the-written of-the-men
secundum officii dignitatem nomina recitabat. Quorum
according-to of-office the-dignity names read-out of-whom
primus vocatus est rector domus, cui non in manibus,
the-first called was the-rector of-the-house to-whom not in hands
sed in humeris posita sunt numismata cum scaramangis
but on shoulders placed were the-coins with scaramangia
IIIIor. Post quem o domésticos tis ascalónas et o
four after whom the domestic of-the scholae and the
delongáris tis ploôs sunt vocati, quorum alter militibus,
drungarius of-the fleet were called of-whom the-one to-the-soldiers
navigantibus praeest alter. Hi itaque pari numero, quia
to-the-sailors commands the-other these and-so by-equal number because
dignitas par erat, numismata et scaramangas suscipientes
the-dignity equal was the-coins and the-scaramangia receiving
prae multitudine non iam in humeris portaverunt, sed
for multitude not now on shoulders they-carried but
adiuvantibus aliis post se cum labore traxerunt. Post
helping others after themselves with toil dragged after
hos admissi sunt magistri numero XXIIII, quibus erogatae
these admitted were the-magistri in-number twenty-four to-whom distributed
sunt numismatorum aureorum librae, unicuique secundum
were of-coins golden pounds to-each according-to
eundem numerum XXIIII cum scaramangis duabus.
the-same number twenty-four with scaramangia two

Patriciorum deinde ordo hos pone est secutus et duodecim
of-the-patricians then the-order these behind has followed and with-twelve
numismatorum libris cum scaramanga una donatus. Qui
of-coins pounds with scaramangion one presented of-which
sicut nec patriciorum, ita nec librarum, nisi quod unicuique
as not of-the-patricians so not of-the-pounds except what to-each
dabatur, numerum scio. Turba post haec inmensa vocatur,
was-given the-number I-know the-crowd after these immense is-called
protospathariorum, spathariorum, spatharocandidatorum,
of-protospatharii of-spatharii of-spatharocandidati
kitonitarum, manglavitarum, protocaravorum, quorum VII
of-chamberlains of-manglavitae of-protocaravi of-whom seven
alius, VI, V, IIII, III, II, I secundum dignitatis modum
one six five four three two one according-to of-dignity the-measure
acceperat alius. Neque enim hoc te una patratum esse die
had-received another nor for this you in-one accomplished to-be day
existimare velim. Coeptum quippe quinta feria ab hora
to-suppose I-would-wish begun indeed on-the-fifth day from the-hour
diei prima usque in horam quartam sexta et septima
of-the-day first until into the-hour fourth on-the-sixth and seventh
feria est ab imperatore finitum. His namque, qui minus
day it-was by the-emperor finished to-these for who less
quam libram accipiunt, non iam imperator, sed parakinúmenos
than a-pound receive not now the-emperor but the-parakoimomenos
in ea, quae ante pascha est, tota ebdomada tribuit. Adstante
in that which before Easter is whole week bestows standing-by
itaque me et cum admiratione rem considerante per
and-so me and with wonder the-thing considering through
logothetam, quid super hac re mihi placeret, sciscitatus est
the-logothete what about this matter to-me pleased inquired has
imperator. Cui inquam: ‘Placeret sane, si prodesset; sicut
the-emperor to-whom I-say it-would-please indeed if it-profited as

et aestuanti diviti Lazari visa requies placuisset, si
also to-the-seething rich-man of-Lazarus the-seen rest would-have-pleased if
proveniret; cui quia non accidit, qui quaeso placere potuit?'
it-had-come to-whom because not it-befell how I-ask to-please could-it
Subridens itaque imperator paululum pudore commotus, ut
smiling and-so the-emperor a-little by-shame moved that
ad se irem, capite innuit palliumque magnum cum
to him I-should-go with-his-head nodded and-a-cloak great with
aureorum libra, quam libenter dedit, libentius accepi.
of-gold a-pound which gladly he-gave more-gladly I-received

LIUTPRAND OF CREMONA

Liber de rebus gestis Ottonis

The Deeds of Otto

I · THE APPEAL TO OTTO

While Berengar and Adalbert tyrannize Italy, Pope John begs Otto to free the Roman church. Otto drives out Berengar and Adalbert and is crowned emperor at Rome by John, who swears never to aid them. The pope then breaks his oath and invites Adalbert, and the Romans tell Otto's envoys of John's crimes: his mistresses, the Lateran made a brothel, and roofs that let the rain fall on the altars.

Regnantibus, immo saevientibus, in Italia, et ut verius 1
reigning nay raging in Italy and that more-truly
fateamur, tyrannidem exercentibus Berengario atque Adalberto,
we-may-confess tyranny exercising Berengar and Adalbert
Iohannes summus pontifex et universalis papa, cuius tunc
John the-highest pontiff and universal pope whose then
ecclesia supradictorum Berengarii atque Adalberti saevitiam erat
the-church of-the-above-said Berengar and Adalbert the-savagery had
experta, nuntios sanctae Romanae ecclesiae, Iohannem videlicet
experienced messengers of-the-holy Roman church John namely
cardinalem diaconem et Azonem scriniarium, serenissimo
cardinal deacon and Azo the-secretary to-the-most-serene
atque piissimo tunc regi, nunc augusto caesari Ottoni
and most-pious then king now august caesar Otto
destinavit, suppliciter litteris et rerum signis orans, quatinus
dispatched suppliantly by-letters and of-things by-signs praying that
Dei pro amore sanctorumque apostolorum Petri et Pauli,
of-God for love and-of-the-holy apostles Peter and Paul
quos delictorum suorum cupierat esse remissores, se sibique
whom of-sins his he-had-desired to-be the-remitters him and-to-him
commissam sanctam Romanam ecclesiam ex eorum faucibus
entrusted the-holy Roman church from their jaws
liberaret ac saluti et libertati pristinae restitueret. Haec
he-should-free and to-safety and freedom former restore these-things

dum Romani nuntii conqueruntur, vir venerabilis Waldpertus,
while the-Roman messengers complain a-man venerable Walpert
sanctae Mediolanensis ecclesiae archiepiscopus, semivivus ex
of-the-holy Milanese church archbishop half-alive from
praedictorum rabie Berengarii atque Adelberti liberatus, superius
of-the-aforesaid the-rage of-Berengar and of-Adalbert freed above
memorati Ottonis, tunc regis, nunc caesaris augusti, potentiam
of-the-mentioned Otto then king now caesar august the-might
adiit, indicans se non posse ferre et pati Berengarii
approached showing himself not to-be-able to-bear and to-suffer of-Berengar
atque Adelberti necnon et Willae saevitiam, quae Mannassen
and of-Adalbert and also of-Willa the-savagery who Manasses
Arelatensem episcopum contra ius fasque Mediolanensi sedi
of-Arles bishop against right and-divine-law over-the-Milanese see
praefecerat. Aiebat sane hanc ecclesiae suae esse calamitatem,
had-set he-said indeed this of-church his to-be the-calamity
quae, quod se suosque capere oporteret, interciperet. Sed Waldo
which what him and-his-own to-take behooved intercepted but Waldo
Cumanus episcopus hunc ponê est secutus, non disparem a
of-Como bishop him behind has followed not unlike from
Berengario, Adalperto et Willa, quam Waldpertus, contumeliam
Berengar Adalbert and Willa than Walpert an-insult
clamitans se esse perpessum. Venerant et nonnulli alterius
crying himself to-have suffered had-come also some of-another
ordinis ex Italia viri, quos inter illustris marchio Otbertus
order from Italy men whom among the-illustrious marquis Otbert
cum apostolicis cucurrerat nuntiis, a sanctissimo Ottone,
with the-apostolic had-run messengers from the-most-holy Otto
tunc rege nunc augusto caesare, consilium, auxilium expetens.
then king now august caesar counsel help seeking

Horum itaque rex piissimus lacrimosis questibus inclinatus, 2
of-these and-so the-king most-pious by-the-tearful complaints inclined
non quae sua, sed quae Iesu Christi sunt
not the-things-which his but the-things-which of-Jesus Christ are
cogitans, filium suum sibi aequivocum contra morem
thinking son his to-himself namesake against custom
puerilibus in annis regem constituens, eum in Saxonia
boyish in years king establishing him in Saxony
dereliquit; ipse collectis copiis Italiam percitus venit. Qui
left he-himself gathered forces to-Italy roused came who
tanto Berengarium atque Adalpertum celerius regno
by-so-much Berengar and Adalbert more-swiftly from-the-kingdom
expulit, quanto constat, quod commilitones Petrum et
expelled by-as-much it-is-agreed that as-fellow-soldiers Peter and
Paulum sanctissimos apostolos habuit. Bonus itaque rex
Paul the-most-holy apostles he-had the-good and-so king
dispersa congregans et fracta consolidans, quod cuique
the-scattered gathering and the-broken making-firm what to-each
proprium fuit, restituit, dein Romam similia facturus adivit.
own was restored then to-Rome similar-things about-to-do went
Ubi miro ornatu novoque apparatu susceptus ab eodem 3
where with-wondrous adornment and-new apparatus received by the-same
summo pontifice et universali papa Iohanne unctionem suscepit
highest pontiff and universal pope John the-anointing received
imperii; solum propria non restituit, verum etiam ingentibus
of-empire only his-own not he-restored but also with-huge
gemmarum, auri argentique muneribus honoravit. Iusiurandum
of-gems of-gold and-of-silver gifts he-honored an-oath
vero ab eodem papa Iohanne supra preciosissimum corpus
but from the-same pope John over the-most-precious body
sancti Petri atque omnibus civitatis proceribus se numquam
of-holy Peter and all of-the-city the-nobles himself never

Berengario atque Adelberto auxiliaturum accepit. Post haec
to-Berengar and Adalbert about-to-give-aid he-received after these-things
Papiam quantotius repedavit.
to-Pavia as-quickly-as-possible he-went-back

4 Interea praefatus papa Iohannes iuramenti et promissionis
meanwhile the-aforesaid pope John of-the-oath and of-the-promise
oblitus, quam sancto fecerat imperatori, ob Adelbertum,
forgetful which to-the-holy he-had-made emperor for Adalbert
ut se adeat, mittit, iuramento ei adfirmans se illum
that him he-come sends by-oath to-him affirming himself him
contra sanctissimi imperatoris potentiam adiuturum. Adeo
against of-the-most-holy emperor the-might about-to-help so-much
enim eundem Adelbertum, ecclesiarum Dei eiusdemque
for the-same Adalbert of-the-churches of-God and-of-the-same
papae Iohannis persecutorem, imperator sanctus terruerat,
pope John the-persecutor the-emperor holy had-terrified
ut omnem Italiam deserens Fraxinetum adiret seque
that all Italy deserting Fraxinetum he-approached and-himself
Sarracenorum fidei commendaret. Imperator denique iustus,
of-the-Saracens to-the-faith commended the-emperor finally just
cur Adelbertum Iohannes papa, quem prius odio vehementi
why Adalbert John pope whom before with-hatred vehement
insequebatur, nunc diligeret, satis mirari non potuit. Accersitis
he-pursued now should-love enough to-wonder not he-could summoned
quam ob rem quibusdam familiaribus, si hoc verum esset,
which for reason certain intimates if this true were
Romam dirigit percontatum. Cumque eodem nuntii
to-Rome he-directs to-inquire and-when thither the-messengers
pervenissent, huiusmodi non a quibuslibet aut paucis, sed
had-come of-this-kind not from any or few but
ab omnibus Romanis civibus responsa suscipiunt: ‘Non dispar
from all the-Roman citizens answers receive not unlike

videtur ratio, cur Iohannes papa sanctissimum imperatorem,
seems the-reason why John pope the-most-holy emperor
suum scilicet ex Adalberti manibus liberatorem, et diabolus
his namely from of-Adalbert the-hands the-liberator and the-devil
oderit creatorem. Imperator, quemadmodum re ipsa
hates the-creator the-emperor as in-the-thing itself
experti sumus, ea, quae Dei sunt, sapit, operatur, diligit,
experienced we-have the-things which of-God are savors works loves
ecclesiastica et secularia negotia armis tutatur, moribus
the-church's and the-secular affairs with-arms he-protects with-manners
ornat, legibus emundat; Iohannes papa his omnibus adversatur.
adorns with-laws cleanses John pope these all opposes
Non clam populo est, quod fatemur. Testis est Rainerii
not hidden from-the-people is what we-confess witness is of-Rainer
sui ipsius militis vidua, quam caeco captus igne multis
his own soldier the-widow whom by-blind seized fire over-many
praefectam urbibus sacrosanctis beati Petri donavit aureis
set cities with-sacrosanct of-blessed Peter he-presented golden
crucibus atque calicibus. Testis est Stephana, eius amita, quae
crosses and chalices witness is Stephana his aunt who
in effusione, quod ex eo conceperat, recens hominem exivit.
in the-pouring-out of-what from him she-had-conceived lately the-man departed
Quod si cuncta taceant, Lateranense palatium, sanctorum
which if all-things should-be-silent the-Lateran palace of-the-saints
quondam hospitium, nunc prostibulum meretricum, non
once the-lodging now the-brothel of-harlots not
silebit amitam coniugem, Stephaniae alterius concubinae
shall-be-silent the-aunt as-wife of-Stephania another concubine
sororem. Testis omnium gentium praeter Romanarum absentia
the-sister witness of-all the-peoples except the-Roman the-absence
mulierum, quae sanctorum apostolorum limina orandi
of-women who of-the-holy apostles the-thresholds of-praying

gratia timent visere, cum nonnullas ante dies paucos hunc
for-the-sake fear to-visit since some before days few him
audierint coniugatas, viduas, virgines vi oppressisse. Testes
they-have-heard married widows virgins by-force to-have-oppressed witnesses
sunt sanctorum apostolorum ecclesiae, quae non stillatim
are of-the-holy apostles the-churches which not drop-by-drop
pluviam, sed totum tectum intrinsecus, supra ipsa etiam
the-rain but the-whole roof inside over the-very even
sacrosancta altaria imbrem admittunt. Quanto nos terrore
sacrosanct altars a-downpour admit with-how-great us terror
tigna afficiunt, cum divinam opem eodem deposcimus?
the-beams affect when divine help there we-ask
Mors in tectis regnat, quae nos orare multa volentes
death in the-roofs reigns which us to-pray much wishing
impedit atque domum Domini mox linquere cogit. Testes
hinders and the-house of-the-Lord soon to-leave compels witnesses
sunt non solum iuncearum curatura, sed et cotidianarum
are not only of-rush-like by-the-care but also of-everyday
mulieres formarum. Cui idem est, et silicem pedibus quae
women of-shapes to-whom the-same is and the-flint with-feet which
conterunt atrum, et quae magnorum subvehuntur adiutorio
they-wear black and those-who of-great are-carried by-the-help
iumentorum. Atque hoc rei est, quod tanta ei cum
beasts and this of-the-matter is that so-great to-him with
imperatore sancto discordia est, lupis et agnis quanta
the-emperor holy discord is as-to-wolves and lambs as-much-as
sortito optigit. Illi haec ut inpunite liceat,
by-lot has-befallen to-him these-things that with-impunity it-may-be-allowed
Adelpertum sibi patrem, tutorem, defensorem parat'.
Adalbert for-himself as-father guardian defender he-prepares

Otto hopes the young pope will reform, besieges Berengar at San Leo, and answers John's charges that he broke his promises. Liutprand and Landohard go to Rome to clear Otto but are rebuffed, and Adalbert is welcomed into the city. When Otto approaches, the pope and Adalbert flee, and the Romans swear never to elect a pope without the emperor's consent. A great synod gathers in Saint Peter's, its bishops and clergy named one by one.

Haec dum a redeuntibus nuntiis imperator audiret: 'Puer', 5
these-things when from the-returning messengers the-emperor heard a-boy
inquit, 'est, facile bonorum immutabitur exemplo virorum.
he-says he-is easily of-good he-shall-be-changed by-the-example men
Sperabo eum obiurgatione honesta, suasione liberali facile ex
I-shall-hope him by-reproof honorable by-persuasion generous easily from
illis sese emersurum malis, dicemusque cum propheta: Haec
those himself about-to-emerge evils and-we-shall-say with the-prophet this
est inmutatio dextrae excelsi'. Et adiecit: 'Quod prius
is the-change of-the-right-hand of-the-most-high and he-added what first
rerum ordo deposcit, Berengarium in Feretrato monte
of-things the-order demands Berengar on the-Montefeltro mount
resistentem propulsemus, dein paterna abdicatione domnum
resisting let-us-drive-off then with-fatherly admonition the-lord
papam conveniamus; si non voluntate, verecundia saltem in
pope let-us-meet if not by-will by-shame at-least into
virum perfectum sese commutabit. Sicque forsitan devictus
a-man perfect himself he-shall-change and-thus perhaps overcome
bene consuescere, pudebit desuescere'.
well to-grow-accustomed he-shall-be-ashamed to-grow-unaccustomed
His expletis Papiae navim conscendit ac per Heridani alveum 6
these completed at-Pavia a-ship he-boarded and through of-the-Po the-channel
Ravennam usque pervenit indeque progrediens montem
to-Ravenna all-the-way came and-thence advancing the-mount

Feretratum, qui Sancti Leonis dicitur, in quo Berengarius
Montefeltro which of-Saint Leo is-called in which Berengar
et Willa erant, obsedit. Quo et praefatus papa Leonem,
and Willa were he-besieged whither also the-aforesaid pope Leo
venerabilem sanctae Romanae ecclesiae tunc protoscriniarium,
venerable of-the-holy Roman church then chief-secretary
nunc in eadem sede beati Petri apostolorum principis
now in the-same see of-blessed Peter of-the-apostles the-prince
vicarium, necnon et Demetrium, optimatium Romanorum
vicar and-also also Demetrius of-the-nobles Roman
illustriorem, sancto imperatori nuntios dirigit, mandans
the-more-illustrious to-the-holy emperor as-messengers directs sending-word
haud mirum esse, si hactenus iuventutis igne victus
not wonderful to-be if hitherto of-youth by-the-fire overcome
puerile quid gesserit; iam tempus instabat, cum alieno
childish something he-had-done now the-time pressed when in-another's
cuperet vivere more. Mandavit etiam dolose, quod quendam
he-desired to-live manner he-sent-word also craftily that a-certain
Leonem episcopum et Iohannem diaconem cardinalem, suos
Leo bishop and John deacon cardinal his
infideles, suscepisset, et quia sanctus imperator promissionis
disloyal-men he-had-received and that the-holy emperor of-promise
suae fidem violaret, dum eos, qui eo loci manebant, non
his the-faith violated while those who in-that place remained not
ipsi, sed sibi iuramento astringeret. Quibus imperator:
to-him but to-himself by-oath he-bound to-whom the-emperor
'Pro correctione', inquit, 'ac morum inmutatione, quam
for the-correction he-says and of-manners the-change which
promittit, gratias ago; ex promissionis vero commutatione,
he-promises thanks I-give from of-the-promise but the-change
cuius me arguit fecisse, si verum sit, ipsi perpendite.
of-which me he-accuses to-have-made if true it-be yourselves weigh

Omnem terram sancti Petri, quae nostrae potestati proveniret,
all the-land of-holy Peter which to-our power should-come
promisimus reddere; atque id rei est, quod ex hac
we-promised to-return and that of-the-matter is that from this
munitione Berengarium cum omni familia pellere laboramus.
fortress Berengar with all his-household to-drive we-labor
Quo enim pacto terram hanc ei reddere possumus, si non
by-what for way land this to-him to-return can-we if not
prius eam ex violentorum manibus ereptam potestati nostrae
first it from of-the-violent the-hands snatched to-power our
subdamus? Leonem episcopum et Iohannem cardinalem
we-subject Leo bishop and John cardinal
diaconem, suos infideles, quos nos suscepisse accusat, his
deacon his disloyal-men whom us to-have-received he-accuses in-these
temporibus nec vidimus nec suscepimus: Constantinopolim
times neither we-saw nor we-received to-Constantinople
domno papa eos ob iniuriam nostram proficiscentes dirigente,
the-lord pope them for injury our setting-out directing
Capuae sunt, ut audivimus, capti. Quibuscum etiam
at-Capua they-were as we-have-heard taken with-whom also
Saleccum, natione Bulgarium, educatione Ungarium, domni
Salecc by-nation a-Bulgarian by-upbringing a-Hungarian of-the-lord
papae familiarissimum, et Zacheum, virum reprobatum,
pope most-intimate and Zacheus a-man reprobate
divinarum atque humanarum inscium litterarum, a domno
of-divine and human ignorant letters by the-lord
papa episcopum noviter consecratum et Ungariis ad
pope bishop newly consecrated and to-the-Hungarians for
praedicandum, ut super nos irruant, destinatum, eodem
preaching that upon us they-should-rush destined there
captos esse audivimus. Haec domnum papam nullis
taken to-be we-have-heard these-things the-lord pope with-none

narrantibus fecisse crederemus, nisi litterae fidem admitterent,
telling to-have-done we-would-believe unless the-letters belief admitted
quae plumbo signatae sui nominis caracteres monstrant'.
which with-lead sealed of-his name the-characters show
7 His expletis Landohardum a Saxonia Mimendensem et
these completed Landohard from Saxony of-Minden and
Liudprandum ab Italia Cremonensem episcopos cum praefatis
Liutprand from Italy of-Cremona bishops with the-aforesaid
nuntiis Romam dirigit, domno papae se inculpabilem esse
messengers to-Rome he-directs to-the-lord pope himself blameless to-be
satisfacturos. Quorum etiam militibus hoc imperator iustus
about-to-satisfy of-whom also to-the-soldiers this the-emperor just
imposuit, ut, si secus domnus papa non crederet, duello
imposed that if otherwise the-lord pope not believed by-duel
verum esse approbarent. Praefati igitur Landohardus et
true it-to-be they-should-prove the-aforesaid therefore Landohard and
Liudprandus episcopi Romam ante domni papae praesentiam
Liutprand bishops to-Rome before of-the-lord pope the-presence
venientes tanto sunt in honore suscepti, ut non eos lateret,
coming such were in honor received that not them it-escaped
quanto sanctum imperatorem taedio fastidiret. Ordinatim
by-how-much the-holy emperor with-weariness he-loathed in-order
tamen, prout eis iniunctum fuerat, enarrantes, non
yet as to-them enjoined it-had-been relating not
iuramento, non duello satisfactionem papa recipere voluit,
by-oath not by-duel satisfaction the-pope to-receive wished
sed in eadem, qua fuerat, mentis duritia mansit. Subdole
but in the-same in-which he-had-been of-mind hardness he-remained craftily
tamen post dies octo Iohannem episcopum Narniensem et
yet after days eight John bishop of-Narni and
Benedictum cardinalem diaconem cum istis domno imperatori
Benedict cardinal deacon with these to-the-lord emperor

destinavit, putans se hunc suis deludere posse versutiis,
he-dispatched thinking himself him with-his to-delude to-be-able wiles
cui nimis est verba dare difficile. Ante quorum reditum
to-whom too-much is words to-give difficult before whose return
Adelbertus invitante papa a Fraxineto rediens Centumcellas
Adalbert inviting the-pope from Fraxinetum returning to-Civitavecchia
advenit; dein Romam profectus non, ut debuit, repudiatus,
arrived then to-Rome having-set-out not as he-ought repudiated
sed honorifice a papa est susceptus.
but honorably by the-pope was received
Haec dum aguntur, Phoebi radiis grave cancri sidus 8
these-things while are-done of-Phoebus with-rays heavy of-the-Crab the-star
inaestuans imperatorem Romanis arcibus propellebat. Sed
seething the-emperor from-the-Roman citadels drove but
cum virginale sidus gratam rediens temperiem ferret, collectis
when the-virgin's star the-pleasant returning mildness brought gathered
copiis, clam Romanis invitantibus, Romam advenit. Quid enim
forces secretly the-Romans inviting to-Rome he-came why for
clam dixerim, cum maior Romanorum pars optimatium sancti
secretly should-I-say when the-greater of-the-Romans part of-the-nobles of-Saint
Pauli castellum invaserit sanctumque imperatorem obsidibus
Paul the-castle seized and-the-holy emperor hostages
etiam datis invitaverit? Quid multis morer? Iuxta urbem
even given invited what by-many should-I-delay near the-city
castrametatus imperator, Roma papa simul atque Adalpertus
having-pitched-camp the-emperor from-Rome the-pope together and Adalbert
aufugiunt. Cives vero imperatorem sanctum cum suis
flee the-citizens but the-emperor holy with his
omnibus in urbem suscipiunt, fidelitatem repromittunt, hoc
all into the-city receive fidelity promise-again this
addentes et firmiter iurantes numquam se papam electuros
adding and firmly swearing never themselves a-pope about-to-elect

aut ordinaturos praeter consensum et electionem domni
or about-to-ordain except-for the-consent and election of-the-lord
imperatoris Ottonis caesaris augusti filiique ipsius regis Ottonis.
emperor Otto caesar august and-of-son his king Otto
9 Post triduum rogantibus tam Romanis episcopis quam
after three-days asking as-much the-Roman bishops as
plebe magnus in sancti Petri ecclesia fit conventus,
the-people a-great in of-Saint Peter the-church there-is assembly
sederuntque cum imperatore archiepiscopi ab Italia: pro
and-sat with the-emperor archbishops from Italy for
Ingelfredo Aquilegensi patriarcha, quem in eadem urbe
Ingelfred of-Aquileia patriarch whom in the-same city
languor repente, ut fit, ortus arripuerat, Rodalfus
a-sickness suddenly as happens arisen had-seized Rodalf
diaconus, Waldpertus Mediolanensis, Petrus Ravennas; a
deacon Walpert of-Milan Peter of-Ravenna from
Saxonia: Adeltac archiepiscopus et Landohardus episcopus
Saxony Adaldag archbishop and Landohard bishop
Mimendensis; a Francia: Otkerius episcopus Spirensis;
of-Minden from Francia Otker bishop of-Speyer
ab Italia: Hupertus Parmensis, Liudprandus Cremonensis,
from Italy Hubert of-Parma Liutprand of-Cremona
Hermenaldus Regensis; a Tuscia: Cuonradus Luccensis,
Hermenald of-Reggio from Tuscany Conrad of-Lucca
Everarius Aritiensis, Pisanus, Seniensis, Florentius, Pestruensis,
Everard of-Arezzo of-Pisa of-Siena of-Florence of-Pistoia
Petrus Cámerinensis, Spoletinus; a Romanis: Gregorius
Peter of-Camerino of-Spoleto from the-Romans Gregory
Albanensis, Sico Hostiensis, Benedictus Portuensis, Lucidus
of-Albano Sico of-Ostia Benedict of-Porto Lucidus
Gavensis, Theophilactus Praenestinus, Wido Silvae candidae,
of-Gabii Theophylact of-Palestrina Guy of-Silva Candida

Leo Veletrinensis, Sico Bledensis, Stephanus Cerensis, Iohannes
Leo of-Velletri Sico of-Bieda Stephen of-Cere John
Nepesinus, Iohannes Tiburtinus, Iohannes Forocludensis,
of-Nepi John of-Tivoli John of-Forum-Clodii
Romanus Feretinensis, Iohannes Normensis, Iohannes Berulensis,
Romanus of-Ferentino John of-Norma John of-Veroli
Marinus Sutrinus, Iohannes Narniensis, Iohannes Sabiniensis,
Marinus of-Sutri John of-Narni John of-Sabina
Iohannes Gallasensis, Falarensis, Alatrinensis, Ortanus, Iohannes
John of-Gallese of-Falari of-Alatri of-Orte John
Anagniensis, Trebensis, Sabbatinus Terracinensis, Stephanus
of-Anagni of-Trevi of-Sabbatina of-Terracina Stephen
cardinalis archipresbiter tituli [Nerei et Achillei, Leo presbiter
cardinal archpriest of-the-title of-Nereus and Achilleus Leo priest
tituli] Balbinae, Dominicus tituli Anastasiae, Petrus tituli
of-the-title of-Balbina Dominic of-the-title of-Anastasia Peter of-the-title
Damasi, Theophilactus tituli Chrisogoni, Iohannes tituli
of-Damasus Theophylact of-the-title of-Chrysogonus John of-the-title
Equitii, Iohannes tituli Susannae, Petrus tituli Pamachii,
of-Equitius John of-the-title of-Susanna Peter of-the-title of-Pammachius
Adrianus tituli Calixti, Iohannes tituli Caeciliae, Adrianus
Hadrian of-the-title of-Calixtus John of-the-title of-Cecilia Hadrian
tituli Lucinae, Benedictus tituli Sixti, [Theophilactus]
of-the-title of-Lucina Benedict of-the-title of-Sixtus Theophylact
tituli sanctorum IIIIor Coronatorum, Stephanus tituli
of-the-title of-the-saints Four Crowned Stephen of-the-title
Sabinae, Benedictus cardinalis archidiaconus, Iohannes
of-Sabina Benedict cardinal archdeacon John
diaconus, Bonofilius diaconus cardinalis, primicerius, Georgius
deacon Bonofilius deacon cardinal primicerius George
secundicerius, Stephanus amminiculator, Andreas arcarius,
secundicerius Stephen the-assistant Andrew treasurer

Sergius primicerius defensorum, Iohannes sacellarius, Stephanus,
Sergius primicerius of-the-defensores John sacellarius Stephen
Theophilactus, Adrianus, Stephanus, Benedictus, Azo, Adrianus,
Theophylact Hadrian Stephen Benedict Azo Hadrian
Romanus, Leo, Benedictus, Leo, item Leo, et Leo scriniarii,
Romanus Leo Benedict Leo again Leo and Leo secretaries
Leo primicerius scolae cantorum, Benedictus subdiaconus et
Leo primicerius of-the-school of-singers Benedict subdeacon and
oblationarius, Azo, Benedictus, Demetrius, Iohannes, Amicus,
oblationarius Azo Benedict Demetrius John Amicus
Sergius, Benedictus, Urso, Iohannes, Benedictus subdiaconus,
Sergius Benedict Urso John Benedict subdeacon
subpulmentarius, et Stephanus archiacolitus cum omnibus
subpulmentarius and Stephen archacolyte with all
acolitis et regionariis; ex primatibus Romanae civitatis:
the-acolytes and regionaries from the-chief-men of-the-Roman city
Stephanus filius Iohannis superista, Demetrius Meliosi,
Stephen son of-John superista Demetrius of-Meliosus
Crescentius Caballi marmorei, Iohannes cognomento Mizina,
Crescentius of-the-Horse marble John by-surname Mizina
Stephanus de Imiza, Theodorus de Rufina, Iohannes de
Stephen of Imiza Theodore of Rufina John of
Primicerio, Leo de Cazunuli, Rihkardus, Petrus de Canaparia,
Primicerio Leo of Cazunuli Richard Peter of Canaparia
Benedictus cum Bulgamino filio suo; ex plebe Petrus, qui et
Benedict with Bulgaminus son his from the-people Peter who also
Imperiola est dictus, adstitit cum omni Romanorum militia.
Imperiola was called stood-by with all of-the-Romans the-militia

Asked why the pope is absent, the Romans say his crimes are known even in India. Witnesses accuse him of ordaining a ten-year-old bishop, selling ordinations, adultery, blinding his spiritual father, castrating a cardinal, bearing arms, and invoking pagan gods at dice. Liutprand speaks for Otto, the clergy swear the charges are true, and the synod sends John a letter summoning him to answer.

His itaque residentibus silentiumque summum tenentibus 10
these and-so sitting and-silence the-highest keeping
ita sanctus est imperator exorsus: 'Quam decorum esset
so the-holy has emperor begun how fitting it-would-be
tam claro sanctoque domnum papam Iohannem interesse
so illustrious and-holy the-lord pope John to-be-present
concilio. Verum cur tantum declinaverit coetum, vos, o
at-a-council but why so-great he-has-avoided an-assembly you O
sancti patres, consulimus, quibus communis cum eo vita ac
holy fathers we-consult to-whom a-common with him life and
commune negotium extitit'. Tunc Romani pontifices et
common business has-stood-forth then the-Roman pontiffs and
cardinales presbiteri ac diaconi cum universa plebe dixerunt:
cardinal priests and deacons with all the-people said
'Miramur sanctissimam prudentiam vestram nos hoc velle
we-wonder-that the-most-holy prudence your us this to-wish
percontari, quod non Hibericos nec Babilonicos nec Indicos
to-ask which not from-the-Iberian nor Babylonian nor Indian
incolas latet. Non hic iam vel de ipsis est, qui veniunt in
inhabitants is-hidden not here now even of those is-he who come in
vestimentis ovium, intrinsecus autem sunt lupi rapaces; ita
clothing of-sheep inwardly moreover are wolves ravening so
aperte saevit, ita palam diabolica pertractat negotia, ut nihil
openly he-rages so publicly devilish he-carries-on affairs that nothing

circuitionis utatur'. Imperator respondit: 'Iustum nobis videtur,
of-circumlocution he-uses the-emperor answered just to-us it-seems
ut accusationes nominatim exprimantur, dein, quid agendum
that the-accusations by-name be-expressed then what to-be-done
nobis sit, communi consilio pertractetur'. Tunc consurgens
by-us is by-common counsel be-treated then rising
Petrus cardinalis presbiter se vidisse illum missam
Peter cardinal priest himself to-have-seen him Mass
celebrasse et non communicasse testatus est. Iohannes
to-have-celebrated and not to-have-communicated testified has John
episcopus Narniensis et Iohannes cardinalis diaconus se
bishop of-Narni and John cardinal deacon themselves
vidisse illum diaconem ordinasse in equorum stabulo,
to-have-seen him a-deacon to-have-ordained in of-horses a-stable
non certis temporibus, sunt professi. Benedictus cardinalis
not at-fixed times have professed Benedict cardinal
diaconus cum ceteris condiaconibus et presbiteris dixerunt
deacon with the-other fellow-deacons and priests said
se scire, quod ordinationes episcoporum precio faceret
themselves to-know that the-ordinations of-bishops for-a-price he-made
et quod annorum decem episcopum in Tudertina civitate
and that of-years ten a-bishop in the-Todi city
ordinaret. De sacrilegio dixerunt non esse necesse percontari,
he-ordained about sacrilege they-said not to-be necessary to-ask
quia plus videndo quam audiendo scire potuissemus. De
because more by-seeing than by-hearing to-know we-could about
adulterio dixerunt, quod oculis non viderent, sed certissime
adultery they-said that with-eyes not they-saw but most-certainly
scirent, viduam Rainerii et Stephanam patris concubinam
knew the-widow of-Rainer and Stephana of-his-father the-concubine
et Annam viduam cum nepte sua abusum esse et sanctum
and Anna the-widow with niece her abused to-have and the-holy

palatium lupanar et prostibulum fecisse. Venationem
palace a-brothel and a-whorehouse to-have-made hunting
dixerunt publice exercuisse; Benedictum spiritalem suum
they-said publicly him-to-have-practiced Benedict spiritual his
patrem lumine privasse, et mox mortuum esse; Iohannem
father of-light to-have-deprived and soon dead to-be John
cardinalem subdiaconem virilibus amputatis occidisse; incendia
cardinal subdeacon his-virile-parts cut-off to-have-killed fires
fecisse, ense accinctum, galea et lorica indutum
to-have-made with-a-sword girded with-helmet and mail-coat dressed
esse testati sunt. Diaboli in amorem vinum bibisse
to-be testified they-have of-the-devil to the-love wine to-have-drunk
omnes tam clerici quam laici acclamarunt. In ludo aleae
all as-much clerics as laymen cried-out in the-game of-dice
Iovis, Veneris ceterorumque demonum adiutorium poposcisse
of-Jupiter of-Venus and-of-the-other demons the-help to-have-asked
dixerunt. Matutinas et canonicas horas non eum celebrasse
they-said matins and the-canonical hours not him to-have-celebrated
nec signo crucis se munisse professi sunt.
nor with-the-sign of-the-cross himself to-have-fortified they-professed have
His auditis imperator, quia Romani eius loquelam propriam, 11
these heard the-emperor because the-Romans his speech own
hoc est Saxonicam, intellegere nequibant, Liudprando
that is Saxon to-understand could-not to-Liutprand
Cremonensi episcopo praecepit, ut Latino sermone haec
of-Cremona bishop ordered that in-the-Latin tongue these-things
Romanis omnibus quae secuntur exprimeret. Surgens itaque
to-the-Romans all which follow he-should-express rising and-so
sic coepit: ‘Persaepe contigit, et nobis expertis credimus,
thus he-began very-often it-has-happened and to-us experienced we-believe
ut in dignitatibus constituti invidorum infamia maculentur;
that in dignities established of-the-envious by-the-infamy they-are-stained

displicet bonus malis, quemadmodum et malus bonis.
displeases the-good to-the-wicked as also the-wicked to-the-good
Atque hoc rei est, quod hanc in papam accusationem,
and this of-the-matter is that this against the-pope accusation
quam modo Benedictus cardinalis diaconus legit et vobiscum
which just-now Benedict cardinal deacon read and with-you
fecit, amphibolam retinemus, incerti, utrum zelo iustitiae
made ambiguous we-hold uncertain whether from-zeal of-justice
an impietatis livore prorumperet. Unde mihi indigno
or of-impiety from-envy it-burst-forth whence to-me unworthy
secundum concessae dignitatis auctoritatem omnes obtestor
according-to of-the-granted dignity the-authority all I-adjure
per Deum, quem fallere, etsi vult, nemo potest, sanctamque
by God whom to-deceive even-if he-wishes no-one can and-the-holy
eius genitricem intemeratam virginem Mariam perque
his mother the-undefiled virgin Mary and-through
preciosissimum apostolorum principis corpus, in cuius
the-most-precious of-the-apostles of-the-prince body in whose
haec recitantur ecclesia, ut nulla in domnum papam
these-things are-read church that no against the-lord pope
iaculentur convitia, quae non sint ab ipso patrata atque
be-hurled reproaches which not have-been by him committed and
a viris probatissimis visa'. Tunc episcopi, presbiteri, diaconi
by men most-approved seen then the-bishops priests deacons
reliquusque clerus et cunctus Romanorum populus quasi
and-the-remaining clergy and all of-the-Romans the-people as-if
vir unus dixerunt: 'Si non, et quae per Benedictum
man one said if not both the-things-which by Benedict
diaconem lecta sunt, hisque turpiora et ampliora Iohannes
the-deacon read have-been and-than-these more-foul and greater John
papa indigna commisit facinora, non nos a delictorum
pope unworthy has-committed crimes not us from of-sins

vinculis absolvat apostolorum princeps beatissimus Petrus, qui
the-chains may-absolve of-the-apostles the-prince most-blessed Peter who
verbo caelum indignis claudit, iustis aperit; sed simus
by-a-word heaven to-the-unworthy closes to-the-just opens but may-we-be
anathematis vinculo innodati atque in die novissima in
of-anathema by-the-chain bound and on the-day last on
sinistra parte positi cum eis, qui dixerunt domino Deo:
the-left side placed with those who said to-the-Lord God
Recede a nobis, scientiam viarum tuarum nolumus. Quod
depart from us the-knowledge of-ways your we-do-not-want which
si fidem nobis non admittitis, exercitui domni imperatoris
if belief to-us not you-admit to-the-army of-the-lord emperor
saltem debetis credere, cui ante quinque dies ense
at-least you-ought to-believe which before five days with-a-sword
accinctus, clipeo, galea et lorica indutus occurrit; solus
girded with-shield helmet and mail-coat dressed he-met alone
Tiberis, qui interfluxit, ne sic ornatus ab exercitu caperetur,
the-Tiber which flowed-between lest thus equipped by the-army he-be-taken
impedivit'. Mox sanctus imperator dixit: 'Tot sunt huius
prevented soon the-holy emperor said so-many are of-this
rei testes, quot sunt nostro in exercitu bellatores'.
thing the-witnesses as-many-as are our in army warriors
Sancta synodus dixit: 'Si placet sancto imperatori, mittantur
the-holy synod said if it-pleases the-holy emperor let-be-sent
litterae domno papae, ut adveniat seque ex his omnibus
a-letter to-the-lord pope that he-come and-himself from these all
purget'. Tunc eidem sunt huiusmodi litterae destinatae:
purge then to-the-same was of-this-kind a-letter dispatched
'Summo pontifici et universali papae domno Iohanni 12
to-the-highest pontiff and universal pope lord John
Otto divinae respectu clementiae imperator augustus cum
Otto of-divine by-the-regard clemency emperor august with

archiepiscopis, episcopis Liguriae, Tusciae, Saxoniae, Franciae
the-archbishops bishops of-Liguria of-Tuscany of-Saxony of-Francia
in Domino. Romam ob servitium Dei venientes, dum filios
in the-Lord to-Rome for the-service of-God coming when sons
vestros, Romanos scilicet episcopos, cardinales presbiteros et
your the-Romans namely bishops cardinal priests and
diacones, insuper et universam plebem de vestri absentia
deacons moreover and all the-people about your absence
percontaremur et, quid causae esset, quod nos ecclesiae vestrae
we-asked and what of-cause there-was that us of-church your
vestrique defensores videre noluissetis, talia de vobis
and-of-you defenders to-see you-had-been-unwilling such-things about you
tamque obscena protulerunt, ut, si de histrionibus dicerentur,
and-so obscene they-brought-forth that if about actors they-were-said
verecundiam nobis ingererent. Quae ne magnitudinem vestram
shame upon-us they-would-bring which lest greatness your
omnia lateant, quaedam vobis sub brevitate describimus;
all-things escape some to-you under brevity we-describe
quoniam, etsi cuncta nominatim exprimere cupimus, dies
since even-if all by-name to-express we-desire a-day
nobis non sufficit unus. Noveritis itaque non a paucis, sed ab
for-us not suffices one you-shall-know and-so not by few but by
omnibus tam nostri quam et alterius ordinis vos homicidii,
all as-much of-our as also of-another order you of-homicide
periurii, sacrilegii et ex propria cognatione atque ex duabus
of-perjury of-sacrilege and from your-own kindred and from two
sororibus incesti crimine esse accusatos. Dicunt et aliud
sisters of-incest on-the-charge to-be accused they-say also another-thing
auditu ipso horridum, diaboli vos in amorem vinum
at-the-hearing itself horrid of-the-devil you to the-love wine
bibisse, in ludo aleae Iovis, Veneris ceterorumque demonum
to-have-drunk in the-game of-dice of-Jupiter of-Venus and-of-the-other demons

auxilium poposcisse. Oramus itaque paternitatem vestram
the-aid to-have-asked we-pray and-so paternity your
obnixe, ne Romam venire atque ex his omnibus vos
earnestly that-not to-Rome to-come and from these all yourself
purgare dissimuletis. Si forte vim temerariae multitudinis
to-purge you-neglect if perhaps the-violence of-a-reckless multitude
formidatis, iuramento vobis adfirmamus nihil fieri praeter
you-dread by-oath to-you we-affirm nothing to-be-done except
sanctorum canonum sanctionem. Data VIII. Idus Novembris'.
of-the-holy canons the-sanction given on-the-eighth Ides of-November

IV · THE POPE'S REPLY AND THE DEPOSITION

John answers briefly, excommunicating the bishops if they elect another pope, with a double negative the synod mocks. The synod writes again, warning that it will turn his excommunication back on him, as Judas lost the power to bind. The envoys find him gone hunting. Otto recounts John's treachery, and the Romans ask that the monster be driven out and a worthy pope set in his place.

Hanc epistolam cum legisset, huiusmodi apologeticum scripsit: 13
this letter when he-had-read of-this-kind an-answer wrote
'Iohannes episcopus servus servorum Dei omnibus episcopis.
John bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all the-bishops
Nos audivimus dicere, quia vos vultis alium papam facere;
we have-heard say that you wish another pope to-make
si hoc facitis, excommunico vos da Deum omnipotentem, ut
if this you-do I-excommunicate you by God almighty that
non habeatis licentiam nullum ordinare et missam celebrare'.
not you-may-have license no-one to-ordain and Mass to-celebrate

14 Cum haec epistola in sancta synodo legeretur, advenerunt,
when this letter in the-holy synod was-read arrived
qui prius defuerant, religiosi: a Lotharingia Heinricus
who before had-been-absent the-religious from Lotharingia Henry
Treverensis archiepiscopus, ab Emilia et Liguria Wido
of-Trier archbishop from Emilia and Liguria Guy
Mutinensis, Gezo Tertonensis, Sigulfus Placentinus; quorum
of-Modena Gezo of-Tortona Sigulf of-Piacenza whose
consilio domno papae ita rescribunt: 'Summo pontifici
by-counsel to-the-lord pope thus they-write-back to-the-highest pontiff
et universali papae domno Iohanni Otto divinae respectu
and universal pope lord John Otto of-divine by-the-regard
clementiae imperator augustus, sed et sancta synodus Romae
clemency emperor august but also the-holy synod at-Rome
Dei ob servitium congregata in Domino salutem. Praeterita
of-God for the-service gathered in the-Lord greeting at-the-past
synodo, quae celebrata est VIII. Idus Novembris, litteras
synod which celebrated was on-the-eighth Ides of-November a-letter
vobis direximus, in quibus accusatorum vestrorum verba
to-you we-directed in which of-the-accusers your the-words
atque accusationis causae detinebantur. Rogavimus etiam
and of-the-accusation the-grounds were-contained we-asked also
eisdem literis magnitudinem vestram, quemadmodum iustum
in-the-same letter greatness your as just
est, Romam venire seque ex his, quae obiciuntur,
it-is to-Rome to-come and-yourself from these-things which are-charged
purgare. Recepimus autem litteras a vobis, non quales
to-purge we-received moreover a-letter from you not such-as
temporis qualitas, sed inconsultorum hominum vanitas
of-the-time the-quality but of-ill-advised men the-vanity
expoposcit. Non veniendi ad synodum racionabilis esse
demanded for-not coming to the-synod reasonable to-be

excusatio debuit. Sed et praesentes magnitudinis vestrae
the-excuse ought but also present of-greatness your
debuerunt nuntii interesse, qui aut aegritudinis aut certae
ought messengers to-have-been who either of-sickness or of-some
difficultatis causa satisfacerent sanctam vos synodum
difficulty for-the-reason should-satisfy the-holy you synod
declinasse. Est et aliud vestris in litteris scriptum,
to-have-avoided there-is also another-thing your in letter written
quod non episcopum, sed puerilem ineptiam scribere deceret.
which not a-bishop but childish folly to-write would-befit
Excommunicastis etenim omnes, ut haberent licentiam
you-have-excommunicated for all that they-might-have license
canendi missas, ordinandi ecclesiasticas dispositiones, si alium
of-singing Masses of-ordaining ecclesiastical dispositions if another
Romanae sedi constitueremus episcopum. Ita enim scriptum
for-the-Roman see we-should-establish bishop so for written
erat: “Non habeatis licentiam nullum ordinare.” Nunc
it-was not you-may-have license no-one to-ordain now
usque putavimus, immo vere credidimus duo negativa unum
until we-thought nay truly believed two negatives one
facere dedicativum, nisi vestra auctoritas priscorum sententias
to-make affirmative unless your authority of-the-ancient the-opinions
infirmaret auctorum. Nos vero intentioni vestrae, non verbis
should-weaken authors we but to-intention your not to-words
respondeamus. Si ad synodum venire et obiecta purgare non
let-us-answer if to the-synod to-come and the-charges to-purge not
differtis, auctoritati vestrae procul dubio oboedimus. Sed si,
you-delay to-authority your beyond doubt we-obey but if
quod absit, venire et obiecta vobis capitalia crimina
which may-it-be-absent to-come and the-charged against-you capital crimes
purgare dissimulatis, cum praesertim vos nihil venire impediat,
to-purge you-neglect when especially you nothing to-come hinders

non maris navigatio, non corporis aegritudo, non itineris
not of-sea the-voyage not of-body sickness not of-journey
longitudo, tunc excommunicationem vestram parvipendemus
the-length then excommunication your we-shall-make-light-of
eamque potius in vos retorquebimus, quoniam quidem iuste
and-it rather upon you we-shall-turn-back since indeed justly
facere possumus. Iudas, domini nostri Iesu Christi proditor,
to-do we-can Judas of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ the-betrayer
immo venditor, cum ceteris prius ligandi atque solvendi
nay the-seller with the-rest first of-binding and of-loosing
potestatem a magistro in haec verba acceperat: Amen
the-power from the-master in these words had-received amen
dico vobis, quaecumque alligaveritis super terram, ligata
I-say to-you whatever you-shall-have-bound upon earth bound
erunt et in caelis, et quaecumque solveritis super
shall-be also in heaven and whatever you-shall-have-loosed upon
terram, erunt soluta et in caelis. Quamdiu enim bonus inter
earth shall-be loosed also in heaven as-long for good among
condiscipulos fuit, ligare atque solvere valuit; postquam vero
the-fellow-disciples he-was to-bind and to-loose he-could after but
cupiditatis causa homicida factus vitam omnium occidere
of-greed for-the-sake a-murderer made the-life of-all to-kill
voluit, quem postea ligatum solvere aut solutum ligare
he-wished whom afterward bound to-loose or loosed to-bind
potuit nisi se ipsum, quem infelicissimo laqueo strangulavit?
could-he except him himself whom with-most-unhappy noose he-strangled
Data X. Kalendas Decembris et missa per Adrianum
given on-the-tenth Kalends of-December and sent through Hadrian
cardinalem presbiterum et Benedictum cardinalem diaconum'.
cardinal priest and Benedict cardinal deacon

Qui cum Tiberim pervenissent, eum non invenerunt; 15
who when to-the-Tiber they-had-come him not found
pharetratus enim in campestria iam abierat, nec
quivered for into the-open-country already he-had-gone-off nor
quisquam erat, qui his, ubi ipse esset, indicare posset.
anyone was-there who to-these where he was to-show could
Cumque eum invenire non possent, cum eisdem litteris ad
and-when him to-find not they-could with the-same letter to
sanctam synodum, quae tunc tertio est habita, sunt
the-holy synod which then for-the-third-time was held they-were
reversi. Mox imperator ait: 'Expectavimus adventum eius,
returned soon the-emperor said we-awaited the-arrival his
ut praesente eo, quid nobis egerit, quereremur; verum
that present him what to-us he-had-done we-might-complain but
quoniam non eum adfuturum certo scimus, quam perfide
since not him about-to-be-present certainly we-know how perfidiously
nobiscum egerit, ut diligenter agnoscatis, etiam atque
with-us he-has-acted that carefully you-may-recognize again and
etiam flagitamus. Notum itaque vobis facimus archiepiscopis,
again we-demand known and-so to-you we-make archbishops
[episcopis], presbiteris, diaconibus reliquoque clero necnon
bishops priests deacons and-the-remaining clergy and
et comitibus, iudicibus omnique plebi, quod idem Iohannes
also counts judges and-all the-people that the-same John
papa oppressus a Berengario atque Adelberto rebellibus nostris
pope oppressed by Berengar and Adalbert rebels our
misit nobis in Saxoniam nuntios, rogans, ut ob amorem Dei
sent to-us into Saxony messengers asking that for love of-God
in Italiam veniremus et ecclesiam sancti Petri ac se ipsum
into Italy we-should-come and the-church of-Saint Peter and him himself
ex eorum faucibus liberaremus. Nos vero adiuvante Deo
from their jaws we-should-free we but helping God

quantum fecerimus, non est necesse dicere, ut inpraesentiarum
how-much we-did not is necessary to-say as at-present
videtis. Ereptus vero mea opera ex eorum manibus et
you-see snatched but by-my effort from their hands and
honori debito restitutus, oblitus iuramenti et fidelitatis, quam
to-honor due restored forgetful of-the-oath and of-the-fidelity which
mihi supra corpus sancti Petri promisit, eumdem Adelpertum
to-me over the-body of-Saint Peter he-promised the-same Adalbert
Romam venire fecit et contra me defendit, seditiones
to-Rome to-come made and against me defended seditions
fecit et videntibus nostris militibus dux belli factus,
made and seeing our soldiers the-leader of-war made
lorica et galea est indutus. Quid super hoc sancta
with-mail-coat and helmet was dressed what about this the-holy
synodus decernat, edicat'. Ad haec Romani pontifices
synod may-decree let-it-proclaim to these-things the-Roman pontiffs
reliquusque clerus et cunctus populus responderunt:
and-the-remaining clergy and all the-people answered
'Inauditum vulnus inaudito est cauterio exurendum. Si
an-unheard-of wound by-an-unheard-of is cautery to-be-burned-out if
corruptis moribus soli sibi et non cunctis obesset,
by-corrupt manners alone to-himself and not to-all he-did-harm
quoquo modo tolerandus esset. Quot prius casti huius
in-any way to-be-tolerated he-would-be how-many before chaste of-this
facti sunt imitatione incesti? Quot probi huius exemplo
made have-been by-the-imitation unchaste how-many upright this by-example
conversationis sunt reprobi? Petimus itaque magnitudinem
of-conduct are reprobate we-ask and-so the-greatness
imperii vestri, monstrum illud nulla virtute redemptum a
of-empire your monster that by-no virtue redeemed from
vitiis a sancta Romana ecclesia pelli aliumque loco eius
vices from the-holy Roman church to-be-driven and-another in-place his

constitui, qui nobis exemplo bonae conversationis praeesse
to-be-established who for-us by-example of-good conduct to-preside
valeat et prodesse, sibi recte vivat ac bene vivendi
may-be-able and to-profit for-himself rightly may-live and of-well living
nobis exemplum praebeat'. Tunc imperator: 'Placet', inquit,
to-us an-example may-provide then the-emperor it-pleases he-says
'quod dicitis, nihilque gratius nobis, quam ut talis, qui
what you-say and-nothing more-pleasing to-us than that such who
huic sanctae et universali sedi praeponatur, inveniri possit'.
over-this holy and universal see may-be-set to-be-found can

V · LEO VIII, THE ROMANS' REVOLT, AND BENEDICT

The synod elects Leo pope. When Otto sends most of his army home, John bribes the Romans to attack, and Otto routs them at the Tiber bridge. Once he leaves, Leo flees to Otto and John mutilates a cardinal; John dies of a blow from the devil while with another man's wife, and the Romans make Benedict pope. Otto besieges Rome until Leo is restored and Benedict degraded; the work breaks off there.

His dictis omnes una voce dixerunt: 'Leonem, venerabilem 16
these said all with-one voice said Leo venerable
sanctae Romanae ecclesiae protoscriniarium, virum approbatum
of-the-holy Roman church chief-secretary a-man approved
et ad summum sacerdotii gradum dignum, nobis in
and for the-highest of-the-priesthood degree worthy for-ourselves as
pastorem eligimus, ut summus et universalis papa sanctae
shepherd we-choose that highest and universal pope of-the-holy
Romanae ecclesiae, reprobato ob improbos mores Iohanne
Roman church rejected for wicked manners John
apostata!' Cumque hoc tertio omnes dixissent, annuente
the-apostate and-when this a-third-time all had-said the-emperor

imperatore nominatum Leonem ad Lateranense palatium
assenting the-named Leo to the-Lateran palace
secundum consuetudinem cum laudibus ducunt et certo
according-to custom with praises they-lead and at-a-fixed
tempore in ecclesia sancti Petri ad summum sacerdotium
time in the-church of-Saint Peter to the-highest priesthood
sancta consecratione attollunt et fideles ei adfuturos
by-holy consecration they-raise and faithful to-him about-to-be
iureiurando promittunt.
by-oath promise

17 His ita gestis sperans sanctissimus imperator cum paucis
these thus done hoping the-most-holy emperor with a-few
Romae se degere posse, ne consumeretur Romanus
at-Rome himself to-stay to-be-able lest be-consumed the-Roman
populus ob multitudinem exercitus, multis, ut redirent,
people for the-multitude of-the-army to-many that they-might-return
licentiam dedit. Cumque hoc Iohannes, qui dictus est papa,
license gave and-when this John who called is pope
cognosceret, non ignorans, quam facile Romanorum mentes
learned not being-ignorant how easily of-the-Romans the-minds
pecunia posset corrumpere, clam Romam mittit nuntios,
with-money be-could to-corrupt secretly to-Rome he-sends messengers
beati Petri omniumque ecclesiarum pecuniam repromittens,
of-blessed Peter and-of-all the-churches the-money promising
si super pium imperatorem et domnum Leonem papam
if upon the-pious emperor and the-lord Leo pope
irruerent eosque impiissime trucidarent. Quid multis
they-should-rush and-them most-impiously slaughter what by-many
morer? Romani quam mox exercitus paucitate confisi,
should-I-delay the-Romans as soon of-the-army in-the-fewness confiding
immo decepti, et pecuniae promissione animati bucina
nay deceived and of-money by-the-promise spurred with-the-trumpet

concrepante super imperatorem, ut eum occidant, festinare
sounding upon the-emperor that him they-may-kill to-hasten
contendunt. Quibus imperator supra pontem Tyberis, quem
strive whom the-emperor upon the-bridge of-the-Tiber which
Romani plaustris impeditum habebant, occurrit. Cuius fortes
the-Romans with-carts blocked had meets whose brave
milites assuefacti bello, pectore et armis intrepidi eos inter
soldiers accustomed to-war in-breast and in-arms undaunted them among
prosiliunt et quasi accipitres avium multitudinem nullo
leap and as-if hawks of-birds a-multitude with-none
resistente perterrent. Non latibula, non corbes, non concava
resisting they-terrify not hiding-places not baskets not hollow
ligna, non criptae sordium receptacula fugientibus tutelae esse
logs not crypts of-filth receptacles for-the-fleeing a-protection to-be
possunt. Occiduntur itaque et, ut fortibus assolet contingere
can they-are-killed and-so and as to-brave is-wont to-happen
viris, passim a tergo vulnerantur. Quis tunc Romanorum
to-men everywhere from behind they-are-wounded who then of-the-Romans
cladis huius superstes fieret, si non imperator sanctus
of-disaster this survivor would-have-become if not the-emperor holy
misericordia, quae eis nulla debebatur, inclinatus suos
by-mercy which to-them none was-owed inclined his-men
adhuc interficere sicientes retraheret et revocaret?
still to-kill thirsting drew-back and called-back
Itaque devictis omnibus atque [ab] his qui supererant 18
and-so conquered all and from those who survived
obsidibus acceptis, venerabilis papa Leo pedibus imperatoris
hostages received the-venerable pope Leo at-the-feet of-the-emperor
provolutus orat, ut Romanis obsides reddat seque eorum
prostrated prays that to-the-Romans the-hostages he-return and-himself their
fidei commendet. Rogatu denique venerabilis papae Leonis
to-faith commend at-the-request finally of-the-venerable pope Leo

imperator sanctus Romanis obsides reddit, non incertus,
the-emperor holy to-the-Romans the-hostages returns not uncertain
quod prosecuturus sum, incepturos. Igitur Romanorum
what about-to-pursue I-am they-would-begin therefore of-the-Romans
fidei eundem papam, quemadmodum lupis agnum,
to-the-faith the-same pope as to-wolves a-lamb
commisit. Dein Roma exiens, Camerinum Spoletumque
he-entrusted then from-Rome going-out Camerino and-Spoleto
versus, ubi Adelbertum esse audierat, properavit.
toward where Adalbert to-be he-had-heard hastened

19 Interea mulieres, quibuscum Iohannes, qui dictus est papa,
meanwhile the-women with-whom John who called is pope
voluptatis suae ludibrium exercebat, ut non ignobiles et
of-pleasure his the-sport practiced as not low-born and
plures, concitaverunt Romanos, ut Leonem summum et
many stirred-up the-Romans that Leo the-highest and
universalem papam a Deo et ipsis electum perderent
universal pope by God and themselves chosen they-should-destroy
et Iohannem in Urbem susciperent. Quod cum fecissent,
and John into the-City should-receive which when they-had-done
miserante Deo ex eorum manibus est venerabilis papa
pitying God from their hands was the-venerable pope
Leo liberatus paucisque secum comitantibus ad piissimi
Leo freed and-with-a-few with-him accompanying to of-the-most-pious
Ottonis imperatoris misericordiam est profectus.
Otto emperor the-mercy he-has set-out

20 Imperator denique sanctus tantum dedecus aegre ferens cum
the-emperor finally holy so-great a-disgrace grievously bearing as-well
ex domni papae Leonis eiectione tum ex Iohanne cardinali
from of-the-lord pope Leo the-expulsion as from John cardinal
diacone et Azone scriniario, quorum alterum manu dextera,
deacon and Azo secretary of-whom the-one by-the-hand right

alterum lingua, duobus digitis naribusque abscisis Iohannes
the-other by-the-tongue two fingers and-nostrils cut-off John
abdicatus defedaverat, reparato exercitu Romam redire
deposed had-disfigured restored the-army to-Rome to-return
disposuit. Prius tamen quam sancti essent imperatoris copiae
arranged before yet that of-the-holy were of-the-emperor the-forces
congregatae, volens cunctis seculis innotescere Dominus, quam
gathered wishing to-all ages to-be-made-known the-Lord how
iuste esset Iohannes papa a suis episcopis et omni plebe
justly had-been John pope by his bishops and all the-people
repudiatus quamque postmodum iniuste receptus, quadam
repudiated and-how afterward unjustly received on-a-certain
nocte extra Romam, dum se cum viri cuiusdam uxore
night outside Rome while himself with of-a-man certain the-wife
oblectaret, in timporibus adeo a diabolo est percussus, ut
he-delighted on the-temples so-much by the-devil was struck that
infra dierum octo spacium eodem sit vulnere mortuus. Sed
within of-days eight the-space by-the-same he-was wound dead but
eucharistiae viaticum ipsius instinctu, qui eum percusserat,
of-the-Eucharist the-viaticum of-him at-the-instigation who him had-struck
non percepit, quemadmodum a suis cognatis et familiaribus,
not he-received as from his kinsmen and intimates
qui praesentes erant, persaepe sub attestatione audivimus.
who present were very-often under attestation we-have-heard
Quo mortuo Romani omnes iuramenti, quod sancto 21
whom dead the-Romans all of-the-oath which to-the-holy
promiserant imperatori, immemores Benedictum cardinalem
they-had-promised emperor unmindful Benedict cardinal
diaconem papam constituunt, insuper et iuramento numquam
deacon as-pope establish moreover also by-oath never
se eum dimissuros, sed contra eum imperatoris
themselves him about-to-abandon but against him of-the-emperor

potentiam defensuros promittunt. Quo audito imperator
the-might about-to-defend promise which heard the-emperor
Urbem vallavit, neminem, qui non membris truncaretur,
the-City walled-in no-one who not in-limbs was-mutilated
exire permisit, machinis et fame usque adeo afflixit,
to-go-out allowed by-engines and famine even so-much afflicted
donec Romanis nolentibus Urbem reciperet, Leonem virum
until the-Romans unwilling the-City he-received Leo a-man
venerabilem debitae sedi restitueret ac Benedictum summae
venerable to-the-due see restored and Benedict of-the-highest
sedis invasorem eius praesentiae praesentaret.
see the-invader his to-presence presented

22 Residentibus itaque domno Leone summo et universali papa
sitting and-so the-lord Leo highest and universal pope
in ecclesia Lateranensi necnon et imperatore sanctissimo
in the-church Lateran and also the-emperor most-holy
Ottone, episcopis insuper Romanis, Italicis, a Lotharingia et
Otto the-bishops moreover Roman Italian from Lotharingia and
Saxonia archiepiscopis, episcopis, presbiteris, diaconibus omnique
Saxony archbishops bishops priests deacons and-all
Romanorum plebe, quorum nomina inferius adscribentur,
of-the-Romans the-people whose names below shall-be-written
advenit Benedictus apostolicae sedis invasor eorum, qui se
arrived Benedict of-the-apostolic see the-invader of-those who him
elegerant, manibus adductus, pontificalibus vestibus indutus.
had-chosen by-the-hands brought in-pontifical vestments dressed
Quem Benedictus cardinalis archidiaconus tali est sermone
whom Benedict cardinal archdeacon with-such has discourse
adgressus: ‘Qua tibi auctoritate quave lege, o invasor, haec
addressed by-what to-you authority or-by-what law O invader these
pontificalia indumenta usurpasti, superstite hoc praesenti domno
pontifical garments did-you-usurp surviving this present lord

nostro venerabili papa Leone, quem tu nobiscum accusato et
our venerable pope Leo whom you with-us accused and
reprobato Iohanne ad apostolicatus culmen elegisti? Num
rejected John to of-the-apostolate the-summit chose surely-not
inficiari potes praesenti domno imperatori iuramento promisisse
to-deny can-you to-the-present lord emperor by-oath to-have-promised
numquam te cum ceteris Romanis papam electurum aut
never you with the-other Romans a-pope about-to-elect or
ordinaturum absque illius filiique eius regis Ottonis consensu?'
about-to-ordain without his and-of-son his king Otto consent
Benedictus respondit: 'Si quid peccavi, miseremini mei'. Tunc
Benedict answered if anything I-have-sinned have-mercy on-me then
imperator effusis lacrimis, quam misericors esset, ostendens
the-emperor poured-out tears how merciful he-was showing
rogavit synodum, ne Benedicto praeiudicium fieret. Si
asked the-synod that-not to-Benedict prejudice be-done if
vellet et posset, ad interrogata responderet causamque suam
he-wished and could to the-questions he-should-answer and-cause his
defenderet; quod si non posset aut nollet ac se culpabilem
defend and if not he-could or wished-not and himself guilty
redderet, tamen pro timore Dei misericordiam aliquam
rendered yet for the-fear of-God mercy some
inveniret. Quo audito ad domni Leonis papae pedes ipsiusque
he-might-find which heard at of-the-lord Leo pope the-feet and-of-the-very
imperatoris isdem Benedictus concite procidens se peccasse,
emperor the-same Benedict hastily falling himself to-have-sinned
se sanctae Romanae sedis invasorem esse acclamavit. Post
himself of-the-holy Roman see the-invader to-be cried-out after
haec pallium sibi abstulit, quod simul cum pontificali
these-things the-pallium from-himself took-off which together with the-pontifical
ferula, quam manu gestabat, domno papae Leoni reddidit.
staff which in-hand he-carried to-the-lord pope Leo he-returned

Quam ferulam isdem papa fregit et fractam populo ostendit.
which staff the-same pope broke and broken to-the-people showed
Deinde Benedictum in terra sedere praecepit. Cui
then Benedict on the-ground to-sit ordered from-whom
casulam, quam planetam dicunt, cum stola pariter abstulit.
the-chasuble which planeta they-call with the-stole together he-took-off
Post autem omnibus episcopis dixit: 'Benedictum, sanctae
after moreover to-all the-bishops he-said Benedict of-the-holy
Romanae et apostolicae sedis invasorem, omni pontificatus
Roman and apostolic see the-invader of-all of-the-pontificate
et presbiteratus honore privamus; ob elemosinam vero domni
and of-the-priesthood the-honor we-deprive for the-alms but of-the-lord
imperatoris Ottonis, cuius sumus opera in sedem debitam
emperor Otto whose we-are by-the-effort to the-see due
restituti, diaconatus eum ordinem habere permittimus, et
restored of-the-diaconate him the-order to-have we-permit and
non iam Romae, sed in exilium, ad quod destina…
not now at-Rome but into exile to which we-have-appoint…

LIUTPRAND OF CREMONA

Relatio de legatione Constantinopolitana

The Embassy to Constantinople

Liutprand greets the two Ottos and Adelaide. He reached Constantinople on June 4 and was lodged in an open, waterless palace under guard, with undrinkable wine. Leo, Nicephorus' brother, calls Otto a king, not an emperor. Before Nicephorus, a monstrous pygmy, Liutprand hears Otto blamed for seizing Rome and answers that Otto freed Rome from harlots and justly punished Berengar and Adalbert.

Ottones Romanorum invictissimos imperatores augustos
the-Ottos of-the-Romans most-invincible emperors august
gloriosissimamque Adelheidem imperatricem augustam
and-most-glorious Adelaide empress august
Liudprandus sanctae Cremonensis ecclesiae episcopus semper
Liutprand of-the-holy of-Cremona church bishop always
valere, prosperari, triumphare anhelat, desiderat, optat.
to-fare-well to-prosper to-triumph pants desires wishes
Quid causae fuerit, quod prius literas sive nuntium meum 1
what of-cause it-was that before letters or messenger my
non susceperitis, ratio subsequens declarabit. Pridie
not you-received the-reason following shall-declare on-the-day-before
Nonas Iunii Constantinopolim venimus et ad contumeliam
the-Nones of-June to-Constantinople we-came and to insult
vestram turpiter suscepti graviter turpiterque sumus tractati.
your shamefully received heavily and-shamefully we-were treated
Palatio quidem satis magno et aperto, quod nec frigus
in-a-palace indeed quite large and open which neither the-cold
arceret, sicut nec calorem repelleret, inclusi sumus; armati
kept-off as nor the-heat repelled we-were shut-up armed
milites appositi sunt custodes, qui meis omnibus exitum,
soldiers posted were as-guards who to-my all the-exit
ceteris prohiberent ingressum. Domus ipsa solis nobis
to-the-others should-forbid the-entrance the-house itself alone to-us

inclusis pervia, a palatio adeo sequestrata, ut eo nobis
shut-in accessible from the-palace so-much separated that thither we
non equitantibus, sed ambulantibus anhelitus truncaretur.
not riding but walking our-breath was-cut-off
Accessit ad calamitatem nostram, quod Grecorum vinum
there-was-added to calamity our that of-the-Greeks the-wine
ob picis, taedae, gypsi commixtionem nobis impotabile
for of-pitch of-pine-resin of-gypsum the-mixture for-us undrinkable
fuit. Domus ipsa erat inaquosa, nec sitim saltem aqua
was the-house itself was waterless nor thirst at-least with-water
extinguere quivimus, quam data pecunia emeremus. Huic
to-quench could-we which given money we-might-buy to-this
magno vae, vae aliud appositum est, homo scili...orum custos,
great woe woe another set was a-man of-the-(…) the-keeper
qui cotidianos sumptus praeberet, cui similem si requiras,
who the-daily expenses should-provide to-whom like if you-should-seek
non terra, sed infernus forsan dabit; is enim, quicquid
not the-earth but hell perhaps shall-give he for whatever
calamitatis, quicquid rapinae, quicquid dispendii, quicquid
of-calamity whatever of-plunder whatever of-loss whatever
luctus, quicquid miseriae excogitare potuit, quasi torrens
of-grief whatever of-misery to-devise he-could as-if a-torrent
inundans in nos effudit. Nec in centum viginti diebus una
flooding upon us poured-out nor in a-hundred twenty days one
saltem praeteriit, quae non gemitus nobis praeberet et luctus.
at-least passed which not groans to-us provided and grief

2 Pridie Nonas Iunii, ut superius scripsimus,
on-the-day-before the-Nones of-June as above we-wrote
Constantinopolim ante portam Caream venimus, et
at-Constantinople before the-gate Carean we-came and
usque ad undecimam horam cum equis, non modica pluvia,
up to the-eleventh hour with the-horses not small in-rain

expectavimus. Undecima vero hora non ratus Nicephorus nos
we-waited at-the-eleventh but hour not thinking Nicephorus us
dignos esse tam ornatos vestra misericordia equitare venire
worthy to-be so adorned by-your mercy to-ride to-come
iussit, et usque in praefatam domum marmoream, invisam,
ordered and up to the-aforesaid house marble hateful
inaquosam, patulam sumus deducti; octavo autem Idus
waterless gaping we-were led on-the-eighth moreover Ides
sabbatho primo dierum pentecostes, ante fratris eius Leonis
on-the-sabbath first of-the-days of-Pentecost before of-brother his Leo
coropalati et logothetae praesentiam sum deductus, ubi de
curopalates and logothete the-presence I-was led where about
imperiali vestro nomine magna sumus contentione fatigati.
imperial your name with-great we-were contention wearied
Ipse enim vos non imperatorem, id est βασιλέα sua lingua,
he for you not emperor that is basileus in-his tongue
sed ob indignationem ῥῆγα, id est regem nostra, vocabat.
but for indignation rex that is king in-ours called
Cui cum dicerem, quod significatur, idem esse, quamvis,
to-whom when I-said what is-signified the-same to-be although
quod significat, diversum, me ait non pacis, sed contentionis
what signifies different me he-said not of-peace but of-contention
causa venisse; sicque iratus surgens vestras litteras, vere
for-the-sake to-have-come and-thus angry rising your letter truly
indignans, non per se, sed per interpretem suscepit,
indignant not through himself but through an-interpreter received
homo ipse ad personam satis procerus, falso humilis, cui
a-man himself in person quite tall falsely humble on-whom
si innisus homo fuerit, manum eius perforabit.
if leaning a-man shall-have-been the-hand his it-shall-pierce

3 Septimo autem Idus, ipso videlicet sancto die pentecostes,
on-the-seventh moreover Ides on-the-very namely holy day of-Pentecost
in domo, quae dicitur Στεφάνα, id est Coronaria, ante
in the-house which is-called Stephana that is the-Coronaria before
Nicephorum sum deductus, hominem satis monstruosum,
Nicephorus I-was led a-man quite monstrous
pygmaeum, capite pinguem atque oculorum parvitate
a-pygmy in-head fat and of-eyes by-the-smallness
talpinum, barba curta, lata, spissa et semicana foedatum,
mole-like with-beard short broad thick and half-gray befouled
cervice digitali turpatum, prolixitate et densitate comarum
with-a-neck finger-long disfigured by-the-length and thickness of-hair
satis hyopam, colore Aethiopem, 'cui per mediam
quite a-pig in-color an-Ethiopian whom through the-middle
nolis occurrere noctem', ventre extensum, natibus
you-would-not-wish to-meet of-the-night in-belly distended in-buttocks
siccum, coxis ad mensuram ipsam brevem longissimum,
dry in-thighs for the-measure itself short very-long
cruribus parvum, calcaneis pedibusque aequalem, villino, sed
in-shanks small in-heels and-feet equal with-linen but
nimis veternoso vel diuturnitate ipsa foetido et pallido
too old or by-the-long-use itself fetid and pale
ornamento indutum, Sicioniis calceamentis calceatum, lingua
adornment dressed with-Sicyonian shoes shod in-tongue
procacem, ingenio vulpem, periurio seu mendacio Ulyxem.
insolent in-wit a-fox in-perjury or lying a-Ulysses
Semper mihi domini mei imperatores augusti formosi, quanto
always to-me lords my emperors august handsome by-how-much
hinc formosiores visi estis! Semper ornati, quanto hinc
from-this more-handsome seemed you-have always adorned by-how-much from-this
ornatiores! Semper potentes, quanto hinc potentiores!
more-adorned always mighty by-how-much from-this mightier

Semper mites, quanto hinc mitiores! Semper virtutibus pleni,
always gentle by-how-much from-this gentler always with-virtues full
quanto hinc pleniores! Sedebant ad sinistram, non in eadem
by-how-much from-this fuller there-sat on the-left not in the-same
linea, sed longe deorsum duo parvuli imperatores, eius quondam
line but far below two little emperors his once
domini, nunc subiecti. Cuius narrationis initium hoc fuit:
lords now subject of-whose speech the-beginning this was
'Debueramus, immo volueramus te benigne magnificeque 4
we-had-owed nay we-had-wished you kindly and-magnificently
suscipere; sed domini tui impietas non permittit, qui
to-receive but of-lord your the-impiety does-not permit who
tam inimica invasione Romam sibi vindicavit, Berengario
with-so hostile invasion Rome for-himself claimed from-Berengar
et Adelberto contra ius fasque vi terram abstulit,
and Adalbert against right and-divine-law by-force the-land took
Romanorum alios gladio, alios suspendio interemit, oculis
of-the-Romans some by-the-sword others by-hanging he-killed of-eyes
alios privavit, exilio alios relegavit, et imperii nostri insuper
others he-deprived to-exile others he-banished and of-empire our moreover
civitates homicidio aut incendio sibi subdere temptavit; et
the-cities by-murder or by-burning to-himself to-subject he-tried and
quia affectus eius pravus effectum habere non potuit, nunc te
because the-desire his depraved effect to-have not could now you
malitiae huius suggestorem atque impulsorem simulata pace
of-malice this the-prompter and instigator with-feigned peace
quasi κατάσκοπον, id est exploratorem, ad nos direxit'.
as-if a-spy that is a-scout to us he-has-directed
Cui inquam ego: 'Romanam civitatem dominus meus non 5
to-whom I-say I the-Roman city lord my not
vi aut tyrannice invasit, sed a tyranni, immo tyrannorum
by-force or tyrannically invaded but from of-a-tyrant nay of-tyrants

iugo liberavit. Nonne effeminati dominabantur eius? et quod
the-yoke freed surely effeminate-men ruled it and what
gravius sive turpius, nonne meretrices? Dormiebat, ut puto,
more-grave or more-shameful surely harlots was-sleeping as I-think
tunc potestas tua, immo decessorum tuorum, qui nomine solo,
then power your nay of-predecessors your who in-name alone
non autem re ipsa imperatores Romanorum vocantur.
not moreover in-the-thing itself emperors of-the-Romans are-called
Si potentes, si imperatores Romanorum erant, cur Romam
if mighty if emperors of-the-Romans they-were why Rome
in meretricum potestate sinebant? Nonne sanctissimorum
in of-harlots the-power did-they-allow surely of-the-most-holy
paparum alii sunt relegati, alii adeo aflicti, ut neque
popes some were banished others so-much afflicted that neither
cotidianos sumptus nec elemosinam habere quirent? Nonne
the-daily expenses nor alms to-have could-they surely
Adelbertus contumeliosas literas Romano et Constantino,
Adalbert insulting letters to-Romanus and Constantine
decessoribus tuis, imperatoribus misit? Nonne sanctissimorum
predecessors your emperors sent surely of-the-most-holy
apostolorum ecclesias rapinis expoliavit? Quis ex vobis
apostles the-churches with-plunder he-despoiled who of you
imperatoribus zelo Dei ductus tam indignum facinus
emperors by-zeal of-God led so unworthy a-crime
vindicare et sanctam ecclesiam in statum proprium reformare
to-avenge and the-holy church to state its-own to-restore
curavit? Neglexistis vos, non neglexit dominus meus, qui a
took-care neglected-it you not neglected-it lord my who from
finibus terrae surgens Romamque veniens impios abstulit
the-ends of-the-earth rising and-to-Rome coming the-impious removed
et sanctorum apostolorum vicariis potestatem et honorem
and of-the-holy apostles to-the-vicars power and honor

omnem contradidit. Postmodum vero insurgentes contra se et
all handed-over afterward but those-rising-up against him and
domnum apostolicum, quasi iurisiurandi violatores, sacrilegos,
the-lord apostolic as-if of-the-oath violators sacrilegious
dominorum suorum apostolicorum tortores, raptores, secundum
of-lords their apostolic torturers plunderers according-to
decreta imperatorum Romanorum, Iustiniani, Valentiniani,
the-decrees of-the-emperors Roman Justinian Valentinian
Theodosii et ceterorum, cecidit, iugulavit, suspendit et
Theodosius and the-rest he-cut-down butchered hanged and
exilio relegavit; quae si non faceret, impius, iniustus, crudelis,
to-exile banished which if not he-did impious unjust cruel
tyrannus esset. Palam est, quod Berengarius et Adelbertus
a-tyrant he-would-be plain it-is that Berengar and Adalbert
sui milites effecti regnum Italicum sceptro aureo ex
his soldiers made the-kingdom Italian with-the-scepter golden from
eius manu susceperant et praesentibus servis tuis, qui nunc
his hand had-received and in-the-presence-of servants your who now
usque supersunt et hac in civitate degunt, iureiurando fidem
still survive and this in city live by-oath faith
promiserunt. Et quia suggerente diabolo hanc perfide violarunt,
promised and because suggesting the-devil this perfidiously they-violated
iuste illos quasi desertores sibique rebelles regno privavit;
justly them as-if deserters and-to-himself rebels of-the-kingdom he-deprived
quod ita subditis tibi et postmodum rebellibus faceres'.
which so to-the-subject to-you and afterward rebels you-would-do

Nicephorus asks why Otto attacked his lands, and Liutprand answers that they belong to Italy and that Otto has returned Apulia as a pledge, offering friendship for a marriage. The emperor goes in procession to Saint Sophia past a barefoot crowd and nobles in torn tunics, while singers hail him as the morning star. At dinner, seated fifteenth without a tablecloth, Liutprand hears Nicephorus mock Otto's soldiers as unable to ride, gluttons, and drunkards, and boast of his countless forces.

6 'Sed non', ait, 'Adelberti hoc profitetur miles'. Cui inquam:
but not he-says of-Adalbert this professes the-soldier to-whom I-say
'Si secus dixerit, meorum aliquis militum, si iubes, cras
if otherwise he-shall-have-said of-my any soldiers if you-order tomorrow
ita rem esse duello declarabit'. 'Esto', inquit, 'fecerit
so the-thing to-be by-duel he-shall-declare be-it-so he-says he-may-have-done
haec, ut ais, iuste. Nunc cur imperii nostri terminos bello
these-things as you-say justly now why of-empire our the-borders with-war
incendioque aggressus sit, expedi. Amici eramus societatemque
and-burning he-attacked has explain friends we-were and-an-alliance
indissolubilem nuptiis interpositis facere cogitabamus'.
indissoluble with-marriages interposed to-make we-intended

7 'Terram', inquam, 'quam imperii tui esse narras, gens incola
the-land I-say which of-empire your to-be you-relate the-people inhabitant
et lingua Italici regni esse declarat. Tenueruntque illam
and tongue of-the-Italian kingdom to-be declares and-held it
potestative Langobardi; quam et Lodovicus Langobardorum
with-power the-Lombards which also Louis of-the-Lombards
seu Francorum imperator de manu Saracenorum multitudine
or of-the-Franks emperor from the-hand of-the-Saracens a-multitude
prostrata liberavit. Sed et Landulphus Beneventanorum
laid-low freed but also Landulf of-the-Beneventans
et Capuanorum princeps septennio potestative eam sibi
and of-the-Capuans prince for-seven-years with-power it to-himself

subiugavit. Nec a servitutis eius seu successorum suorum
subjugated nor from of-the-servitude his or of-successors his
iugo usque ad praesens exiret, si non immensa
the-yoke up to the-present would-it-have-gone-out if not immense
data pecunia Romanos imperator nostri regis Hugonis
given money Romanus emperor of-our king Hugh
amicitiam emeret. Et haec causa fuit, quod nepoti suo
the-friendship had-bought and this the-cause was that to-grandson his
et aequivoco regis nostri, eiusdem Hugonis, spuriam
and namesake of-king our the-same Hugh the-bastard-daughter
coniugio copulavit. Et, ut considero, domino meo non gratiam,
in-marriage he-joined and as I-consider to-lord my not grace
sed impotentiam ascribis, quod post Italiae seu Romae
but impotence you-ascribe that after of-Italy or of-Rome
acquisitionem tot annis eam tibi dimiserit. Societatem
the-acquisition for-so-many years it to-you he-has-left the-alliance
vero amicitiae, quam te parentela voluisse facere dicis,
but of-friendship which you by-kinship to-have-wished to-make you-say
fraudem nos dolumque tenemus; pausanas exigis, quas nec
fraud we and-guile hold pledges you-demand which neither
te exigere neque nos concedere ratio ipsa compellit. Verum ut
you to-demand nor us to-grant reason itself compels but that
fallacia exsculpatur, veritas non reticeatur: misit me dominus
the-deceit be-carved-out the-truth not be-kept-silent sent me lord
meus ad te, ut, si filiam Romani imperatoris et Theophanae
my to you that if the-daughter of-Romanus emperor and of-Theophano
imperatricis domino meo, filio suo, Ottoni imperatori augusto
empress to-lord my son his Otto emperor august
in coniugium tradere volueris, iuramento mihi affirmes,
in marriage to-hand-over you-shall-have-wished by-oath to-me you-affirm
et ego pro gratiarum recompensatione haec et haec
and I for of-thanks requital these-things and these-things

dominum meum tibi facturum et observaturum iureiurando
lord my for-you about-to-do and about-to-observe by-oath
affirmabo. Sed et optimam amicitiae arrabona fraternitati
shall-affirm but also the-best of-friendship pledge to-brotherhood
tuae nunc dominus meus contulit, cum Appuliam omnem
your now lord my has-conferred when Apulia all
potestati subditam meo interventu, cuius hoc suggestione
to-power subject at-my intervention whose this by-the-suggestion
malum factum esse dicis, [dimiserit]. Cuius rei tot sunt
the-evil done to-be you-say he-released of-which thing so-many are
testes, quot sunt totius Appuliae habitatores'.
the-witnesses as-many-as are of-all Apulia the-inhabitants

8 'Secunda', inquit Nicephorus, 'hora iam transiit; προέλευσις,
the-second says Nicephorus hour already has-passed the-procession
id est processio, nobis est celebranda. Quod nunc instat,
that is the-procession by-us is to-be-celebrated what now presses
agamus. Contra haec, cum opportunum fuerit,
let-us-do against these-things when opportune it-shall-have-been
respondebimus'.
we-shall-answer

9 Non pigeat me προέλευσιν ipsam describere et dominos
not let-it-irk me the-procession itself to-describe and lords
meos audire. Negotiatorum multitudo copiosa ignobiliumque
my to-hear of-merchants a-multitude abundant and-of-low-born
personarum ea sollempnitate collecta ad susceptionem et
persons at-that solemnity gathered for the-reception and
laudem Nicephori a palatio usque ad Sanctam Sophiam,
praise of-Nicephorus from the-palace up to Saint Sophia
quasi pro muris, viae margines tenuit, clypeolis tenuibus
as-if for walls of-the-way the-edges held with-small-shields thin
satis et spiculis vilibus dedecorata. Accessit et ad
enough and with-javelins cheap disgraced there-was-added also to

dedecoris huius augmentum, quod vulgi ipsius potior pars
of-disgrace this the-increase that of-the-crowd itself the-greater part
ad laudem ipsius nudis processerat pedibus. Credo sic eos
to the-praise of-him with-bare had-gone-forth feet I-believe so them
putasse sanctam ipsam potius exornare προέλευσιν. Sed et
to-have-thought the-holy itself rather to-adorn procession but also
optimates sui, qui cum ipso per plebeiam et discalceatam
nobles his who with him through the-plebeian and barefoot
multitudinem ipsam transierant, magnis et nimia vetustate
multitude itself had-passed with-great and by-excessive age
rimatis tunicis erant induti. Satis decentius cotidiana veste
split tunics were dressed quite more-fittingly in-everyday clothing
induti procederent. Nullus est, cuius atavus hanc
dressed they-would-have-proceeded none is whose great-great-grandfather this
novam haberet. Nemo ibi auro, nemo gemmis ornatus erat,
new had no-one there with-gold no-one with-gems adorned was
nisi ipse solus Nicephorus, quem imperialia ornamenta ad
except he-himself alone Nicephorus whom the-imperial ornaments for
maiorum personas sumpta et composita foediorem reddiderant.
of-the-greater persons taken and composed more-hideous had-rendered
Per salutem vestram, quae mihi mea carior extat, una
by safety your which to-me than-mine dearer stands one
vestrorum pretiosa vestis procerum, centum horum et eo
of-your precious garment of-the-nobles than-a-hundred of-these and than-that
amplius pretiosior est! Ductus ego ad προέλευσιν ipsam in
more more-precious is led I to the-procession itself in
eminentiori loco iuxta psaltas, id est cantores, sum constitutus.
a-more-eminent place beside the-psaltai that is singers I-was placed
Cumque quasi reptans monstrum illud procederet, clamabant 10
and-when as-if crawling monster that proceeded cried-out
adulatores psaltae: ‘Ecce venit stella matutina, surgit Eous,
flattering psaltai behold comes the-star of-the-morning rises Eous

reverberat obtutu solis radios, pallida Saracenorum mors,
reflects with-his-glance of-the-sun the-rays pale of-the-Saracens death
Nicephorus μέδων, id est princeps!' Unde et cantabatur:
Nicephorus ruler that is prince whence also it-was-sung
'μέδοντι, id est principi, Nicephoro, πολλὰ ἔτη, id est plures
to-the-ruler that is to-the-prince Nicephorus many years that is many
anni sint! Gentes, hunc adorate, hunc colite, huic
years may-there-be peoples him adore him worship to-this-one
tanto colla subdite!' Quanto tunc verius canerent: Carbo
so-great necks submit how-much then more-truly would-they-sing coal
exstincte veni, μέλε, anus incessu, Sylvanus vultu, rustice,
extinguished come wretch old-woman in-gait Silvanus in-face rustic
lustrivage, capripes, cornute, bimembris, setiger, indocilis,
wood-wanderer goat-footed horned two-limbed bristly unteachable
agrestis, barbare, dure, villose, rebellis, Cappadox! Igitur
boorish barbarian hard hairy rebellious Cappadocian therefore
falsidicis illis inflatus naeniis Sanctam Sophiam ingreditur,
by-lying those puffed-up dirges Saint Sophia he-enters
dominis suis imperatoribus se a longe sequentibus et
lords his the-emperors him from afar following and
in pacis osculo ad terram usque adorantibus. Armiger
in of-peace the-kiss to the-ground all-the-way adoring the-armor-bearer
huius sagitta calamo immissa aeram in ecclesia ponit,
of-this-one with-an-arrow into-a-reed put the-era in the-church places
quae prosequitur, quo nimirum tempore imperare coeperit,
which records at-what to-be-sure time to-rule he-began
et sic aeram, qui id non viderunt, intellegunt.
and thus the-era who it not saw understand
11 Hac eadem die convivam me sibi esse iussit. Non ratus
on-this same day a-guest me to-himself to-be he-ordered not thinking
autem me dignum esse cuipiam suorum praeponi procerum,
moreover me worthy to-be to-anyone of-his to-be-preferred of-the-nobles

quintus decimus ab eo absque gausape sedi; meorum nemo
fifth tenth from him without a-tablecloth I-sat of-my none
comitum, non dico solum mensae non assedit, sed neque
companions not I-say only at-table not sat but not-even
domum, in qua conviva eram, vidit. Qua in coena turpi satis
the-house in which a-guest I-was saw which in supper foul enough
et obscena, ebriorum more oleo delibuta alioque
and obscene of-drunkards in-the-manner with-oil smeared and-with-other
quodam deterrimo piscium liquore aspersa multa super
a-certain most-vile of-fish liquid sprinkled many-things about
potentia vestra, multa super regnis et militibus me rogavit.
power your many-things about kingdoms and soldiers me he-asked
Cui cum consequenter et vere responderem, 'Mentiris!' ait,
to-whom when fittingly and truly I-answered you-lie he-says
'domini tui milites equitandi ignari, pedestris pugnae sunt
of-lord your the-soldiers of-riding ignorant of-foot fighting are
inscii, scutorum magnitudo, loricarum gravitudo, ensium
unskilled of-the-shields the-size of-the-mail-coats the-weight of-the-swords
longitudo galearumque pondus neutra parte eos pugnare
the-length and-of-the-helmets the-weight on-neither side them to-fight
sinit', ac subridens: 'Impedit', inquit, 'eos et gastrimargia,
allows and smiling hinders he-says them also gastrimargia
hoc est ventris ingluvies; quorum Deus venter est, quorum
that is of-the-belly gluttony whose god the-belly is whose
audacia crapula, fortitudo ebrietas, ieiunium dissolutio, pavor
boldness drunkenness strength intoxication fasting dissolution fear
sobrietas. Nec est in mari domino tuo classium numerus.
sobriety nor is-there on the-sea for-lord your of-fleets a-number
Navigantium fortitudo mihi soli inest, qui eum classibus
of-sailors the-strength to-me alone belongs who him with-fleets
aggrediar, bello maritimas eius civitates demoliar et, quae
shall-attack in-war maritime his the-cities I-shall-demolish and those-which

fluminibus sunt vicina, redigam in favillam. Qui, cedo mihi,
to-rivers are near I-shall-reduce to ashes who tell-me against-me
etiam in terra copiarum paucitate resistere poterit? Filius non
even on land of-forces with-fewness to-resist shall-be-able the-son not
abfuit, uxor non defuit; Saxones, Suevi, Bagoarii, Italici
was-absent the-wife not was-lacking the-Saxons Swabians Bavarians Italians
omnes cum eo adfuerunt, et cum civitatulam unam sibi
all with him were-present and when a-little-city one to-him
resistentem capere nescirent, immo nequirent, quomodo
resisting to-take they-did-not-know nay could-not how
mihi resistent venienti? quem tot copiae prosequentur,
against-me shall-they-resist coming whom so-many forces shall-follow

Gargara quot segetes, quot habet Methymna racemos,
Gargara as-many grain-crops as-many-as has Methymna grape-clusters
Quot caelum stellas, quot mare in flatibus undas!'
as-many-as heaven stars as-many-as the-sea in blasts waves

Called Lombards, not Romans, Liutprand retorts that Romulus gathered fugitives and murderers. Sent back to his prison and ill, he asks to sail home. The officials demand Ravenna and Rome for a porphyrogenita, or, for friendship alone, Rome free and the princes of Capua and Benevento returned. Liutprand answers that Peter of Bulgaria married an emperor's daughter, and cites Constantine's gifts to the Roman church.

Cui cum respondere et apologeticum dignum inflatione 12
to-whom when to-answer and an-answer worthy of-inflation
hac evomere vellem, non permisit; sed adiecit quasi ad
this to-vomit-forth I-wished not he-allowed but added as-if for
contumeliam: 'Vos non Romani, sed Langobardi estis!' Cui
insult you not Romans but Lombards are to-whom
adhuc dicere volenti et manu, ut tacerem, innuenti
still to-speak wishing and with-his-hand that I-be-silent nodding
commotus inquam: 'Romulum fratricidam, ex quo et
moved I-say Romulus the-fratricide from whom also
Romani dicti sunt, porniogenitum, hoc est ex adulterio
the-Romans called are porniogenitus that is from adultery
natum, chronographia innotuit, asylumque sibi fecisse,
born chronography has-made-known and-an-asylum for-himself to-have-made
in quo alieni aeris debitores, fugitivos servos, homicidas
in which of-others' money the-debtors fugitive slaves murderers
ac pro reatibus suis morte dignos suscepit multitudinemque
and for crimes their of-death worthy he-received and-a-multitude
quandam talium sibi ascivit, quos Romanos appellavit; ex
a-certain of-such to-himself took whom Romans he-called from
qua nobilitate propagati sunt ipsi, quos vos kosmocratores,
which nobility propagated are those-very whom you cosmocrators
id est imperatores, appellatis; quos nos, Langobardi scilicet,
that is emperors call whom we Lombards namely

Saxones, Franci, Lotharingi, Bagoarii, Suevi, Burgundiones,
Saxons Franks Lotharingians Bavarians Swabians Burgundians
tanto dedignamur, ut inimicos nostros commoti nil aliud
so-much disdain that enemies our moved nothing other
contumeliarum nisi: Romane! dicamus, hoc solo, id est
of-insults except Roman we-say by-this alone that is
Romanorum nomine, quicquid ignobilitatis, quicquid timiditatis,
of-the-Romans name whatever of-ignobility whatever of-timidity
quicquid avaritiae, quicquid luxuriae, quicquid mendacii, immo
whatever of-avarice whatever of-luxury whatever of-lying nay
quicquid vitiorum est, comprehendentes. Imbelles vero nos
whatever of-vices is comprehending unwarlike but us
et equitandi inscios quia dicis, si Christianorum peccata
and of-riding unskilled because you-say if of-the-Christians the-sins
promerentur, ut in hac austeritate perdures, quales vos estis
deserve that in this harshness you-persist what-kind you are
quamve pugnaces nos simus, bella proxima demonstrabunt'.
or-how warlike we may-be the-wars next shall-show
13 Talibus Nicephorus exacerbatus dictis manu silentium
by-such Nicephorus exasperated words with-his-hand silence
indixit mensamque sine latitudine longam auferri meque
imposed and-the-table without breadth long to-be-taken-away and-me
in invisam domum seu, ut verius fatear, carcerem reverti
into the-hateful house or as more-truly I-may-confess the-prison to-return
praecepit. Ubi post biduum cum indignatione tum aestu
ordered where after two-days as-well by-indignation as by-heat
et siti magno sum languore affectus. Sed et asseclarum
and thirst by-great I-was sickness affected but also of-attendants
meorum nemo exstitit, qui non eodem ebriatus poculo
my none stood-forth who not by-the-same drunk cup
diem sibi ultimum imminere formidaret. Cur, quaeso,
the-day for-himself last to-impend feared why I-ask

non aegrotarent, quibus erat potus pro optimo vino salsugo,
not should-they-be-sick for-whom was as-drink for the-best wine brine
pro culcitra non faenum, non stramen, non saltem terra,
for a-mattress not hay not straw not at-least the-earth
sed durum marmor, pro cervicali lapis? quibus patula
but hard marble for a-pillow a-stone for-whom the-gaping
domus non calorem, non imbrem, non frigus arcebat. Ipsa,
house not the-heat not the-rain not the-cold kept-off herself
si vellet, Salus his circumfusa, ut vulgo loquimur, eos
if she-wished Health about-these poured as commonly we-speak them
salvare non posset. Proprio ergo atque meorum debilitatus
to-save not could by-my-own therefore and of-my-men weakened
angore convocato ad me custode, immo persecutore meo,
by-the-anguish summoned to me the-guard nay persecutor my
non precibus solum, sed pretio obtinui, ut epistolam meam
not with-prayers only but with-a-price I-obtained that a-letter my
hunc modum continentem Nicephori fratri deferret:
this manner containing of-Nicephorus to-the-brother he-should-carry
'Leoni coropalati et logothetae τοῦ δρόμου Liudprandus 14
to-Leo curopalates and logothete of-the drome Liutprand
episcopus. Si imperator serenissimus petitionem, ob quam
bishop if the-emperor most-serene the-petition for which
veni, perficere cogitat, non fatigant me, quas hic sustineo,
I-came to-accomplish intends not weary me which here I-endure
passiones; literis solummodo meis et nuntio ut instruatur
the-sufferings by-letters only my and a-messenger that may-be-instructed
dominus meus me hic moram ab re non facere.
lord my me here a-delay from the-purpose not to-make
Quod si secus res sese habet, navis est hic Veneticorum
but if otherwise the-thing itself has a-ship is here of-the-Venetians
oneraria, quae proficisci festinat; hanc me aegrotum ingredi
a-merchantman which to-set-out hastens this me sick to-enter

sinat, ut si dissolutionis meae tempus advenerit, cadaver
let-him-allow that if of-dissolution my the-time shall-have-come corpse
meum genitale saltem solum suscipiat'.
my native at-least soil may-receive
Quas cum legisset, se post quatriduum me iussit adire.
which when he-had-read himself after four-days me he-ordered to-approach
Sederunt cum eo ad disceptationem vestram secundum eorum
sat with him for disputation your according-to their
traditionem sapientissimi viri, Attico pollentes eloquio, Basilius
tradition most-wise men with-Attic powerful eloquence Basil
parakinumenos, proto a secretis, protovestiarius et duo magistri,
parakoimomenos proto of the-secrets protovestiarius and two magistri
quorum hoc fuit narrationis initium: 'Quid causae sit,
of-whom this was of-the-speech the-beginning what of-cause there-may-be
quare te huc fatigasti, frater, edissere'. Quibus cum
why you hither have-wearied-yourself brother set-forth to-whom when
parentelae gratia, quae esset occasio infinitae pacis, edicerem,
of-kinship for-the-sake which might-be the-occasion of-infinite peace I-declared
inquiunt: 'Inaudita res est, ut porphyrogeniti porphyrogenita,
they-say unheard-of a-thing it-is that of-a-porphyrogenitus a-porphyrogenita
hoc est in purpura nati filia in purpura nata,
that is in purple of-one-born the-daughter in purple born
gentibus misceatur. Verum quia tam excellentem rem petitis,
with-the-gentiles be-mingled but because so excellent a-thing you-seek
si datis, quod decet, accipietis, quod libet: Ravennam scilicet
if you-give what befits you-shall-receive what pleases Ravenna namely
et Romam cum his omnibus continuatis, quae ab his sunt
and Rome with these all adjoining which from these are
usque ad nos. Si vero amicitiam absque parentela desideratis,
as-far-as to us if but friendship without kinship you-desire
Romam liberam esse dominus tuus permittat, principes autem,
Rome free to-be lord your let-him-permit the-princes moreover

Capuanum scilicet et Beneventanum, sancti nostri imperii
the-Capuan namely and of-Benevento of-holy our empire
olim servos, nunc rebelles, servituti pristinae tradat'.
formerly slaves now rebels to-servitude former let-him-hand-over
Quibus 'Dominum meum', inquam, 'potentiores habere 16
to-whom lord my I-say more-powerful to-have
Sclavos Petro Bulgarorum rege, qui Christophori imperatoris
Slavs than-Peter of-the-Bulgarians king who of-Christopher emperor
filiam in coniugium duxit, etiam ipsi non ignoratis!'
the-daughter in marriage took also yourselves not are-ignorant
— 'Sed Christophorus', aiunt, 'non porphyrogenitus fuit'.
but Christopher they-say not porphyrogenitus was
'Romam vero', inquam, 'quam vos liberam esse velle 17
Rome but I-say which you free to-be to-wish
perstrepitis, cui servit? cui tributa persolvit? Nonne prius
you-clamor whom does-it-serve to-whom tributes does-it-pay surely before
meretricibus serviebat? et vobis dormientibus, immo non
to-harlots it-was-serving and you sleeping nay not
valentibus dominus meus imperator augustus a tam turpi
being-able lord my emperor august from so foul
servitute liberavit? Constantinus imperator augustus, qui hanc
servitude freed Constantine emperor august who this
ex suo nomine condidit civitatem, sanctae apostolicae Romanae
from his name founded the-city to-the-holy apostolic Roman
ecclesiae, ut erat kosmocrator, multa donaria contulit, non
church as he-was cosmocrator many gifts conferred not
in Italia solum, sed in omnibus pene occidentalibus regnis
in Italy only but in all almost western kingdoms
necnon de orientalibus atque meridianis, Grecia scilicet,
and-also from eastern and southern Greece namely
Iudaea, Perside, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Aegypto, Libya, ut
Judea Persia Mesopotamia Babylonia Egypt Libya as

ipsius testantur privilegia, quae penes nos sunt. Sane quicquid
his testify privileges which with us are indeed whatever
in Italia, sed [et] in Saxonia, Bagoaria, omnibus domini mei
in Italy but also in Saxony Bavaria all of-lord my
regnis est, quod ad apostolorum beatorum ecclesiam respicit,
kingdoms is which to of-the-apostles blessed the-church looks
sanctissimorum apostolorum vicario contulit. Et si est, ut
of-the-most-holy apostles to-the-vicar he-conferred and if it-is that
dominus meus ex his omnibus civitates, villas, milites aut
lord my from these all cities villages soldiers or
familiam obtineat, Deum negavi. Cur imperator vero non
household holds God I-have-denied why the-emperor but not
itidem facit, ut ea, quae suis insunt regnis, apostolorum
likewise does that the-things which in-his are kingdoms of-the-apostles
ecclesiae reddat et per laborem atque munificentiam domini
to-the-church he-return and through the-labor and munificence of-lord
mei ditem et liberam ditiorem ipse ac liberiorem reddat?'
my rich and free richer he-himself and freer make

Mocked when he says God will judge on the last day, Liutprand is kept under guard until the feast of the Apostles. At dinner the Bulgarian envoy, shorn and wearing a brass chain, is seated above him by treaty, and he walks out and is made to eat with the servants, though Nicephorus sends him a kid stuffed with garlic. At a later dinner the emperor mocks the Saxon faith as raw; Liutprand answers that heresies come from the East and are put down in the West, and that Saxon faith shows in works.

'Sed hoc', ait Basilius parakinumenos, 'faciet, cum ad nutum 18
but this says Basil parakoimomenos he-shall-do when at nod
suum Roma et Romana ecclesia ordinabitur'. Tum: 'Homo',
his Rome and the-Roman church shall-be-ordered then a-man
inquam, 'quidam multam ab alio passus iniuriam his
I-say a-certain much from another having-suffered wrong with-these
Deum aggressus est verbis: Domine, vindica me de adversario
God approached has words Lord avenge me on adversary
meo! Cui Dominus: Faciam, inquit, in die, cum reddam
my to-whom the-Lord I-shall-do-it he-says on the-day when I-shall-render
unicuique secundum opera sua! At ille: Quam tarde! infit'.
to-each according-to works his but he how late he-begins
Tunc omnes praeter fratrem cachinno commoti disceptationem 19
then all except the-brother by-laughter moved the-disputation
dimiserunt meque in invisam domum reduci praeceperunt
dismissed and-me into the-hateful house to-be-led-back ordered
magnaque custodiri cautela usque in sanctorum apostolorum
and-with-great to-be-guarded caution until into of-the-holy apostles
religiosis cunctis celebrem diem. Qua celebritate me satis
to-the-religious all celebrated day at-which celebration me quite
aegrotum necnon et Bulgarorum nuntios, qui pridie
sick and also of-the-Bulgarians the-messengers who the-day-before

venerant, ad Sanctos Apostolos sibi obviare praecepit. Cumque
had-come at the-Holy Apostles him to-meet he-ordered and-when
post naeniarum garrulitatem et missarum celebrationem ad
after of-dirges the-chattering and of-Masses the-celebration to
mensam invitaremur, in citeriori mensae margine, quae erat
table we-were-invited at the-nearer of-the-table edge which was
sine latitudine longa, Bulgarorum nuntium, Ungarico more
without breadth long of-the-Bulgarians the-messenger in-Hungarian manner
tonsum, aenea catena cinctum et, ut mens mihi suggerit,
shorn with-a-bronze chain girded and as mind to-me suggests
catechumenum, mihi praeponit ad vestram plane, domini mei
a-catechumen before-me he-sets to your plainly of-lord my
augusti, contumeliam. In vobis contemptus, in vobis spretus,
august insult in you scorned in you spurned
in vobis abiectus. Sed gratias ago domino Iesu Christo, cui
in you cast-off but thanks I-give to-the-Lord Jesus Christ whom
vos servitis omni spiritu vestro, quod habitus sum pro
you serve with-all spirit your that held I-have-been for
nomine vestro dignus contumelias pati. Verum, domini mei,
name your worthy insults to-suffer but of-lord my
meam non considerans, sed vestram iniuriam mensam reliqui.
mine not considering but your injury the-table I-left
Cumque indignans abire vellem, Leo coropalates, imperatoris
and-when indignant to-go-away I-wished Leo curopalates of-the-emperor
frater, et proto a secretis Simeon pone me sequuntur haec
the-brother and proto of the-secrets Symeon behind me follow these-things
latrantes: 'Cum Christophori filiam Petrus Bulgarorum
barking when of-Christopher the-daughter Peter of-the-Bulgarians
vasileus coniugem duceret, symphona, id est consonantia,
basileus as-wife took symphona that is agreements
scripta iuramento firmata sunt, ut omnium gentium apostolis,
written by-oath confirmed were that of-all peoples to-the-apostles

id est nuntiis, penes nos Bulgarorum apostoli praeponantur,
that is messengers with us of-the-Bulgarians the-apostles be-preferred
honorentur, diligantur. Bulgarorum ille apostolus, quamquam,
be-honored be-loved of-the-Bulgarians that apostle although
ut dicis et verum est, tonsus, illotus et catena aenea
as you-say and true it-is shorn unwashed and with-a-chain bronze
cinctus sit, patricius tamen est, cui episcopum praeponere,
girded be a-patrician yet he-is over-whom a-bishop to-set
Francorum praesertim, nefas decernimus, iudicamus. Et
of-the-Franks especially wrong we-decree we-judge and
quoniam te id indigne ferre cognoscimus, non te nunc,
since you it unworthily to-bear we-know not you now
ut putas, ad hospitium redire sinimus, sed in diversorio
as you-think to the-lodging to-return we-allow but in an-inn
quodam cum imperatoris servis cibum gustare compellimus'.
a-certain with of-the-emperor the-servants food to-taste we-compel
Quibus ob incomparabilem cordis dolorem nil respondi, 20
to-whom for incomparable of-heart grief nothing I-answered
sed quae iusserant feci; indignam iudicans mensam, qua
but what they-had-ordered I-did unworthy judging the-table at-which
non dico mihi, id est Liudprando episcopo, sed Bulgarorum
not I-say to-me that is to-Liutprand bishop but of-the-Bulgarians
nuntius vestro praeponitur nuntio. Sed lenivit dolorem
the-messenger to-your is-preferred messenger but soothed grief
meum imperator sanctus munere magno, mittens mihi ex
my the-emperor holy with-a-gift great sending to-me from
delicatissimis cibis suis haedum pinguem, ex quo ipse
most-delicate foods his a-kid fat of which he-himself
comederat, allio, cepe, porris laute suffarcinatum, garo
had-eaten with-garlic onion leeks lavishly stuffed with-fish-sauce
delibutum, quem vestrae tunc mensae inesse optavi, ut,
smeared which at-your then table to-be I-wished that

qui delicias sancti imperatoris faustas esse non creditis,
you-who the-delights of-the-holy emperor auspicious to-be not believe
saltem his perspectis crederetis.
at-least these seen might-believe

21 Transactis ergo octo diebus, cum Bulgari iam abessent,
passed therefore eight days when the-Bulgarians already were-absent
putans me mensam magni facere suam in eodem loco me
thinking me the-table of-great to-make his in the-same place me
satis aegrotum secum convivare coegit. Adfuit cum pluribus
quite sick with-him to-dine he-compelled was-present with many
episcopis et patriarcha, quibus praesentibus plures mihi
bishops also the-patriarch in-whose presence many to-me
quaestiones de scripturis sacris proposuit, quas cum spiritu
questions about the-scriptures sacred he-proposed which when by-the-spirit
sancto afflante eleganter exposui, novissime autem, ut de
holy inspiring elegantly I-expounded at-last moreover that about
vobis ludum haberet, quas synodos haberemus, rogavit. Cui
you sport he-might-have what synods we-had he-asked to-whom
cum Nicenam, Chalcedonensem, Ephesinam, Antiochenam,
when of-Nicaea of-Chalcedon of-Ephesus of-Antioch
Carthaginensem, Ancyranam, Constantinopolitanam edicerem:
of-Carthage of-Ancyra of-Constantinople I-declared
'Ha! ha! he!' ait, 'Saxonicam dicere es oblitus, quam
ha ha he he-said the-Saxon to-mention you-have forgotten which
si rogas, cur nostri codices non habent, rudem [fidem] esse
if you-ask why our books not have-it raw the-faith to-be
et ad nos necdum venire posse respondeo'.
and to us not-yet to-come to-be-able I-answer

22 Cui inquam: 'In quo membro regnat infirmitas, illud est
to-whom I-say in which member reigns infirmity that is
cauterio exurendum. Haereses omnes a vobis emanarunt,
by-cautery to-be-burned-out the-heresies all from you have-flowed

penes vos viguerunt; a nobis, id est occidentalibus, hic sunt
among you have-flourished by us that is the-westerners here they-are
iugulatae, hic sunt occisae. Romanam sive Papiensem synodum,
cut-down here they-are killed the-Roman or the-Pavian synod
quamquam essent saepe, his non connumeramus. Romanus
although they-were often with-these not we-number the-Roman
enim clericus, postmodum universalis papa Gregorius, qui a
for cleric afterward universal pope Gregory who by
vobis appellatus est Dialogus, Eutychium Constantinopolitanum
you called is Dialogus Eutychius of-Constantinople
patriarcham haereticum ab eiusmodi haeresi liberavit. Aiebat
patriarch a-heretic from such heresy freed said
idem Eutychius nec solum aiebat, sed etiam docebat,
the-same Eutychius nor only said but also taught
clamabat, scriptitabat nos in resurrectione non veram, quam
cried wrote us in the-resurrection not the-true which
hic habemus, sed fantasticam quandam carnem assumpturos;
here we-have but a-phantasmal certain flesh about-to-take-on
cuius erroris liber a Gregorio orthodoxe est combustus. Sed
of-which error the-book by Gregory orthodoxly was burned but
Ennodius Papiensis episcopus propter aliam quandam haeresin
Ennodius of-Pavia bishop because-of another certain heresy
huc, id est Constantinopolim, a Romano est patriarcha
hither that is to-Constantinople by the-Roman was patriarch
directus, quam compressam in catholicam atque orthodoxam
directed which suppressed into the-catholic and orthodox
reformavit. Saxonum genus, ex quo sanctum lavacrum et
he-restored of-the-Saxons the-race from when the-holy font and
Dei accepit notitiam, nulla est haeresi maculatum, ut ibi
of-God it-received the-knowledge by-no was heresy stained that there
synodus fieret, qua errorem, cum nullus esset, corrigeret.
a-synod should-be-held which the-error since none there-was might-correct

Rudem quia dicis Saxonibus esse fidem, id ipsum et
raw because you-say for-the-Saxons to-be the-faith that very-thing also
ego affirmo; semper enim apud eos Christi fides rudis est
I affirm always for among them of-Christ the-faith raw is
et non vetus, ubi fidem opera sequuntur. Hic fides non
and not old where faith works follow here faith not
rudis, sed vetus est, ubi fidem opera non comitantur, sed
raw but old is where faith works not accompany but
quasi prae vetustate, ut vestis contrita, contemnitur. Sed
as-if for age like a-garment worn-out is-despised but
hanc synodum factam esse in Saxonia certo scio, in
this synod held to-have-been in Saxony certainly I-know in
qua tractatum est et firmatum, decentius ensibus pugnare
which treated it-was and confirmed more-fittingly with-swords to-fight
quam calamis et prius mortem obire quam hostibus terga
than with-pens and first death to-meet than to-the-enemy the-back
dare. Quod vel tuus exercitus experitur!' In corde meo dixi:
to-give which even your army experiences in heart my I-said
'et quam sint pugnaces, re ipsa experiatur!'
and how they-are warlike in-the-thing itself let-it-experience

Liutprand, ill, is summoned to the emperor, and the Virgin's prayers save him from death. At the Springs he is told that Otto's envoys swore Otto would never offend the empire, and that his calling himself emperor is the worst offense; Liutprand says his instructions bind him. Nicephorus demands the princes of Capua and Benevento as his slaves and sends Adalbert's envoy home with a fleet.

Verum hac eadem die post meridiem adeo impotentem et 23
but on-this same day after noon so powerless and
transfiguratum me revertenti ad palatium sibi praecepit
transfigured me returning to the-palace to-himself he-ordered
occurrere, ut, obviantes mihi quae prius in stuporem mentis
to-meet that meeting me who before into stupor of-mind
mulieres versae: 'Mana, mana', clamabant, miseriam meam
the-women turned mama mama cried misery my
[miserantes] pugnis pectora tunsae dicerent: 'ταπεινὲ καὶ
pitying with-fists their-breasts beaten said lowly and
ταλαίπωρε!' Cui, Nicephoro scilicet venienti, et vobis
wretched to-whom to-Nicephorus namely coming and you
absentibus, quid tunc manibus in caelum erectis optaverim,
absent what then with-hands to heaven raised I-wished
proveniat utinam! Sed mihi velim credatis, ad risum
may-it-come-to-pass would-that but to-me I-would-wish you-believe to laughter
me non parum illexit, impatienti enim atque effreni insidens
me not a-little it-enticed on-an-impatient for and unbridled sitting
equo, satis parvus satis magno. Puppam ipsum mens sibi
horse quite small quite large a-doll him the-mind for-itself
depinxit mea, quam Sclavi vestri equino colligantes pullo
pictured my which the-Slavs your to-a-horse's tying foal
matrem praecedentem sequi effrenate dimittunt.
the-mother going-before to-follow unbridled let-go

24 His expletis ad concives et cohabitatores meos, quinque
these completed to the-fellow-citizens and co-inhabitants my five
leones, in praenominatam invisam domum sum deductus,
lions into the-aforenamed hateful house I-was led
ubi post hebdomadarum spatium trium nullius nisi meorum
where after of-weeks the-space three by-no-one except my-own
sum colloquio visitatus. Qua ex re Nicephorum nunquam
I-was with-conversation visited which from thing Nicephorus never
me velle dimittere mens sibi depinxit mea, ac tristitia
me to-wish to-release the-mind for-itself pictured my and sadness
immodica languorem languori adeo superimposuit, ut
immoderate languor upon-languor so-much heaped that
vita excederem, nisi mihi hanc Dei genetrix a
from-life I-would-have-departed unless for-me this of-God the-mother from
creatore et filio suo precibus obtineret, quemadmodum non
the-creator and son her by-prayers had-obtained as not
fantastica, sed vera est mihi visione monstratum.
in-a-phantasmal but in-a-true it-was to-me vision shown
25 His ergo tribus hebdomadibus habuit Nicephorus extra
in-these therefore three weeks had Nicephorus outside
Constantinopolim metastasin, id est stationem, in loco,
Constantinople a-metastasis that is a-station in the-place
qui dicitur Εἰς πήγας, id est Ad fontes, eodemque me
which is-called at the-springs that is at the-springs and-thither me
venire praecepit. Et cum tam languidus essem, ut non
to-come he-ordered and when so languid I-was that not
solum statio, sed ipsa etiam sessio gravis mihi morae
only standing but the-very even sitting heavy to-me of-delay
videretur, discooperto capite, quod malae valetudini meae
seemed with-uncovered head which to-ill health my
nimis contrarium erat, ante se me stare coegit; cui
too contrary was before him me to-stand he-compelled to-whom

et ait: 'Domini tui regis Ottonis nuntii, qui praeterito
also he-says of-lord your king Otto the-messengers who in-the-past
te praecesserant anno, iuramento mihi promiserunt, et
you had-preceded year by-oath to-me promised and
iurisiurandi literae inpraesentiarum sunt, nunquam illum
of-the-oath the-letters at-present are never him
in aliquo nostrum scandalizare imperium. Vis maius
in anything our to-scandalize empire you-wish a-greater
scandalum, quam quod se imperatorem vocat, imperii nostri
scandal than that himself emperor he-calls of-empire our
themata sibi usurpat? Utraque non sunt ferenda; et si
the-themes for-himself he-usurps both not are to-be-borne and if
utraque importabilia, istud est non ferendum, immo nec
both unbearable this is not to-be-borne nay not-even
audiendum, quod se imperatorem nominat. Sed si confirmas
to-be-heard that himself emperor he-names but if you-confirm
eadem, quae ipsi fecerunt, fortunatum te atque locupletem
the-same-things which they did fortunate you and rich
imperii nostri maiestas cito dimittet'. Id autem eo non
of-empire our the-majesty quickly shall-dismiss this moreover for-this not
dixit, ut vos, si mea hoc stultitia faceret, conservaturos
he-said that you if my this folly should-do about-to-keep
speraret, sed voluit habere prae manibus, quod in laudem
he-hoped but he-wished to-have at hand what for praise
suam et contumeliam nostram ostenderet futuris temporibus.
his and insult our he-might-show in-future times
Cui inquam: 'Nuper sanctissimus dominus meus, ut est 26
to-whom I-say recently most-holy lord my as he-is
sapientissimus et spiritu Dei plenus, haec praenoscens
most-wise and with-the-spirit of-God full these-things foreknowing
quae asseris, ne terminos, quos constituit mihi, transcenderem,
which you-assert lest the-limits which he-set for-me I-should-overstep

ἐντόλινα, id est praeceptum, conscripsit, quod et sigillo
an-entolina that is a-precept wrote-out which also with-seal
signavit suo, ne secus facerem'. Scis, domine mi auguste,
sealed his lest otherwise I-should-do you-know lord my august
qua id fiducia dixerim. 'Εντόλινα istud in medium
with-what this confidence I-may-have-said the-entolina that into the-midst
proferatur, et quicquid iusserit, iuramento a me
let-be-brought-forward and whatever it-shall-have-ordered by-oath by me
tibi firmetur. Sed [quod] praeteriti nuntii praeter iussionem
to-you let-be-confirmed but what the-past messengers beyond the-command
domini mei promiserunt, iuraverunt, conscripserunt, ita est,
of-lord my promised swore wrote-out so it-is
ut Plato ait: Causa penes optantem, Deus extra culpam'.
as Plato says the-cause with the-chooser God outside blame
27 His expletis ventum est ad nobilissimos principes Capuanum
these completed come it-was to the-most-noble princes of-Capua
et Beneventanum, quos ipse servos nominat et ob quos
and of-Benevento whom he-himself slaves names and for whom
intestinus ipsum agitat dolor. 'Servos', inquit, 'meos dominus
intestine him agitates grief slaves he-says my lord
tuus in tutelam recipit suam, quos si non dimiserit et
your into protection receives his whom if not he-shall-have-released and
in pristinam servitutem redegerit, nostra amicitia carebit.
into former servitude shall-have-reduced our friendship he-shall-lack
Ipsi, in imperium nostrum ut recipiantur, flagitant; sed
they-themselves into empire our that they-be-received demand but
recusat eos nostrum imperium, ut cognoscant et experiantur,
refuses them our empire that they-may-know and experience
quam periculosum sit servos a dominis declinasse,
how dangerous it-is for-slaves from their-masters to-have-turned-aside
servitutem effugere. Et est decentius domino tuo, ut
servitude to-flee and it-is more-fitting for-lord your that

mihi eos tradat amicus, quam mihi dimittat invitus.
to-me them he-hand-over a-friend than to-me he-leave unwilling
Experientur plane vita comite, quid sit herum fallere,
they-shall-experience plainly life accompanying what it-is a-master to-deceive
quid sit servitutem deserere, et, ut puto, sentiunt nunc, quod
what it-is servitude to-desert and as I-think they-feel now what
dico, operantibus hoc nostris, qui sunt ultra mare, militibus'.
I-say working this our who are beyond the-sea soldiers
Quibus respondere me non permisit, sed abire cupientem ad 28
to-whom to-answer me not he-allowed but to-go-away desiring to
mensam suam redire praecepit. Cui pater assedit, homo, ut
table his to-return he-ordered by-whom the-father sat a-man as
mihi videbatur, natus centum quinquaginta annis. Cui itidem,
to-me he-seemed born a-hundred fifty years to-whom likewise
ut filio, Greci in laudibus, immo in ventis suis, Deus annos
as to-the-son the-Greeks in praises nay in winds their God the-years
ut multiplicet, conclamant. Qua in re, quam sint Greci
that he-multiply cry-out which in matter how are the-Greeks
stulti quamve huius gloriae amatores quamve adulatores, quam
foolish or-how of-this glory lovers or-how flatterers how
cupidi, hinc colligere possumus: optant seni non solum,
greedy from-here to-gather we-can they-wish for-an-old-man not only
sed silicernio, quod naturam ipsam non pati certo sciunt;
but for-a-corpse-to-be what nature itself not to-allow certainly they-know
gaudet et silicernium ea sibi optari, quae nec
rejoices also the-corpse-to-be those-things for-himself to-be-wished which neither
Deum facere nec sibi prodesse, sed obesse, etiam si faceret,
God to-do nor to-him to-profit but to-harm even if he-did
novit. Quod quaeso Nicephorum gaudere pacis *** illum et
he-knows which I-ask Nicephorus to-rejoice of-peace (lacuna) him and
phosforum clamabant. Impotentem virilem, stultum sapientem,
morning-star they-cried the-impotent manly the-foolish wise

brevem magnum, nigrum album, peccatorem sanctum dicere,
the-short tall the-black white the-sinner holy to-call
mihi credite, non laus, sed contumelia est. Et qui aliena
to-me believe not praise but insult is and he-who another's
magis gaudet sibi acclamari quam propria, avibus omnino
more rejoices to-himself to-be-acclaimed than his-own to-birds wholly
est similis, quarum intuitum nox illuminat, dies caecat.
is like whose sight night illuminates day blinds
29 Sed redeamus ad rem. Hac in cena, quod prius non
but let-us-return to the-matter this at supper what before not
fecerat, voce elata beati Iohannis Chrysostomi homiliam
he-had-done with-voice raised of-blessed John Chrysostom a-homily
in apostolorum actibus legere iussit. Post cuius lectionis
on of-the-apostles the-acts to-read he-ordered after whose of-the-reading
terminum, cum ad vos redeundi licentiam quaererem, capite
the-end when to you of-returning license I-asked with-his-head
se ita facturum innuens recipi me ad concives et
himself so about-to-do nodding to-be-received me to the-fellow-citizens and
cohabitatores meos leones persecutori meo indixit. Quod cum
co-inhabitants my the-lions to-persecutor my he-enjoined which when
fieret, non sum ab eo visus usque in tertiodecimo Kalendas
was-done not I-was by him seen until into the-thirteenth Kalends
Augusti, sed diligenter custoditus, ne cuiuspiam fruerer
of-August but carefully guarded lest of-anyone I-should-enjoy
sermone, qui suos mihi actus indicaret. Interea Grimizonem,
the-conversation who his to-me deeds might-show meanwhile Grimizo
Adelberti nuntium, se adire iussit, quem cum navali
of-Adalbert the-messenger himself to-approach he-ordered whom with naval
suo exercitu redire praecipit. Fuerunt chelandia XXIV,
his army to-return he-orders there-were chelandia twenty-four
Russorum naves II, Gallicae II; si plus miserit, quas non
of-the-Rus ships two Gallic two if more he-sent which not

viderim, nescio. Vestrorum, domini mei imperatores augusti,
I-saw I-know-not of-your lords my emperors august
militum fortitudo non eget, ut adversariorum impotentia
of-soldiers the-strength not needs that of-the-adversaries by-the-impotence
animetur, quod in his saepe expertum est gentibus,
it-be-encouraged which in these often experienced has-been peoples
quarum etiam ultimi et ceterorum comparatione impotentes
of-whom even the-last and of-the-rest in-comparison impotent
Grecam fortitudinem straverunt, tributariam fecerunt. Sicut
the-Greek strength laid-low tributary made as
enim vos non terrerem, si fortissimos illos et Alexandro
for you not I-would-terrify if most-brave them and to-Alexander
Macedoni similes praedicarem, sic et vos [non] instigo,
of-Macedon like I-proclaimed so also you not I-incite
cum impotentiam eorum, quae vera est, narro. Mihi credatis
when the-impotence their which true is I-relate me you-believe
velim, et credetis, scio, omnem ipsum exercitum
I-would-wish and you-shall-believe I-know all the-very army
quadringentis vestris, si fossa murive non impediant, posse
with-four-hundred of-yours if a-ditch or-walls not hinder to-be-able
occidere, cui exercitui, ut puto ad contumeliam vestram,
to-kill over-which army as I-think to insult your
hominem quandam — sed quandam eo dixi, quia mas
a-man a-certain but a-certain for-this I-said because a-male
esse desiit, mulier fieri nequit — praeposuit. Adelbertus
to-be he-has-ceased a-woman to-become cannot he-set Adalbert
octo milia loricatorum se habere Nicephoro mandavit,
eight thousand mail-clad himself to-have to-Nicephorus sent-word
quibuscum Argivo adminiculante exercitu vos fugare aut
with-whom the-Argive helping army you to-put-to-flight or

sternere dicit rogavitque aemulum vestrum, ut pecunia illi
to-lay-low he-says and-he-asked rival your that money to-him
mitteretur, qua illos avidius ad pugnam instigaret.
be-sent by-which them more-greedily to battle he-might-incite

VI · THE FLEET AGAINST OTTO AND LEAVE TO GO

Nicephorus plans to betray Adalbert if he comes with too few men. Liutprand ironically asks peace for Cremona, and Nicephorus swears to send him to Ancona on his chelandia, then leaves against the Assyrians. Eighteen miles from the city the emperor asks at least that Otto give no help to the princes of Capua and Benevento, and angrily dismisses Liutprand when he refuses.

30 Sed nunc, domini mei, accipite insidias Danaum et crimine
but now lords my receive the-plots of-the-Danaans and crime
ab uno discite omnes. Nicephorus mancipio illi, cui
from one learn all Nicephorus to-the-slave that to-whom
collectitium atque conductitium commendavit exercitum,
the-scraped-together and hired he-entrusted army
pecuniam satis magnam hac ratione dedit, ut, si Adelbertus
money quite great on-this reasoning gave that if Adalbert
cum septem milibus loricatorum et eo amplius, sicut
with seven thousand mail-clad and than-that more as
mandavit, se adierit, tunc donativum eis illud
he-sent-word him shall-have-approached then the-donative to-them that
distribuat, Cona frater suus cum ipsius et Argolico exercitu
he-distribute Cona brother his with his and the-Argolic army
vos impugnet, Adelbertus vero Bareis diligenter custodiatur,
you should-attack Adalbert but at-Bari carefully be-guarded
donec potitus victoria frater redeat. Quod si veniens tot
until having-gained the-victory the-brother return but if coming so-many

hominum milia non duxerit, ut capiatur, vinciatur vobisque
of-men thousands not he-shall-have-led that he-be-taken be-bound and-to-you
eo venientibus tradatur, insuper et pecunia, quae ei
thither coming be-handed-over moreover also the-money which to-him
debebatur, vestras in manus conferatur, edixit. O bellatorem!
was-owed your into hands be-conferred he-proclaimed O warrior
o fidelem! Prodere cupit, cui defensorem parat; defensorem
O faithful-one to-betray he-desires for-whom a-defender he-prepares a-defender
parat, quem perdere cupit; in neutro fides, in utroque
he-prepares whom to-destroy he-desires in neither faith in both
infidelitas; fecit, quo non eguit, eguit, quod non fecerat. Sed
infidelity he-did what not he-needed he-needed what not he-had-done but
esto; fecerit, ut Grecos decuit! Nos ad propositum redeamus.
be-it-so he-did as the-Greeks befitted we to the-purpose let-us-return
Quartodecimo Kalendas Augusti collectitium ipsum navalem 31
on-the-fourteenth Kalends of-August the-scraped-together itself naval
exercitum me ab invisa domo spectante dimisit.
army me from the-hateful house watching he-dismissed
Decimotertio autem, quo die leves Greci raptionem Heliae
on-the-thirteenth moreover on-which day the-fickle Greeks the-rapture of-Elijah
prophetae ad caelos ludis scenicis celebrant, me se
the-prophet to the-heavens with-plays scenic celebrate me him
adire praecepit, cui et ait: 'Imperium nostrum copias
to-approach he-ordered to-whom also he-says empire our forces
in Assyrios ducere cogitat, non super Christicolas,
against the-Assyrians to-lead intends not against the-worshipers-of-Christ
quemadmodum dominus tuus. Praeterito quippe anno id
as lord your past indeed year that
ipsum facere volui, sed audito, quod dominus tuus imperii
very-thing to-do I-wished but heard that lord your of-empire
nostri terram invadere vellet, dimissis Assyriis illum versus
our the-land to-invade wished dismissed the-Assyrians him toward

habenas retorsimus; obviavitque nobis in Macedonia Dominicus
the-reins we-turned and-there-met us in Macedonia Dominic
Venedicus, nuntius suus, qui multo labore et sudore nos,
the-Venetian messenger his who with-much toil and sweat us
ut reverteremur, delusit, iureiurando nobis affirmans nunquam
that we-should-turn-back deluded by-oath to-us affirming never
dominum tuum esse id cogitaturum, nedum facturum.
lord your to-be this about-to-intend let-alone about-to-do
Revertere ergo' — quod cum audissem tacitus Deo gratias!
return therefore which when I-had-heard silent to-God thanks
dixi — 'et haec atque haec tuo domino nuntiato;
I-said and these-things and these-things to-your lord announce
si me [desiderii] compotem fecerit, ipse redito'.
if me of-my-desire possessed he-shall-have-made yourself return
32 Cui: 'Iubeat', inquam, 'sanctissimum imperium tuum me in
to-whom let-order I-say most-holy empire your me into
Italiam cito advolare, certa ratione, quod dominus meus,
Italy quickly to-fly on-the-sure reasoning that lord my
quae vult imperium tuum, compleat, et laetus ego ad te
what it-wishes empire your may-fulfill and glad I to you
redeam'. Quod qua mente dixerim, nec ipsum, proh dolor,
may-return which with-what mind I-may-have-said not him alas grief
latuit. Nam subridens simul capite innuit meque terratenus
escaped for smiling at-once with-his-head he-nodded and-me to-the-ground
se adorantem atque abeuntem extra foris manere atque ad
him adoring and going-away outside the-doors to-remain and to
cenam allio et cepa bene olentem, oleo et garo sordidam
supper with-garlic and onion well smelling with-oil and fish-sauce filthy
venire praecepit; magnisque die illa effeci precibus, ut
to-come ordered and-with-great on-day that I-brought-about prayers that
munus meum, quod saepe aspernatus erat, dignaretur accipere.
gift my which often spurned he-had he-might-deign to-accept

Residentibus itaque nobis ad mensam sine latitudine 33
sitting and-so us at table without breadth
longam, pallingi latitudine tectam, longitudine seminudam,
long with-a-cloth in-breadth covered in-length half-bare
ex Francis, quo nomine tam Latinos quam Teutones
about the-Franks by-which name as-well the-Latins as the-Germans
comprehendit, ludum habuit rogavitque me, ut, quo in
he-comprehends sport he-had and-he-asked me that what in
loco episcopatus mei civitas esset quove nomine frueretur,
place of-bishopric my the-city was or-by-what name it-enjoyed
edicerem. Cui: 'Cremona', inquam, 'Eridano fluviorum
I-should-declare to-whom Cremona I-say to-the-Po of-the-rivers
Italiae regi satis vicina. Et quia imperium tuum chelandia
of-Italy the-king quite near and because empire your chelandia
eo mittere properat, prosit mihi te vidisse, prosit
thither to-send hastens let-it-profit me you to-have-seen let-it-profit
agnovisse! Da pacem loco, ut per te saltem possit
to-have-known give peace to-the-place that through you at-least it-may-be-able
subsistere, qui tibi non potest resistere!' Sed vafer ille
to-stand which to-you not can to-resist but crafty that-one
haec εἰρωνικῶς me dixisse cognovit submissoque vultu
these-things ironically me to-have-said recognized and-with-lowered face
se ita facturum promisit iuravitque mihi per sancti sui
himself so about-to-do promised and-swore to-me by of-holy his
virtutem imperii nil me mali passurum, sed prospere
the-virtue empire nothing me of-evil about-to-suffer but prosperously
suis cum chelandiis usque in Anchonitanum portum cito
his with chelandia up into the-Anconitan harbor quickly
perventurum, et mihi id tunso digitis pectore iuravit.
about-to-arrive and to-me this with-beaten fingers breast swore

34 Verum quam impie peieraverit, animadvertite. Haec acta,
but how impiously he-perjured notice these-things done
haec dicta sunt decimo tertio Kalendas Augusti, secunda
these-things said were on-the-tenth third Kalends of-August on-the-second
feria, quo ex die usque in nonum stipendiorum nihil
day which from day until into the-ninth of-stipends nothing
ab eo recepi, cum tanta esset Constantinopoli fames, ut
from him I-received when so-great was at-Constantinople famine that
viginti quinque asseclas meos et quatuor custodes Grecos
twenty five attendants my and four guards Greeks
tribus aureis una cena nequirem reficere. Quarta feria
with-three gold-pieces at-one supper I-could-not to-refresh on-the-fourth day
ipsius hebdomadae Nicephorus Constantinopolim egreditur
of-that week Nicephorus from-Constantinople goes-out
in Assyrios profecturus.
against the-Assyrians about-to-set-out

35 Quinta feria frater suus me accersivit, quem ita convenit:
on-the-fifth day brother his me summoned who thus addressed
'Sancto imperatore praegresso domi hodie dispositionis
the-holy emperor having-gone-ahead at-home today of-arrangement
eiusdem causa substiti; nunc, si te sanctum imperatorem
the-same for-the-sake I-have-stayed now if you the-holy emperor
visendi desiderium obtinet et si quidquam, quod necdum
of-visiting the-desire holds and if anything which not-yet
prodideris, habes, edissere'. Cui inquam: 'Nec sanctum
you-have-disclosed you-have set-forth to-whom I-say neither the-holy
imperatorem videndi nec rei novae narrandae habeo causam;
emperor of-seeing nor of-a-thing new to-be-related have-I cause
unum hoc peto secundum sancti imperii promissionem, ut
one this I-ask according-to of-the-holy empire the-promise that
chelandiis in Anchonitanum portum usque deducar'. Quo
in-chelandia into the-Anconitan harbor all-the-way I-be-conducted which

audito — ut sunt Greci per caput alterius semper iurare
heard as are the-Greeks by the-head of-another always to-swear
parati — per imperatorium caput, per vitam propriam, per
ready by the-imperial head by life his-own by
liberos, quos Deus ita, ut verum dixit, conservet, se id
the-children whom God so as true he-said may-preserve himself it
completurum iurare coepit. Cui cum: 'Quando?' dicerem,
about-to-fulfill to-swear began to-whom when when I-said
'Mox discedente', inquit, 'imperatore; delongaris enim, sub cuius
soon departing he-says the-emperor the-drungarius for under whose
manu navium est omnis potestas, recedente sancto imperatore
hand of-the-ships is all power the-receding holy emperor
curam tui aget'. Hac spe ludificatus laetus ab eo recessi.
care of-you shall-take with-this hope mocked glad from him I-withdrew
Post sequentem vero diem, sabbatho scilicet, in Umbriam, qui 36
after the-following but day on-the-sabbath namely to Umbria which
est locus decem et octo miliaribus Constantinopoli distans,
is a-place ten and eight miles from-Constantinople distant
Nicephorus me accersiri iubet, cui et ait: 'Putabam
Nicephorus me to-be-summoned orders to-whom also he-says I-thought
te quidem virum magnum et honestum ea gratia huc
you indeed a-man great and honorable for-that sake hither
venisse, ut completa omni modo voluntate mea perpetuam
to-have-come that fulfilled in-every way the-will my perpetual
inter me et dominum tuum constitueres amicitiam. Et
between me and lord your you-might-establish friendship and
quoniam ob cordis tui duritiem id facere nolis, unum
since for of-heart your the-hardness it to-do you-are-unwilling one
saltem, quod facere iusta ratione possis, efficito, scilicet
at-least which to-do by-just reason you-can bring-about namely
dominum tuum principibus Capuano et Beneventano, servis
lord your to-the-princes of-Capua and of-Benevento slaves

meis, quos oppugnare dispono, nullum auxilium collaturum.
my whom to-attack I-intend no help about-to-confer
Sua qui non largitur, nostra saltem dimittat. Nota res
his-own who not bestows ours at-least let-him-leave known the-thing
est, quod eorum patres et avi nostro imperio tributa
is that their fathers and grandfathers to-our empire tributes
dederunt, at id istos brevi tempore facturos imperii nostri
gave but that these in-short time about-to-do of-empire our
exercitus laborabit'. Cui inquam: 'Principes isti apprime
the-army shall-labor to-whom I-say princes these exceedingly
nobiles et domini mei sunt milites, qui, si senserit
noble and of-lord my are soldiers who if he-shall-have-perceived
exercitum tuum super eos irruere, eis copias mittet,
army your upon them to-rush to-them forces he-shall-send
quibuscum tuos conterere et duo illa themata, quae ultra
with-which yours to-crush and two those themes which beyond
mare habes, tibi praevalebunt auferre'. Tunc bufonis in
the-sea you-have from-you they-shall-prevail to-take-away then of-a-toad in
modum tumefactus et commotus: 'Discede', inquit, 'per me,
manner swollen and moved depart he-says by me
per qui me talem genuere parentes, faciam, ut aliud
by who me such begot the-parents I-shall-make that something-else
dominus tuus quam desertores servos defendere cogitet'.
lord your than deserter slaves to-defend should-think

At dinner the emperor's guests abuse the Latins, and Nicephorus shows Liutprand his park and its wild asses, which are no better than Cremona's donkeys; rebuked for riding in a cap, he answers that only Latin women go veiled. Liutprand explains the campaign by the Greek books of visions that promise Nicephorus victory over the Assyrians. He rejects the Greek reading of Hippolytus' 'lion and whelp' as Nicephorus and Otto, contrasting the Greek king with the Frankish.

Cumque abirem, iussit interpreti me sibi convivam 37
and-when I-was-going-away he-ordered to-the-interpreter me his guest
fieri accitisque eorundem principum fratre et Bysantio
to-become and-summoned of-the-same princes the-brother and Byzantius
Barisiano magnas in vos gentemque Latinam et Teutonicam
of-Bari great against you and-the-race Latin and German
contumelias evomere iussit. Verum cum a sordida cena
insults to-vomit-forth he-ordered but when from the-sordid supper
ipse discederem, nuntiis interpositis clam mihi mandaverunt
I-myself departed messengers interposed secretly to-me they-sent-word
et iuraverunt se, quae latraverant, non sponte, sed
and swore themselves what they-had-barked not willingly but
imperatore volente et comminante dixisse. Sed et idem
the-emperor wishing and threatening to-have-said but also the-same
Nicephorus in eadem cena me interrogavit, si vos
Nicephorus at the-same supper me asked whether you
perivolia, id est briolia, vel si in perivoliis onagros
perivolia that is parks or whether in the-parks wild-asses
vel cetera animalia haberetis? Cui cum vos brolia et in
or other animals you-had to-whom when you parks and in
broliis animalia onagris exceptis habere affirmarem: 'Ducam
the-parks animals wild-asses excepted to-have I-affirmed I-shall-lead
te', inquit, 'in nostrum perivolium, cuius magnitudinem et
you he-says into our park whose size and

onagros, id est silvestres asinos, te vidisse miraberis'.
wild-asses that is woodland asses you to-have-seen you-shall-wonder
Ductus itaque in perivolium satis magnum, montuosum,
led and-so into a-park quite large mountainous
fruticosum, minime amoenum, cum pileatus equitarem meque
bushy by-no-means pleasant when with-a-cap I-was-riding and-me
coropalates a longe prospiceret, filio celeriter directo
the-curopalates from afar saw with-his-son swiftly directed
mihi mandavit fas non esse quempiam, ubi imperator esset,
to-me he-sent-word right not to-be anyone where the-emperor was
pileatum, sed teristratum incedere. Cui: 'Mulieres', inquam,
in-a-cap but in-a-veil to-go to-whom women I-say
'nostrae tiaratae et teristratae, viri equitant pileati. Nec
our tiara-wearing and veiled men ride in-caps nor
decet vos compellere patrium me hic mutare morem,
does-it-befit you to-compel the-ancestral me here to-change custom
cum vestros nos adeuntes patrium morem tenere sinamus;
when yours to-us coming the-ancestral custom to-hold we-allow
manicati enim, fasciati, fibulati, criniti, talari tunica
sleeved for banded brooched long-haired with-ankle-length tunic
induti penes nos equitant, incedunt, mensae assident et, quod
dressed among us they-ride walk at-table sit and what
nostris omnibus nimis turpe videtur, ipsi soli capite operto
to-our all too shameful seems they alone with-head covered
imperatores nostros deosculantur', 'quod non amplius fieri
emperors our kiss which not further to-be-done
Deus permittat!' tacitus dixi. — 'Revertere ergo!' inquit.
God may-permit silent I-said turn-back therefore he-says
38 Quod cum facerem, occurrunt mihi commisti capreis, quos
which when I-did meet me mingled with-roe-deer which
ipsi dicunt, onagri. Sed, quaeso, quales onagri? Quales sunt
they call wild-asses but I-ask what-kind wild-asses such-as are

Cremonae domestici. Color idem, forma eadem, auriti itidem,
at-Cremona domestic the-color the-same the-shape the-same eared likewise
vocales similiter, cum rudere incipiunt, magnitudo non dispar,
vocal similarly when to-bray they-begin the-size not unequal
velocitas una, dulces lupis aeque. Quos cum viderem,
the-speed one sweet to-wolves equally which when I-saw
coequitanti Greco inquam: 'Huiusmodi nunquam in Saxonia
to-the-riding-with-me Greek I-say of-this-kind never in Saxony
vidi'. 'Si', inquit, 'dominus tuus sancto imperatori morigeratus
I-saw if he-says lord your to-the-holy emperor compliant
fuerit, multos illi huiusmodi dabit, eritque illi
shall-have-been many to-him of-this-kind he-shall-give and-it-shall-be to-him
non parva gloria, cum ipse possidebit, quod nemo dominorum
not small glory when he shall-possess what none of-the-lords
decessorum suorum vidit'. Sed mihi credite, domini mei augusti,
predecessors his saw but me believe lords my august
confrater et coepiscopus meus dominus Antonius potest non
the-fellow-brother and fellow-bishop my lord Anthony can not
inferiores dare, ut commercia testantur, quae fiunt Cremonae,
inferior-ones to-give as the-markets testify which are-held at-Cremona
atque ipsi non onagri, sed domestici, non vacui, sed onerati
and they not wild but domestic not empty but laden
procedunt. Sed cum ea superius scripta verba idem Nicephoro
go-forth but when those above written words the-same to-Nicephorus
nuntiasset, transmissis mihi duabus capreis, ut abirem,
had-reported sent to-me two roe-deer that I-might-go-away
licentiam dedit. In crastinum autem Syriam versus profectus.
leave he-gave on the-morrow moreover Syria toward he-set-out
Sed cur exercitum nunc in Assyrios duxerit, quaeso 39
but why the-army now against the-Assyrians he-led I-ask
advertite. Habent Greci et Saraceni libros, quos ὁράσεις
notice have the-Greeks and Saracens books which visions

sive visiones Danielis vocant, ego autem Sibyllanos, in quibus
or visions of-Daniel they-call I moreover Sibylline in which
scriptum reperitur, quot annis imperator quisque vivat;
written is-found for-how-many years emperor each may-live
quae sint futura eo imperitante tempora, pax an
what may-be the-future under-him ruling the-times peace or
simultas, secundae Saracenorum res an adversae. Legitur
quarrel favorable of-the-Saracens the-affairs or adverse it-is-read
itaque huius Nicephori temporibus Assyrios Grecis non
and-so of-this of-Nicephorus in-the-times the-Assyrians to-the-Greeks not
posse resistere huncque septennio tantum vivere; post cuius
to-be-able to-resist and-this-one for-seven-years only to-live after whose
obitum imperatorem isto deteriorem — sed timeo, quod
death an-emperor than-this-one worse but I-fear that
inveniri non possit — et magis imbellem debere surgere,
to-be-found not can and more unwarlike ought to-rise
cuius temporibus praevalere debent adeo Assyrii, ut in
whose in-times to-prevail ought so-much the-Assyrians that to
Chalcedoniam usque, quae distat Constantinopoli haud longe,
Chalcedon all-the-way which is-distant from-Constantinople not far
potestative cuncta debeant obtinere. Considerant enim utrique
with-power all-things they-ought to-hold consider for both
tempora; una eademque re Greci animati insequuntur,
the-times by-one and-the-same thing the-Greeks animated pursue
Saraceni desperati non resistunt tempus expectantes, cum
the-Saracens despairing do-not resist the-time awaiting when
et ipsi insequantur, Greci interim non resistant.
also they may-pursue the-Greeks meanwhile not may-resist
40 Sed Hippolytus quidam Siciliensis episcopus eadem scripsit
but Hippolytus a-certain of-Sicily bishop the-same-things wrote
et de imperio vestro et gente nostra — nostram nunc dico
and about empire your and race our ours now I-say

omnem, quae sub vestro imperio est, gentem—; atque utinam
all which under your empire is the-race and would-that
verum sit, quod de praesentibus scripsit iste temporibus.
true it-be what about the-present he-wrote he times
Cetera, ut scripsit, sunt usque huc completa, quemadmodum
the-rest as he-wrote are up-to here fulfilled as
per ipsos, qui horum librorum scientiam habent, audivi. Et
from those-very who of-these books the-knowledge have I-heard and
ex multis eius dictis unum id proferamus in medium. Ait
from many his sayings one this let-us-bring-forward into the-midst he-says
enim nunc completum iri scripturam, quae dicit: λέων
for now fulfilled to-be-(going) the-scripture which says lion
καὶ σκίμνος ὁμοδιώξουσιν ὄναγρον. Grece ita. Latinum autem
and whelp together-shall-pursue wild-ass in-Greek thus in-Latin moreover
sic: 'Leo et catulus simul exterminabunt onagrum'. Cuius
thus the-lion and the-whelp together shall-exterminate the-wild-ass whose
interpretatio secundum Grecos: Leo, id est Romanorum sive
interpretation according-to the-Greeks the-lion that is of-the-Romans or
Grecorum imperator, et catulus, Francorum scilicet rex,
of-the-Greeks the-emperor and the-whelp of-the-Franks namely the-king
simul his praesentibus temporibus exterminabunt onagrum,
together in-these present times shall-exterminate the-wild-ass
id est Saracenorum regem Africanum. Quae interpretatio
that is of-the-Saracens the-king African which interpretation
eo mihi vera non videtur, quoniam leo et catulus,
for-this to-me true not seems since the-lion and the-whelp
quamvis disparis magnitudinis, unius tamen sunt naturae et
although of-unequal size of-one yet are nature and
speciei seu moris; atque ut mihi mea scientia suggerit, si
species or manner and as to-me my knowledge suggests if
leo Grecorum imperator, inconveniens est, ut catulus sit
the-lion of-the-Greeks the-emperor unfitting it-is that the-whelp be

Francorum rex. Quamvis enim utrique homines sint, sicut
of-the-Franks the-king although for both men are as
leo et catulus uterque animalia, distant tamen moribus
the-lion and the-whelp both animals they-differ yet in-manners
tantum, non dico solum quantum species speciebus, sed
so-much not I-say only as species from-species but
quantum sensibilia insensibilibus. Catulus a leone nil
as sentient-things from-insentient the-whelp from the-lion in-nothing
nisi tempore distat, forma eadem, rabies una, rugitus idem.
except in-time differs the-form the-same the-rage one the-roar the-same
Grecorum rex crinitus, tunicatus, manicatus, teristratus,
of-the-Greeks the-king long-haired tunicked sleeved veiled
mendax, dolosus, immisericors, vulpinus, superbus, falso
lying crafty unmerciful fox-like proud falsely
humilis, parcus, cupidus, allio, cepe et porris vescens,
humble stingy greedy on-garlic onions and leeks feeding
balnea bibens; Francorum rex contra pulchre tonsus,
baths drinking of-the-Franks the-king on-the-contrary handsomely shorn
a muliebri vestitu veste diversus, pileatus, verax, nil
from womanly attire in-dress different capped truthful no
doli habens, satis, ubi competit, misericors, severus, ubi
guile having quite where it-is-fitting merciful severe where
oportet, semper vere humilis, nunquam parcus, non allio,
it-behooves always truly humble never stingy not on-garlic
cepis, porris vescens, ut possit animalibus eo parcere,
onions leeks feeding that he-may-be-able the-animals by-this to-spare
quatinus non manducatis, sed venundatis pecuniam congreget.
so-that not eaten but sold money he-may-gather
Audistis differentiam; nolite hanc interpretationem suscipere;
you-have-heard the-difference do-not this interpretation accept
aut enim futura est, aut haec vera non est. Impossibile
either for future it-is or this true not is impossible

est enim, ut Nicephorus, sicut ipsi mentiuntur, sit
it-is for that Nicephorus as they-themselves lie be
leo et Otto sit catulus, qui simul exterminent aliquem.
the-lion and Otto be the-whelp who together may-exterminate anyone
'Ante' enim 'pererratis amborum finibus exul aut Ararim
sooner for wandered-through of-both the-borders exiled either the-Arar
Parthus bibet aut Germania Tygrim', quam Nicephorus
the-Parthian shall-drink or Germany the-Tigris than Nicephorus
et Otto amicitia coeant et foedera iungant.
and Otto in-friendship come-together and treaties join

VIII · THE TRUE LION AND WHELP

Liutprand reads the lion and whelp as Otto and his son, who will destroy the wild ass Nicephorus. An astronomer foretold what Otto will do to Nicephorus. Nicephorus bought grain cheaply in a famine and sold it at double. Granted leave, Liutprand is still detained, the Latin poor who come to him for alms beaten and his friends' gifts thrown away, in a stay of a hundred and twenty days.

Audistis Grecorum, audite nunc Liudprandi Cremonensis 41
you-have-heard of-the-Greeks hear now of-Liutprand of-Cremona
episcopi interpretationem. Dico autem et non solum dico,
bishop the-interpretation I-say moreover and not only I-say
sed affirmo, si scriptura haec praesentibus est implenda
but I-affirm if scripture this in-the-present is to-be-fulfilled
temporibus, leo et catulus, pater et filius, Otto et Otto, in
times the-lion and the-whelp father and son Otto and Otto in
nullo dispares, tempore distantes tantum, simul hoc praesenti
nothing unequal in-time differing only together in-this present
tempore exterminabunt onagrum, id est silvestrem asinum
time shall-exterminate the-wild-ass that is the-woodland ass

Nicephorum, qui non incongrue silvestri asino comparatur ob
Nicephorus who not unfittingly to-a-woodland ass is-compared for
vanam et inanem gloriam incestumque dominae et commatris
vain and empty glory and-the-incestuous of-lady and of-co-mother
suae coniugium. Si onager iste nunc a leone et catulo
his marriage if wild-ass this now by the-lion and the-whelp
nostro, Ottone et Ottone, patre scilicet et filio, augustis
our Otto and Otto father namely and son the-august
Romanorum imperatoribus, exterminatus non fuerit, nec,
of-the-Romans emperors exterminated not shall-have-been nor
quod Hippolytus scripsit, verum erit. Grecorum enim illa
what Hippolytus wrote true shall-be of-the-Greeks for that
superior abicienda interpretatio est. Sed, o Iesu bone, Deus
above to-be-cast-off interpretation is but O Jesus good God
aeterne, verbum patris, qui nobis indignis loqueris non
eternal word of-the-Father who to-us the-unworthy speak not
voce, sed inspiratione, nullam aliam interpretationem quam
by-voice but by-inspiration no other interpretation than
meam in hac sententia velis. Iube, ut leo et catulus isti
mine in this sentence may-you-wish order that lion and whelp these
hunc exterminent et humilient onagrum corpore, quatinus
him exterminate and humble the-wild-ass in-body so-that
in se reversus dominisque suis Basilio et Constantino
into himself turned-back and-to-lords his Basil and Constantine
imperatoribus subditus in die Domini spiritus sit salvus.
emperors subject on the-day of-the-Lord (his)-spirit may-be saved
42 Sed astronomi hoc idem de vobis et Nicephoro pronuntiant.
but the-astronomers this same about you and Nicephorus pronounce
Res, inquam, mira. Cum quodam sum locutus astronomo,
a-thing I-say wondrous with a-certain I-have spoken astronomer
qui vestram, domini mei augusti, aequivocique vestri augusti
who your of-lord my august and-of-namesake your august

formam, mores, ut sunt, vere dixit cunctaque mea
the-form the-manners as they-are truly told and-all my
praeterita quasi praesentia dixit. Nec praeteriit quisquam
past-things as-if present told nor escaped(-him) anyone
amicorum vel inimicorum, de quibus mens mihi suggessit,
of-friends or of-enemies about whom the-mind to-me suggested
ut interrogarem, cuius habitum, formam et mores non
that I-should-ask whose bearing form and manners not
diceret. Quicquid calamitatis mihi hoc in itinere accidit,
he-told whatever of-calamity to-me this on journey befell
futurum esse praedixit. Sit mendacium omne, quod dixit,
about-to-be to-be he-foretold let-be a-lie all that he-said
unum quaeso solummodo sit verum, quod vos esse facturos
one-thing I-pray only let-be true which you to-be about-to-do
Nicephoro praedixit. Fiat utinam, utinam fiat, et tum
to-Nicephorus he-foretold may-it-be would-that would-that may-it-be and then
nil me mali passum esse intellegam!
nothing me of-evil suffered to-have I-shall-understand
Scribit etiam praefatus Hippolytus Grecos non debere 43
writes also the-aforesaid Hippolytus the-Greeks not ought
Saracenos, sed Francos conterere. Qua lectione Saraceni
the-Saracens but the-Franks to-crush by-which reading the-Saracens
animati ante triennium cum Manuele patricio, Nicephori
encouraged before three-years with Manuel the-patrician of-Nicephorus
nepote, iuxta Scyllam et Charybdim in mari Siculo bellum
the-nephew beside Scylla and Charybdis in the-sea Sicilian war
parant; cuius immensas copias cum prostravissent, ipsum
prepare whose immense forces when they-had-laid-low him
comprehenderunt capiteque truncum suspenderunt; cuius
they-seized and-of-his-head bereft hanged whose
socium et commilitonem cum caperent, qui neutrius erat
companion and fellow-soldier when they-took who of-neither was

generis, occidere sunt dedignati, sed vinctum ac longa
gender to-kill they-have disdained but bound and by-long
custodia maceratum tanti vendiderunt, quanti nec ullum
custody wasted for-so-much sold as not any
huiusmodi mortales sani capitis emerent. Nec infirmiori
of-this-kind mortals of-sound head would-buy nor with-weaker
animo eadem confirmati lectione haud multo post magistro
spirit by-the-same strengthened reading not long after the-magister
Exacontae occurrunt; quem dum in fugam verterent, eius
of-Hexakontas they-meet whom while to flight they-turned his
copias omnibus modis contriverunt.
forces in-all ways they-crushed

44 Est et aliud, quod nunc Nicephorum compulit copias
there-is also another-thing which now Nicephorus compelled forces
in Assyrios ducere. Argorum enim omnem regionem
against the-Assyrians to-lead of-the-Argives for all the-region
instans tempus Deo iubente eo usque fames attrivit, ut
the-pressing time God ordering to-that point famine wore-down that
neque tritici duo Papienses sextarii aureo comparentur,
not-even of-wheat two Pavian sextarii for-a-gold-piece may-be-bought
hocque, ubi ubertas quasi regnat. Hanc pestem muribus
and-this where plenty as-it-were reigns this plague the-mice
cooperantibus ita dilatavit, ut messionis tempore, quicquid
cooperating so he-spread that at-harvest time whatever
ubique terrarum annonae erat, minimo dato pretio
everywhere in-the-world of-grain there-was at-the-least given price
possessoribus eiulantibus congregarit. Quod cum iuxta
the-owners wailing he-gathered which when near
Mesopotamiam faceret, ubi frugum copia muribus
Mesopotamia he-did where of-crops the-abundance the-mice
absentibus creverat, arenae maris multitudini annonae
being-absent had-grown to-the-sand of-the-sea in-multitude of-grain

multitudinem coaequavit. Igitur cum vili hoc commercio
the-multitude he-made-equal therefore when by-cheap this trade
turpiter fames ubiubi desaeviret, octoginta milia mortalium
shamefully famine everywhere raged eighty thousand of-mortals
obtentu militiae secum congregavit, quibus per
under-pretext of-military-service with-himself he-gathered to-whom through
continuum mensem, quod uno emerat aureo, duobus
a-continuous month what for-one he-had-bought gold-piece for-two
vendidit. Hae sunt, domine mi, res, quae Nicephorum
he-sold these are lord my the-things which Nicephorus
copias in Assyrios nunc ducere compulerunt. Sed quales,
forces against the-Assyrians now to-lead have-compelled but what-kind
quaeso, copias? vere, inquam, non homines, sed hominibus
I-ask forces truly I-say not men but to-men
similes, quibus lingua tantum procax, sed 'frigida bello
like whose tongue only insolent but cold in-war
dextera'. Non inspicit in his Nicephorus qualitatem, sed solam
right-hand not regards in these Nicephorus the-quality but only
quantitatem; quod quam periculosum illi sit, tum sero
the-quantity which how dangerous to-him it-is then late
poenitebit eum, cum imbelles plurimi multitudine animati a
it-shall-repent him when unwarlike very-many by-multitude encouraged by
nostris perpaucis bella scientibus, immo sitientibus conterentur.
our very-few wars knowing nay thirsting-for shall-be-crushed
Cum obsideretis Bareas, trecenti tantummodo Ungari iuxta 45
when you-were-besieging Bari three-hundred only Hungarians near
Thessalonicam quingentos Grecos comprehenderunt et in
Thessalonica five-hundred Greeks seized and into
Ungariam duxerunt. Quae res, quia prospere successit, compulit
Hungary led which thing because prosperously it-succeeded compelled
ducentos Ungariorum haud longe Constantinopoli in Macedonia
two-hundred of-the-Hungarians not far from-Constantinople in Macedonia

similiter facere, ex quibus, cum incaute per angustam
similarly to-do of whom when incautiously by a-narrow
redirent viam, quadraginta sunt capti, quos nunc Nicephorus
they-returned road forty were taken whom now Nicephorus
de custodia eductos pretiosissimisque vestibus ornatos patronos
from custody led-out and-with-most-precious garments adorned as-patrons
sibi et defensores paravit, secum in Assyrios ducens.
for-himself and defenders he-prepared with-him against the-Assyrians leading
Verum qualis sit eius exercitus, hinc potestis conicere,
but what-kind is his army from-this you-can to-conjecture
quoniam, qui ceteris praestant, Venetici sunt et Amalfitani.
since those-who the-rest surpass Venetians are and Amalfitans
46 Nunc his omissis, quid mihi acciderit, animadvertite. Sexto
now these omitted what to-me happened notice on-the-sixth
Kalendas Augusti extra Constantinopolim in Umbria a
Kalends of-August outside Constantinople in Umbria from
Nicephoro licentiam accepi ad vos redeundi. Cumque
Nicephorus leave I-received to you of-returning and-when
Constantinopolim venirem, Christophorus patricius eunuchus,
to-Constantinople I-came Christopher the-patrician the-eunuch
qui Nicephori vicem eodem gerit, mihi mandavit, non
who of-Nicephorus the-place there holds to-me sent-word not
posse me tunc recedere, quia Saraceni tunc occupaverunt
to-be-able me then to-withdraw because the-Saracens then had-occupied
mare et Ungarii terram; expectandum mihi esse, donec
the-sea and the-Hungarians the-land to-be-waited by-me to-be until
ipsi discederent. Sed utrumque, proh dolor, fuit mendacium.
they departed but each alas grief was a-lie
Tunc appositi sunt custodes, qui mihi et meis a domo
then posted were guards who to-me and my-men from house
mea exitum prohiberent. Latinae linguae pauperes, qui me
my the-exit should-forbid of-the-Latin tongue the-poor who me

elemosinarum gratia adierunt, comprehendentes ceciderunt,
of-alms for-the-sake approached seizing they-beat
custodiae tradiderunt; Grecolonon meum, id est Grecae
to-custody handed-over the-Grecolonus my that is of-the-Greek
linguae gnarum, non permittebant egredi, saltem ut sumptus
tongue knowing not they-allowed to-go-out at-least that provisions
emeret, sed cocum solum Grecae linguae ignarum, qui
he-might-buy but the-cook only of-the-Greek tongue ignorant who
non signorum signis, sed digitorum seu capitis nutibus
not of-signs by-signs but of-fingers or of-head by-nods
cum venditore emptor loquebatur tantique nummis emebat
with the-seller the-buyer spoke and-at-so-much for-coins bought
quatuor, quanti Grecolonus obsonium uno. Et cum
four at-as-much-as the-Grecolonus food for-one and when
amicorum quidam aromata, panes, vinum, poma mitteret,
of-friends some spices loaves wine fruits sent
solo cuncta fundentes nuntios colaphis satis oneratos
on-the-ground all-things pouring the-messengers with-blows quite laden
dimiserunt. Et nisi divina pietas parasset in conspectu
they-dismissed and unless divine mercy had-prepared in sight
meo mensam adversus eos qui tribulant me, una mihi
my a-table against those who trouble me one for-me
parata mors foret accepta. Sed qui permisit temptari,
prepared death would-have-been accepted but he-who allowed to-be-tempted
dedit tunc misericorditer pati. Huiuscemodi me periculum
gave then mercifully to-endure of-this-kind me peril
secundo Nonarum Iunii usque ad sextum Nonas Octobris
on-the-second of-the-Nones of-June until to the-sixth Nones of-October
Constantinopoli, diebus scilicet centum viginti, maceravit.
at-Constantinople for-days namely a-hundred twenty wasted

Envoys arrive from Pope John calling Nicephorus emperor of the Greeks and Otto emperor of the Romans, and the Greeks jail them. Called before Christopher the eunuch, Liutprand is told the letter was Otto's prompting. He answers that the pope meant praise, thinking the Greeks disliked the Roman name, and urges that the pope send Nicephorus a letter like a whited sepulcher.

47 Verum ut augerentur calamitates meae, in assumptione
but that might-be-increased calamities my on the-assumption
sanctae Dei genitricis et virginis Mariae meo omine
of-the-holy of-God mother and virgin Mary with-my omen
non bono venerunt domni apostolici et universalis papae
not good came of-the-lord apostolic and universal pope
Iohannis nuntii cum litteris, quibus rogabant Nicephorum
John the-messengers with letters in-which they-asked Nicephorus
imperatorem Grecorum, ut parentelam firmamque amicitiam
emperor of-the-Greeks that kinship and-firm friendship
faceret cum dilecto spiritualique filio suo Ottone
he-should-make with beloved and-spiritual son his Otto
Romanorum imperatore augusto. Quae vox, quae inscriptio
of-the-Romans emperor august which voice which inscription
secundum Grecos peccatrix et temeraria quomodo latorem non
according-to the-Greeks sinful and rash how the-bearer not
occiderit, cur, priusquam legeretur, non oppresserit, qui in aliis
it-killed why before it-was-read not it-crushed I-who in other
rebus saepe videor spermologus et multisonus, in hac ut piscis
things often seem a-babbler and many-voiced in this like a-fish
videor insonus. Obiurgabant Greci mare, imprecabantur aequori
seem voiceless they-rebuked the-Greeks the-sea they-cursed the-ocean
plus iusto mirantes, cur peccatum illud portare potuerit,
more than-just wondering why sin that to-carry it-could

cur fretum dehiscens navim non absorbuerit. 'Imperatorem',
why the-strait gaping the-ship not swallowed the-emperor
inquiunt, 'universalem Romanorum, augustum, magnum,
they-say universal of-the-Romans august great
solum Nicephorum scripsisse Grecorum, hominem quendam
sole Nicephorus to-have-written of-the-Greeks a-man a-certain
barbarum, pauperem Romanorum non piguit! O caelum! o terra!
barbarian poor of-the-Romans not it-irked O heaven O earth
o mare! Sed quid', inquiunt, 'faciemus hominibus istis sceleratis,
O sea but what they-say shall-we-do to-men these wicked
criminosis? Pauperes sunt, et si eos occidimus, manus nostras
criminal poor they-are and if them we-kill hands our
sanguine vili polluimus; pannosi sunt, servi sunt, rustici sunt;
with-blood vile we-pollute ragged they-are slaves they-are rustics they-are
si eos flagellamus, non ipsos, sed nos dedecoramus, qui nec
if them we-whip not them but ourselves we-disgrace who neither
Romana scutica deaurata nec huiusmodi sunt crucibus digni.
of-Roman whip gilded nor of-this-kind are tortures worthy
O utinam alter episcopus, alter marchio esset! culeis enim
O would-that the-one a-bishop the-other a-marquis were in-sacks for
suti post acerbos virgarum ictus, post barbae seu capillorum
sewn after bitter of-rods blows after of-beard or of-hair
distractionem in mare demergerentur. Sed serventur', inquiunt,
the-tearing into the-sea they-would-be-plunged but let-them-be-kept they-say
'et quousque sanctissimus imperator Romanorum Nicephorus
and until the-most-holy emperor of-the-Romans Nicephorus
haec resciscat mala, gravi custodia macerentur'.
these-things learn ill with-heavy custody let-them-be-wasted
Dum haec resciscerem, felices eos, quoniam pauperes, 48
while these-things I-learned happy them because poor
me infelicem, quia divitem, iudicavi. Cum domi essem,
me unhappy because rich I-judged when at-home I-was

mea me voluntas pauperem excusabat; Constantinopoli vero
my me will poor excused at-Constantinople but
positus, Croesi me habere divitias timor ipse dicebat.
placed of-Croesus me to-have the-riches fear itself said
Semper mihi pauperies gravis, tunc visa est levis, tunc
always to-me poverty heavy then seemed was light then
accepta, tunc amplectenda; amplectenda utique, quae suos
accepted then to-be-embraced to-be-embraced certainly which its-own
perimi, subiectos sibi flagellari non patitur. Et quia haec
to-be-killed subjects to-itself to-be-whipped not allows and because this
paupertas Constantinopoli solum suos ita defendit, eodem
poverty at-Constantinople alone its-own so defends there
sit solummodo diligenda.
let-it-be only to-be-loved

49 Igitur apostolicis nuntiis in carcerem traditis publicana
therefore the-apostolic messengers to prison handed-over publican
illa epistola Nicephoro in Mesopotamiam mittitur, unde
that letter to-Nicephorus into Mesopotamia is-sent whence
usque ad II. Idus Septembris non est reversus, qui
until to the-second Ides of-September not has returned one-who
afferret apologeticum nuntium. Qua die cum rediret et
should-bring answer a-message on-which day when he-returned and
me lateret, post biduum, decimo octavo scilicet Kalendas
me it-escaped after two-days on-the-tenth eighth namely Kalends
Octobris, precibus muneribusque effeci, ut vivificum
of-October by-prayers and-gifts I-brought-about that the-life-giving
atque salutiferum adorarem lignum, ubi tanto in tumultu
and saving I-should-adore wood where so-great in tumult
populi clam custodibus quidam me adierunt, qui mentem
of-people secretly from-the-guards some me approached who mind
meam lugubrem furtivis sermonibus hilarem reddiderunt.
my mournful with-furtive words cheerful made

Decimo quinto autem Kalendas Octobris mortis vitaeque 50
on-the-tenth fifth moreover Kalends of-October of-death and-of-life
medius ad palatium sum convocatus. Cumque ad Christophori
midway to the-palace I-was summoned and-when to of-Christopher
patricii eunuchi praesentiam venirem, benigne me suscipiens
patrician eunuch the-presence I-came kindly me receiving
mihi cum tribus aliis assurrexit. Quorum huiusmodi fuit
to-me with three others he-rose of-whom of-this-kind was
narrationis initium: 'Ostendunt "pallor in ore sedens,
of-the-speech the-beginning show the-pallor in (your)-face sitting
macies in corpore toto", crinitum caput, prolixa contra
the-leanness in body whole the-long-haired head the-long against
morem barba immensum cordi tuo inesse dolorem, eo quod
custom beard immense in-heart your to-be grief for-this that
redeundi ad dominum tuum terminus est dilatatus. Verum
of-returning to lord your the-term has-been delayed but
ne sancto imperatori neve nobis succenseas, oramus.
that-not with-the-holy emperor nor with-us you-be-angry we-pray
Reddimus autem tarditatis tuae causam. Papa Romanus —
we-render moreover of-delay your the-cause the-pope Roman
si tamen papa est vocandus, qui Alberici filio apostatae,
if yet pope he-is to-be-called who of-Alberic with-the-son an-apostate
adultero, sacrilego communicavit, comministravit — literas
adulterer sacrilegious communed served letters
nostro sanctissimo imperatori se dignas illoque indignas
to-our most-holy emperor of-himself worthy and-of-him unworthy
misit, Grecorum illum et non Romanorum imperatorem vocans,
sent of-the-Greeks him and not of-the-Romans emperor calling
quod tui domini consilio actum esse non est ἀμφίσβητον'.
which of-your lord by-the-counsel done to-be not is disputable

51 ‘Quod’, inquam mecum, ‘verbum audio? perii; haud
what I-say with-me word do-I-hear I-have-perished not
dubium est, quin in praetorium recta profisciscar via!’
doubtful it-is but-that to the-praetorium by-straight I-shall-set-out road
‘Sed papa, audi’, aiunt, ‘omnium hominum stolidior, scimus,
but the-pope hear they-say of-all men the-stupidest we-know
dicere, dicere vis, nosque id profitemur’. At ego: ‘Non
to-say to-say you-wish and-we it profess but I not
id aio’. — ‘Audi ergo; sed papa fatuus, insulsus ignorat
this I-say hear therefore but the-pope foolish witless does-not-know
Constantinum sanctum imperialia sceptra huc transvexisse,
Constantine holy the-imperial scepters hither to-have-carried-over
senatum omnem cunctamque Romanam militiam, Romae
the-senate all and-all the-Roman soldiery at-Rome
vero vilia mancipia, piscatores scilicet, cupedinarios, aucupes,
but vile slaves fishermen namely confectioners fowlers
nothos, plebeios, servos tantummodo dimisisse. Nunquam
bastards plebeians slaves only to-have-left never
ille hoc nisi tui suggestione scriberet regis; quod quam
he this except at-your suggestion would-write of-the-king which how
periculosum ambobus fuerit, nisi resipuerint,
dangerous to-both it-shall-have-been unless they-shall-have-come-to-their-senses
proxima tempora declarabunt’.
the-next times shall-declare
‘Sed papa’, inquam, ‘simplicitate clarus ad laudem hoc
but the-pope I-say for-simplicity famous for praise this
imperatoris, non ad contumeliam scribere putavit. Constantinum
of-the-emperor not for insult to-write thought Constantine
Romanum imperatorem cum Romana militia huc venisse ac
Roman emperor with the-Roman soldiery hither to-have-come and
civitatem istam suo ex nomine condidisse certo scimus; sed
the-city this his from name to-have-founded certainly we-know but

quia linguam, mores vestesque mutastis, putavit sanctissimus
because tongue manners and-dress you-changed thought the-most-holy
papa ita vobis displicere Romanorum nomen, sicut et vestem.
pope so to-you to-displease of-the-Romans the-name as also the-dress
Quod in futuris vita comite ostendetur epistolis, quarum
which in future life accompanying shall-be-shown letters whose
superscriptio haec erit: 'Iohannes papa Romanus Nicephoro,
superscription this shall-be John pope Roman to-Nicephorus
Constantino, Basilio, magnis Romanorum imperatoribus atque
Constantine Basil great of-the-Romans emperors and
augustis'. Quod curnam dixerim, quaeso advertite.
august-ones which why I-should-have-said I-ask notice
Nicephorus periurio atque adulterio regni apicem est 52
Nicephorus by-perjury and adultery of-the-kingdom the-summit has
adeptus. Et quoniam Christianorum omnium salus ad
obtained and since of-Christians all the-salvation to
Romani papae pertinet sollicitudinem, mittat Nicephoro
of-the-Roman pope belongs the-solicitude let-send to-Nicephorus
dominus papa epistolam sepulchris omnino similem, quae foris
the-lord pope a-letter to-sepulchers wholly like which outside
sunt dealbata, intus plena sunt ossibus mortuorum; improperet
are whitewashed inside full are of-bones of-the-dead let-him-reproach
illi intrinsecus, qualiter periurio et adulterio acceperit super
him inwardly how by-perjury and adultery he-received over
dominos suos monarchiam; invitet eum ad synodum et,
lords his the-monarchy let-him-invite him to a-synod and
si non venerit, anathemate feriat. Si superscriptio
if not he-shall-have-come with-anathema let-him-strike if the-superscription
huiusmodi non fuerit, nec ad ipsum usque feretur.
of-this-kind not shall-have-been not-even to him all-the-way shall-it-be-carried

The officials boast that Greek gold will raise every nation against Otto. They take five purple cloths from Liutprand's baggage as forbidden to all but Romans, though the emperor had let him buy what he wished; Liutprand protests that in Italy even beggar women wear them. They give him a gold-sealed letter for Otto and a silver-sealed one for the pope.

53 Nunc ad propositum redeamus. Superscriptam ex
now to the-purpose let-us-return the-written-above from
superscriptione promissionem a me memorati principes
the-superscription promise from me the-mentioned princes
cum audiissent, nil inesse doli putantes: 'Grates tibi
when they-had-heard nothing to-be-in-it of-guile thinking thanks to-you
persolvimus', aiunt, 'o episcope; decet enim sapientiam tuam
we-pay they-say O bishop it-befits for wisdom your
tantis mediatricem intercedere rebus. Solus es ex Francis,
in-such as-mediatress to-intervene affairs alone you-are of the-Franks
quem nunc diligamus; sed cum depravata te hortante
whom now we-love but when the-depraved-things at-your urging
correxerint, et ipsi diligentur, tuque iterum ad nos
they-shall-have-corrected also they shall-be-loved and-you again to us
cum veneris, non indonatus abibis'.
when you-shall-have-come not ungifted shall-go-away
'Corona aurea sceptroque, cum huc ultro rediero,
with-a-crown golden and-a-scepter when hither of-my-own-accord I-shall-have-returned
me Nicephorus donabit!' tacitus dixi.
me Nicephorus shall-present silent I-said
'Sed dic', inquiunt, 'vult dominus tuus sanctissimus cum
but say they-say wishes lord your most-holy with
imperatore firmare amicitiam foedere nuptiarum?'
the-emperor to-confirm friendship by-the-treaty of-marriage

‘Cum huc venirem, voluit’, inquam, ‘sed quia me diu hic
when hither I-came he-wished I-say but because me long here
morante literas non recepit, σφάλμα, id est vitium, a vobis
lingering letters not he-received a-wrong that is a-vice by you
meque captum putat et vinctum, aestuatque animus eius
and-me taken he-thinks and bound and-seethes mind his
totus, ut leaenae catulis raptis, donec vindictam iusta faciat
whole as of-a-lioness the-whelps snatched until vengeance with-just he-make
acerbitate et nuptias abhorreat atque iram in vos evomat’.
bitterness and the-marriage he-abhor and wrath upon you vomit-forth
‘Si coeperit’, inquiunt, ‘non dicimus Italia, sed nec ipsa
if he-shall-have-begun they-say not we-say Italy but not-even itself
capiet eum, in qua ortus est, pauper et gunnata, id est
shall-hold him in which born he-was poor and fur-clad that is
pellicea, Saxonia; pecunia, qua pollemus, omnes nationes
skin-clad Saxony with-money in-which we-are-strong all nations
super ipsum invitabimus et quasi keramicum, id est
upon him we-shall-invite and as-if an-earthenware-(pot) that is
vas fictile, quod confractum reformari nequit, confringemus.
a-vessel earthen which broken to-be-remade cannot we-shall-break
Et quoniam te in decorem suum quaedam pallia emisse
and since you for adornment his certain cloths to-have-bought
putamus, ut in medium proferantur, edicimus; quae
we-think that into the-midst they-be-brought we-proclaim those-which
sunt vobis digna, plumbea notentur bulla vobisque sinantur;
are for-you worthy with-a-lead be-marked seal and-to-you be-left
quae vero κωλυόμενα, id est nationibus omnibus prae
those-which but forbidden that is to-nations all except
nobis Romanis prohibita, pretio reddito auferantur’.
us Romans prohibited the-price returned be-taken-away

54 Quod cum fieret, quinque mihi pretiosissimas purpuras
which when was-done five from-me most-precious purples
abstulerunt, indignos vos omnesque Italos, Saxones, Francos,
they-took-away unworthy you and-all Italians Saxons Franks
Bagoarios, Suevos, immo cunctas nationes huiusmodi veste
Bavarians Swabians nay all nations in-such clothing
ornatos incedere iudicantes. Quod quam indecorum quamque
adorned to-go judging which how unseemly and-how
contumeliosum est, molles, effoeminatos, manicatos, tiaratos,
insulting it-is soft effeminate sleeved tiara-wearing
teristratos, mendaces, neutros, desides purpuratos incedere,
veiled lying neuter idle purple-clad to-go
heroas vero, viros scilicet fortes, scientes bellum, fidei
heroes but men namely brave knowing war of-faith
caritatisque plenos, Deo subditos, virtutibus plenos, non,
and-of-charity full to-God subject with-virtues full not
quid est, si non haec contumelia est? 'Sed ubi est', inquam,
what is-it if not this an-insult is but where is I-say
'imperatorius sermo? ubi imperialis promissio? Cum enim illi
the-imperial word where the-imperial promise when for to-him
vale dicerem, rogavi, ut in ecclesiae honorem quantivis pretii
farewell I-said I-asked that for of-the-church the-honor of-whatever price
me permitteret pallia emere. Qui ait: "Qualia vis et quanta";
me he-allow cloths to-buy who said what-kind you-wish and how-many
ποιότητα καὶ ποσότητα, id est qualitatem et quantitatem,
the-quality and quantity that is quality and quantity
ponens, differentiam plane non posuit, ut diceret: his et illis
setting a-distinction plainly not he-set that he-should-say these and those
exceptis. Testis est Leo coropalates, frater eius; testis est et
excepted witness is Leo curopalates brother his witness is also

interpres Euodisius, Iohannes, Romanus; testis sum ipse, qui,
the-interpreter Euodisius John Romanus witness am I-myself who
quod imperator diceret, etiamsi interpres abesset, intellexi'.
what the-emperor said even-if the-interpreter were-absent understood
'Sed κωλυόμενα, id est prohibita, sunt haec', inquiunt.
but forbidden-things that is prohibited are these they-say
'Et cum, quae asseris, imperator diceret, de talibus
and when the-things-which you-assert the-emperor said about such-things
saltem ut somniares, non potuit cogitare; ut enim divitiis,
at-least that you-might-dream not he-could to-think as for in-riches
sapientia, ita et ceteris nationibus praestare veste debemus,
in-wisdom so also the-other nations to-surpass in-dress we-ought
ut, quibus est singularis in virtutibus gratia, sit singularis
that to-whom is singular in virtues grace may-be singular
et in pulchritudine vestis'.
also in beauty of-dress
'Haudquaquam singularis', inquam, 'haec vestis fieri potest, 55
by-no-means singular I-say this dress to-become can
cum penes nos obolariae mulieres et mandrogerontes his
when among us obol women and mandrogerontes these
utantur'.
use
'Unde', inquiunt, 'vobis?'
whence they-say to-you
'A Veneticis et Amelfitanis institoribus', inquam, 'qui nostris
from Venetian and Amalfitan traders I-say who our
ex victualibus haec ferendo nobis vitam nutriunt suam'.
from foodstuffs these-things by-bringing to-us the-life nourish their-own

‘Sed non amplius hoc facient’ aiunt. ‘Scrutabuntur plane,
but not further this they-shall-do they-say they-shall-be-searched plainly
et si quid huiusmodi inventum fuerit, verberibus caesus,
and if anything of-this-kind found shall-have-been by-blows beaten
crine tonsus poenas dabit’.
by-hair shorn penalties he-shall-pay
‘Temporibus’, inquam, ‘beatae memoriae Constantini imperatoris
in-the-times I-say of-blessed memory of-Constantine emperor
huc veneram non episcopus, sed diaconus nec ab imperatore
hither I-had-come not a-bishop but a-deacon nor by an-emperor
aut rege, sed a Berengario marchione missus, et multo plura
or king but by Berengar marquis sent and many more
ac pretiosiora pallia emi, quae neque scrutata nec a Grecis
and more-precious cloths I-bought which neither searched nor by the-Greeks
visa nec plumbo sunt signata. Nunc Deo miserante episcopus
seen nor with-lead were sealed now God pitying a-bishop
et a magnificis imperatoribus Ottone et Ottone, patre et
and by the-magnificent emperors Otto and Otto father and
filio, missus tanto inhonestor, ut Veneticorum more
son sent by-so-much I-am-dishonored that of-the-Venetians in-the-manner
pallia mea notentur et, quae quantivis pretii videntur,
cloths my be-marked and those-which of-whatever price seem
auferantur, cum in ecclesiae mihi commissae usus ferantur.
be-taken-away when for of-the-church to-me entrusted the-uses they-are-carried
Non taedet vos contumeliarum mearum, immo dominorum
not it-wearies you of-the-insults my nay of-lords
meorum, in quibus contemnor? quod sum custodiae traditus,
my in which I-am-scorned that I-was to-custody handed-over
quod fame sitique cruciatus, quod non ad ipsos redirem
that by-hunger and-thirst tormented that not to them I-might-return
hucusque retentus, nisi etiam ad cumulum dedecoris eorum
hitherto held-back unless also to the-heap of-disgrace their

propriis exspolier rebus? Auferte saltem, quae sunt empta;
of-my-own I-be-despoiled things take-away at-least those-which are bought
dimittite, quae sunt dono ab amicis donata'.
leave those-which are as-gift by friends given
'Constantinus', inquiunt, 'imperator, homo lenis, in palatio
Constantine they-say emperor a-man mild in the-palace
manens perpetuo huiusmodi rebus amicas sibi nationes
remaining perpetually with-such things friendly to-himself the-nations
effecerat; Nicephorus vero basileus, homo ταχύχειρ, id est
had-made Nicephorus but basileus a-man quick-handed that is
militiae deditus, palatium ceu pestem abhorret et
to-military-service given the-palace like a-plague abhors and
vocatur a nobis prope simultatis amator atque argumentosus,
is-called by us nearly of-quarrel a-lover and argumentative
qui non pretio sibi gentes amicas, sed terrore et gladio
who not by-price to-himself the-peoples friendly but by-terror and the-sword
sibi subditas facit. Atque ut cognoscas, quanti dominos
to-himself subject makes and that you-may-know how-much lords
tuos reges habeamus, quae data sunt coloris huiusmodi
your the-kings we-hold the-things-which given were of-color of-this-kind
et quae empta, via eadem ad nos revertentur'.
and those-which bought by-way the-same to us shall-return
His dictis atque completis χρυσοβούλιον, id est epistolam auro 56
these said and completed a-chrysobull that is a-letter in-gold
scriptam et signatam, mihi dederunt vobis deferendam, sed
written and sealed to-me they-gave to-you to-be-carried but
non vobis dignam, ut mens credit mea. Tulerunt autem et
not of-you worthy as mind believes my they-brought moreover also
alias literas argento signatas atque dixerunt: 'Papam vestrum
other letters with-silver sealed and said pope your
imperiales recipere literas indignum esse diiudicamus; mittit
imperial to-receive letters unworthy to-be we-judge sends

autem illi coropalates, imperatoris frater, non per suos
moreover to-him the-curopalates of-the-emperor the-brother not through his
pauperes nuntios, sed per te epistolam se satis dignam, ut,
poor messengers but through you a-letter of-him quite worthy that
nisi resipuerit, funditus se periisse cognoverit'.
unless he-shall-have-come-to-his-senses utterly himself to-have-perished he-may-know

XI · THE JOURNEY HOME

Liutprand writes verses on the walls of his lodging against the faithless Greeks and sails on 2 October. After forty-nine days of hardship he reaches Naupactus, where his guide abandons him. Storms off Patras bring him to pray to Saint Andrew, and the sea calms. He reports that Nicephorus has banned the Latin rite in Apulia and Calabria, and counsels a synod to summon the patriarch Polyeuctus.

57 Hanc cum accepissem, vale mihi dicentes dimiserunt oscula
this when I-had-received farewell to-me saying they-dismissed kisses
praebentes satis iucunda, satis amabilia. Sed dum recederem,
offering quite pleasant quite lovable but while I-was-withdrawing
legationem mihi non me, sed illis satis dirigunt dignam,
an-embassy to-me not of-me but of-them quite they-direct worthy
scilicet quod mihi soli meisque equos darent, sarcinis
namely that to-me alone and-my-men horses they-should-give for-the-baggage
nullum; sicque nimis, ut res poscebat, turbatus διασώστῃ,
none and-thus too-much as the-thing demanded troubled to-the-diasostes
id est ductori meo, quinquaginta aureorum res pretio
that is guide my of-fifty gold-pieces a-thing in-price
dedi. Et cum non haberem, quod pro malefactis Nicephoro
I-gave and since not I-had what for misdeeds to-Nicephorus

tunc redderem, hos in pariete invisae domus meae et
then I-might-render these on the-wall of-the-hateful house my and
in mensa lignea versiculos scripsi:
on the-table wooden little-verses I-wrote

Argolicûm non tuta fides; procul esto, Latine,
of-the-Argives not safe the-faith far-off be Latin
Credere, nec mentem verbis adhibere memento!
to-believe nor the-mind to-words to-apply remember
Vincere dum possit, quam sancte peierat Argos!
to-conquer while it-may-be-able how piously perjures Argos
Marmore quae vario magnis patet alta fenestris,
with-marble which varied with-great lies-open high windows
Haec inaquosa domus, concluso pervia soli,
this waterless house to-the-shut-in accessible to-the-sun
Frigora suscipiens, aestum nec saeva repellens;
the-colds receiving the-heat nor savage repelling
Praesul ab Ausonia Liudprandus in urbe Cremona,
bishop from Ausonia Liutprand in the-city Cremona
Constantinopolim pacis profectus amore,
to-Constantinople of-peace having-set-out for-love
Quattuor aestivis concludor mensibus isthic.
for-four summer I-am-shut-up months there
Induperator enim Bareas conscenderat Otto,
the-emperor for Bari had-climbed-to Otto
Caede simul flammisque sibi loca subdere temptans,
by-slaughter together and-flames to-himself the-places to-subject trying
Sed precibus remeat Romanas victor ad urbes
but at-prayers returns the-Roman victor to the-cities
Inde meis. Nurum promisit Grecia mendax,
thence my a-daughter-in-law promised Greece lying

Quae nec nata foret nec me venisse doleret,
who neither born would-have-been nor me to-have-come would-grieve
Nec rabiem, Nicephore, tuam perpendere quirem,
nor the-rage Nicephorus your to-weigh could-I
Privignam prohibes qui nato iungere herili.
the-stepdaughter you-forbid who to-the-son to-join of-the-master
Imminet ecce dies, Furiis cum pulsus acerbis,
impends behold the-day by-the-Furies when driven bitter
Ni Deus avertat, toto Mars saeviet orbe,
unless God avert in-the-whole Mars shall-rage world
Crimine paxque tuo cunctis optanda silebit!
by-crime and-peace your for-all to-be-wished shall-be-silent

58 His conscriptis versibus sexto Nonas Octobris hora
these written verses on-the-sixth Nones of-October at-the-hour
decima ex illa quondam opulentissima et florentissima, nunc
tenth from that once most-opulent and most-flourishing now
famelica, periura, mendace, dolosa, rapace, cupida, avara,
famished perjured lying crafty rapacious greedy avaricious
cenodoxa civitate cum diasoste meo lintre egressus diebus
vainglorious city with diasostes my by-skiff gone-out in-days
quadraginta et novem asinando, ambulando, equitando,
forty and nine by-donkey-riding by-walking by-horse-riding
ieiunando, sitiendo, suspirando, flendo, gemendo Naupactum
by-fasting by-thirsting by-sighing by-weeping by-groaning to-Naupactus
veni, quae est Nicopoleos civitas, in qua diasostes meus
I-came which is of-Nicopolis a-city in which diasostes my
me deserens, duabus parvis impositum navibus duobus me
me deserting on-two small placed ships to-two me
mandatoribus, qui Hydruntem me per mare conducerent,
envoys who to-Otranto me by sea should-conduct

commendavit. Verum cum entolina, id est praeceptum,
commended but since a-command that is a-precept
ius captionis a Grecorum principibus non haberent,
a-right of-requisition from of-the-Greeks the-princes not they-had
ubiubi spernebantur, nec iam nos ab ipsis, sed ipsi a
everywhere they-were-spurned nor now we by them but they by
nobis alebantur. Quam saepe illud Terentianum mecum
us were-fed how often that Terentian-line with-myself
stomachabar: 'Tutore opus est, quos defensores paras'.
I-was-angry a-guardian need there-is whom as-defenders you-prepare
Igitur nonis Kalendis Decembris Naupactum egressus 59
therefore on-the-ninth Kalends of-December from-Naupactus gone-out
biduo ad Offidarim fluvium usque perveni cum meis
in-two-days to the-Offidaris river all-the-way I-came with my
comitibus non in naviculis, quae eos capere non poterant,
companions not in the-little-boats which them to-hold not could
residentibus, sed secus litus pergentibus. Positi itaque in
sitting but along the-shore proceeding placed and-so in
Offidari flumine Patras alio maris in litore decem
the-Offidaris river Patras on-another of-the-sea on the-shore ten
et octo miliaribus distare prospeximus. Quem apostolicae
and eight miles to-be-distant we-saw which of-the-apostolic
passionis locum, qui Constantinopolim ascendendo
passion the-place (we)-who to-Constantinople going-up
visitavimus, adoravimus, nunc eum visitare et adorare —
we-visited we-adored now it to-visit and to-adore
confiteor peccatum meum! — distulimus. Fecit hoc, domini
I-confess sin my we-put-off made this lords
mei augusti, revertendi ad vos et videndi ineffabile desiderium,
my august of-returning to you and of-seeing the-ineffable desire
et ni hoc solum esset, perpetuo, ut puto, perierim.
and unless this alone it-were forever as I-think I-would-have-perished

60 Pugnavit contra me insensatum auster mare flatibus ab
fought against me senseless the-south-wind the-sea with-blasts from
imis turbans sedibus. Cumque hoc continuis diebus ac
the-lowest stirring seats and-when this for-continuous days and
noctibus faceret, pridie Kalendas Decembris, ipso scilicet
nights it-did on-the-day-before the-Kalends of-December the-very namely
passionis die, intellexi meo mihi hoc accidisse delicto.
of-the-passion day I-understood by-my to-me this to-have-happened fault
Sola vexatio intellectum dedit auditui. Fames quippe nos
alone vexation understanding gave to-hearing hunger indeed us
vehementer oppresserat. Terrae incolae, ut nostra nobis
vehemently had-oppressed of-the-land the-inhabitants that our from-us
auferrent, interficere nos cogitabant; mare, ne effugeremus,
they-might-take to-kill us they-planned the-sea lest we-escape
fluctibus aestuabat. Tum conversus ad ecclesiam, quam
with-waves seethed then turned to the-church which
videbam, flens et eiulans inquam: 'Sancte Andrea apostole,
I-saw weeping and wailing I-say holy Andrew apostle
compiscatoris, confratris et coapostoli tui Simonis Petri
of-the-fellow-fisherman fellow-brother and fellow-apostle your Simon Peter
sum servus. Passionis tuae locum non abhorrui nec superbia
I-am the-servant of-passion your the-place not I-shrank-from nor by-pride
declinavi; urit me domum redeundi augustalis iussio, augustalis
avoided burns me home of-returning the-august command the-august
amor. Si te ad indignationem commovit peccatum meum,
love if you to indignation has-moved sin my
eliciat ad misericordiam meorum meritum augustorum. Non
let-draw-forth to mercy of-my the-merit of-the-august-ones not
habes, fratri quod conferas; confer diligentibus fratrem
you-have to-the-brother what to-confer confer on-those-loving the-brother
augustis inhaerendo ei, qui omnia novit. Nosti tu,
to-the-august-ones by-clinging to-him who all-things knows know you

quanto labore et sudore quantisque vigiliis et impensis
with-how-great toil and sweat and-with-how-great vigils and expenses
Romanam fratris tui Petri apostoli ecclesiam ex impiorum
the-Roman of-brother your Peter apostle church from of-the-impious
manibus ereptam ditaverint, honoraverint, exaltaverint et in
the-hands snatched they-have-enriched honored exalted and to
statum proprium reformaverint. Si mea me praecipitant opera,
state its-own restored if my me cast-headlong works
ipsorum saltem liberent merita, quosque vult praedictus
their at-least may-free merits and-those-whom wishes the-aforesaid
fide et sanguine frater tuus, apostolorum princeps apostolus
in-faith and blood brother your of-the-apostles the-prince the-apostle
Petrus, in aliis rebus gaudere et prosperari, in hac, id est
Peter in other things to-rejoice and to-prosper in this that is
in me, quem ipsi direxerant, minime contristari!'
in me whom they had-directed by-no-means to-be-saddened
Non est, domini mei augusti imperatores, verum dico, non est 61
not it-is lords my august emperors truth I-say not is
adulatio haec, nec consuo nunc pulvillos sub cubito manus;
flattery this nor do-I-sew now little-pillows under the-elbow of-the-hand
res, inquam, vera est. Post biduum vestris meritis tanta
the-thing I-say true is after two-days by-your merits with-such
est fretum tranquillitate sedatum, ut, cum nautae nobis
was the-strait calm settled that when the-sailors from-us
aufugerent, ipsi Leucaten usque navigaremus, miliaribus
fled we-ourselves to-Leucas all-the-way sailed for-miles
scilicet centum et quadraginta, nihil discriminis aut tristitiae
namely a-hundred and forty no danger or sadness
patientes, nisi parum in faucibus fluminis Acheloi, ubi
suffering except a-little in the-mouths of-the-river Achelous where
discurrentes velociter fluctus eius maris unda reverberat.
running-about swiftly the-waves its of-the-sea the-wave beats-back

62 Quid ergo, praepotentes augusti, retribuetis Domino pro
what therefore most-powerful august-ones shall-you-render to-the-Lord for
omnibus, quae retribuit in me vobis? Dicam quid. Hoc Deus
all-things which he-rendered in me to-you I-shall-say what this God
vult, hoc petit et, quamvis sine vobis hoc facere possit, vult
wishes this seeks and although without you this to-do he-could he-wishes
tamen huius rei esse hypurgos, id est ministros; ipse
yet of-this thing to-be helpers that is ministers he-himself
enim, quod ei offeratur, dat; custodit, quod exigat, ut
for what to-him be-offered gives guards what he-may-demand that
possit coronare, quod praestat. Advertite igitur, quaeso.
he-may-be-able to-crown what he-provides notice therefore I-ask
Nicephorus cum omnibus ecclesiis homo sit impius, livore,
Nicephorus since to-all the-churches a-man is impious with-the-envy
quo in vos abundat, Constantinopolitano patriarchae
in-which toward you he-abounds to-the-Constantinopolitan patriarch
praecepit, ut Hydrontinam ecclesiam in archiepiscopatus
ordered that the-Otranto church to of-the-archbishopric
honorem dilatet nec permittat in omni Apulia seu Calabria
the-honor he-enlarge nor allow in all Apulia or Calabria
Latine amplius, sed Grece divina mysteria celebrare.
in-Latin further but in-Greek the-divine mysteries to-celebrate
Mercatores dicit fuisse praeteritos papas et Spiritum
traders he-says to-have-been the-past popes and the-Spirit
Sanctum vendidisse, quo vivificantur et reguntur omnia,
Holy to-have-sold by-whom are-quickened and are-ruled all-things
qui replet orbem terrarum, qui scientiam habet vocis, qui
who fills the-world of-lands who knowledge has of-the-voice who
est cum Deo patre et filio eius Iesu Christo coaeternus et
is with God the-Father and Son his Jesus Christ coeternal and
consubstantialis, sine initio, sine fine, permanens verus, qui
consubstantial without beginning without end remaining true who

pretio non aestimatur, sed a mundis corde tanti emitur,
by-price not is-valued but by the-pure in-heart at-so-much is-bought
quanti habetur. Scripsit itaque Polyeuctos Constantinopolitanus
as-much-as he-is-held wrote and-so Polyeuctus of-Constantinople
patriarcha privilegium Hydrontino episcopo, quatinus sua
patriarch a-privilege to-the-Otranto bishop that by-his
auctoritate habeat licentiam episcopos consecrandi in
authority he-may-have license bishops of-consecrating at
Acirentila, Turcico, Gravina, Maceria, Tricario, qui ad
Acerenza Tursi Gravina Matera Tricarico who to
consecrationem domini apostolici pertinere videntur. Sed quid
the-consecration of-the-lord apostolic to-belong seem but why
hoc memorem, cum ipsa Constantinopolitana ecclesia nostrae
this should-I-recall when the-very Constantinopolitan church to-our
sanctae catholicae atque apostolicae ecclesiae Romanae merito
holy catholic and apostolic church Roman deservedly
sit subiecta? Scimus, immo videmus Constantinopolitanum
is subject we-know nay we-see the-Constantinopolitan
episcopum pallio non uti nisi sancti patris nostri
bishop the-pallium not to-use except of-holy father our
permissu. Verum cum impiissimus Albericus, quem non
by-the-permission but when the-most-impious Alberic whom not
stillatim cupiditas, sed velut torrens impleverat, Romanam
drop-by-drop greed but like a-torrent had-filled the-Roman
civitatem sibi usurparet dominumque apostolicum quasi
city for-himself usurped and-the-lord apostolic as-if
servum proprium in conclavi teneret, Romanus imperator
a-slave his-own in a-chamber held Romanus emperor
filium suum Theophylactum eunuchum patriarcham constituit,
son his Theophylact eunuch patriarch established
cumque eum Alberici cupiditas non lateret, missis ei
and-when him of-Alberic the-greed not escaped sent to-him

muneribus satis magnis effecit, ut ex papae nomine
gifts quite great he-brought-about that from of-the-pope the-name
Theophylacto patriarchae literae mitterentur, quarum auctoritate
to-Theophylact the-patriarch letters were-sent whose by-authority
cum ipse tum successores eius absque paparum permissu
as-well he-himself as the-successors his without of-the-popes permission
palliis uterentur. Ex quo turpi commercio vituperandus mos
palliums should-use from which foul traffic a-blameworthy custom
inolevit, ut non solum patriarchae, sed etiam episcopi totius
has-grown-up that not only the-patriarchs but even the-bishops of-all
Greciae palliis utantur. Quod quam absurdum sit, censore
Greece palliums use which how absurd it-is of-a-censor
opus non est. Est ergo meum consilium sanctam fieri
need not there-is it-is therefore my counsel a-holy to-be-held
synodum et ad eandem vocari Polyeuctum. Quod si venire
synod and to the-same to-be-called Polyeuctus which if to-come
et σφάλματα sua, id est vitia, superius scripta canonice
and the-faults his that is the-vices above written canonically
emendare noluerit, quod sanctissimi canones
to-amend he-shall-have-been-unwilling what the-most-holy canons
decreverint, fiat. Vos interim, praepotentes augusti, ut
shall-have-decreed let-be-done you meanwhile most-powerful august-ones as
coepistis, laborate; efficite, ut, si nolit nobis Nicephorus,
you-have-begun labor bring-about that if he-be-unwilling to-us Nicephorus
quem canonice arguere disponimus, oboedire, audiat vos,
whom canonically to-reprove we-intend to-obey he-hear you
quorum copiis non audet cadaverosus occurrere. Hoc, inquam,
whose forces not dares the-corpse-like to-meet this I-say
est, quod nos apostoli, domini et commilitones nostri, facere
is what us the-apostles lords and fellow-soldiers our to-do
volunt. Non est a Grecis Romanus vilis tenendus locus,
wish not is by the-Greeks Roman vile to-be-held the-place

quia recessit inde imperator Constantinus, verum eo magis
because withdrew thence the-emperor Constantine but by-that the-more
colendus, venerandus, adorandus, quia venerunt illuc apostoli,
to-be-honored to-be-venerated to-be-adored because came thither the-apostles
doctores sancti, Petrus et Paulus. Ac de his satis me
teachers holy Peter and Paul and about these enough me
scripsisse sufficiat, donec Deo largiente sanctissimorumque
to-have-written let-it-suffice until God granting and-of-the-most-holy
apostolorum orationibus ex Grecorum ereptus manibus vos
apostles by-the-prayers from of-the-Greeks snatched the-hands you
adeam. Et tunc non taedeat dicere, quod hic nunc
I-may-approach and then not let-it-weary to-say what here now
piguit scribere. Nunc ad propositum redeamus.
it-has-irked to-write now to the-purpose let-us-return

XII · LEUCAS AND CORFU

At Leucas the eunuch bishop receives him as inhospitably as every Greek bishop, men who keep shop and pay Nicephorus tribute for their churches. At Corfu the strategos Michael greets him with a Judas kiss, the island shakes, and the sun is eclipsed. Liutprand recounts the twenty days Michael held him at Liutprand's own expense; from these lesser Michaels he turns on a great one, a half-hermit.

Octavo Idus Decembris Leucatem venimus, ubi ab episcopo 63
on-the-eighth Ides of-December to-Leucas we-came where by the-bishop
ipsius loci eunucho, sicut et ubique ab aliis, inhumanissime
of-that place a-eunuch as also everywhere by others most-inhumanly
suscepti et tractati sumus. In omni Grecia, veritatem
received and treated we-were in all Greece the-truth
dico, non mentior, non reperi hospitales episcopos. Divites
I-tell not I-lie not I-found hospitable bishops rich

sunt, pauperes sunt; divites aureis, quibus plena luditur
they-are poor they-are rich in-gold-pieces with-which full is-played
arca; pauperes ministris seu utensilibus. Soli mensulae
the-chest poor in-servants or utensils alone at-a-little-table
assident nudae, paximacium sibi apponentes balneaque
they-sit bare biscuit for-themselves setting-out and-baths
tunc vitro permodico non bibentes, sed sorbillantes.
then from-a-glass very-small not drinking but sipping
Ipsi vendunt, ipsi emunt; ostia ipsi
they-themselves sell they-themselves buy the-doors they-themselves
claudunt, ipsi aperiunt; ipsi dapiferi, ipsi
close they-themselves open they-themselves stewards they-themselves
agasones, ipsi capones — sed, ha! caupones volui
grooms they-themselves capons but ha innkeepers I-meant
scribere, verum res ipsa, quae vera est, veritatem etiam
to-write but the-thing itself which true is the-truth even
nolentem compulit scribere — dicimus enim, quia capones
unwilling has-compelled to-write we-say for that capons
sunt, id est eunuchi, quod canonicum non est; sunt
they-are that is eunuchs which canonical not is they-are
et caupones, id est tabernarii, quod contra canones est;
also innkeepers that is tavern-keepers which against the-canons is
quorum
of-whom

'Incipit et claudit cenam lactuca tenacem,
begins and closes the-supper lettuce the-stingy
Claudere quae cenas lactuca solebat avorum'!
to-close which suppers lettuce used of-the-forefathers

Felices eos, si paupertatem Christi haec imitaretur, pauperes
happy them if poverty of-Christ this imitated poor
iudicarem! Facit hoc asper nummus et auri sacra
I-would-judge does this rough coin and of-gold the-accursed
fames. Verum parcat illis Deus! Hoc eo illos puto
hunger but may-spare them God this for-this them I-think
facere, quoniam eorum ecclesiae sunt tributariae. Leucatensis
to-do since their churches are tributary of-Leucas
mihi iuravit episcopus, quotannis ecclesiam suam debere
to-me swore the-bishop yearly church his to-owe
Nicephoro aureos centum persolvere, similiter et ceteras
to-Nicephorus gold-pieces a-hundred to-pay similarly also the-others
plus minusve secundum vires suas. Quod quam iniquum
more or-less according-to strength their which how unjust
sit, sanctissimi patris nostri Ioseph acta demonstrant,
it-is of-the-most-holy father our Joseph the-acts show
quia, cum Aegyptum totam famis tempore tributariam
because when Egypt whole of-famine in-time tributary
Pharaonis faceret, sacerdotum terram a tributo liberam
of-Pharaoh he-made of-the-priests the-land from tribute free
esse permisit.
to-be he-allowed

Igitur decimo nono Kalendas Ianuarii Leucatem exeuntes 64
therefore on-the-tenth ninth Kalends of-January from-Leucas going-out
ipsique, quoniam, ut superius scripsimus, nautae effugerant,
and-ourselves since as above we-wrote the-sailors had-fled
navigantes decimo quinto ad Coriphus pervenimus, ubi
sailing on-the-tenth fifth to Corfu we-came where
ante navis egressionem occurrit nobis strategos quidam,
before of-the-ship the-going-out met us a-strategos a-certain
Michael nomine, Chersionitis, a loco scilicet Chersona;
Michael by-name a-Chersonite from the-place namely Cherson

homo ipse canus capite, facie hilaris, sermone bonus,
a-man himself white in-head in-face cheerful in-speech good
risu semper iucundus, sed, ut post patuit, mente
in-laughter always pleasant but as afterward was-plain in-mind
diabolus; quod et Deus apertis mihi monstravit indiciis,
a-devil which also God by-open to-me showed signs
si mea tunc mens hoc potuisset conicere. Mox enim ut
if my then mind this had-been-able to-conjecture soon for as
pacem, quam corde non ferebat, mihi osculo dedit, tota
the-peace which in-heart not he-bore to-me with-a-kiss he-gave the-whole
Coriphus, magna scilicet insula, tremuit, nec solum semel,
Corfu great namely island trembled nor only once
sed ter eadem die pertremuit. Post quatriduum autem,
but three-times on-the-same day shook after four-days moreover
undecimo scilicet Kalendas Ianuarii, dum in mensa positus
on-the-eleventh namely Kalends of-January while at table placed
panem comederem, qui ampliabat super me calcaneum suum,
bread I-ate who was-enlarging against me heel his
verecundatus sol facinus tam indignum lucis suae radios
ashamed the-sun at-the-deed so unworthy of-light its the-rays
abscondit et eclipsin passus Michaelem illum terruit,
hid and eclipse having-suffered Michael that terrified
sed non immutavit.
but not changed

65 Dicam ergo, quid illi causa amicitiae fecerim, quidnam ab
I-shall-say therefore what to-him for-the-sake of-friendship I-did what from
eo pro recompensatione perceperim. Dum Constantinopolim
him for requital I-received when to-Constantinople
ascenderem, illud vestrum pretiosissimum scutum, miro
I-went-up that your most-precious shield of-wondrous
opere deauratum et fabricatum, quod mihi domini mei
work gilded and wrought which to-me lords my

augusti dedistis ceteris cum muneribus, ut amicis meis
august you-gave the-other with gifts that to-friends my
Grecis darem, filio ipsius contuli. Nunc Constantinopolim
Greek I-should-give to-the-son his I-presented now to-Constantinople
rediens patrem pallio donavi pretiosissimo; pro quibus
returning the-father with-a-cloak I-presented most-precious for which
omnibus gratias distribuit eiusmodi: scripsit Nicephorus,
all thanks distributed of-this-kind wrote Nicephorus
ut, quacunque hora se adirem, absque mora chelandio
that at-whatever hour him I-approached without delay on-a-chelandion
impositum Leoni kitonitae dirigeret; quod ipse non fecit,
placed to-Leo the-chamberlain he-should-direct which he not did
verum diebus viginti me retentum non suis, sed propriis
but for-days twenty me held-back not with-his but with-my-own
me stipendiis aluit, donec a praefato Leone kitonita
me stipends he-fed until from the-aforesaid Leo chamberlain
nuntius venit, qui illum, cur me moraretur, obiurgavit.
a-messenger came who him why me he-delayed rebuked
Verum cum obiurgationes meas, lamenta et suspiria mea
but when rebukes my laments and sighs my
ferre non posset, recessit meque homini tam iniquo et
to-bear not he-could he-withdrew and-me to-a-man so unjust and
pessimo commendavit, ut sumptus saltem me emere non
most-wicked commended that provisions at-least me to-buy not
permitteret, donec a me cortinam librae argenti pretio
he-allowed until from me a-curtain of-a-pound of-silver of-the-price
dignam acciperet, et cum post viginti dies inde discederem,
worthy he-received and when after twenty days thence I-departed
nuntius ipse, cui cortinam dederam, nauclero iussit,
the-messenger himself to-whom the-curtain I-had-given to-the-shipmaster ordered
ut post acroteria, id est promontorium quoddam, me
that after the-acroteria that is a-promontory a-certain me

positum fame perire permitteret. Hoc autem eo fecit,
placed by-hunger to-perish he-should-allow this moreover for-this he-did
quoniam, ne purpuras haberem absconditas, mea pallia
since lest purples I-had hidden my cloths
regiravit, ex quibus, dum unum vellet accipere, non accepit.
he-turned-over of which while one he-wished to-take not he-took
O Michaeles, Michaeles, ubi vos tot simul talesque reperi!
O Michaels Michaels where you so-many together and-such I-found
Custos meus ille Constantinopolitanus Michaeli suo rivali
guard my that Constantinopolitan to-Michael his rival
me commendavit, malus pessimo, pessimus iniquo. Michael
me commended the-bad to-the-worst the-worst to-the-unjust Michael
vocatus est et diasostes meus, homo quidem simplex,
called was and diasostes my a-man indeed simple
cuius sancta simplicitas tantum mihi pene nocuit, quantum
whose holy simplicity as-much me almost harmed as
et istorum perversitas. Sed ab his parvulis Michaelibus
also of-these the-perversity but from these little Michaels
impegi in te Michaelem magnum, semiheremitam,
I-have-run against you Michael the-great half-hermit
semimonachum. Dico, et verum dico: non proderit tibi
half-monk I-say and truth I-say not shall-profit you
balneum, quo te assidue potas in amore beati Iohannis
the-bath which you constantly drink for the-love of-blessed John
praecursoris. Qui enim ficte Deum quaerunt, nunquam
the-forerunner who for feignedly God seek never
invenire merentur…
to-find deserve
